

2nd

PREP

SECOND TERM



ALAWWAN

Gem

2026

HISTORY



Contents

Start Smart 5

Module 4

Unit 7	My School Life	9
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7	53

Unit 8	Learn Smart, Learn Easy	56
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8	95
	Module 4 Question Bank on Units 7 & 8	98

Module 5

Unit 9	Jobs and Skills	102
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9	141

Unit 10	Storytelling	148
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10	189
	Module 5 Question Bank on Units 9 & 10	192

Review 3 144

Module 6

Unit 11	Life in the Desert	196
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11	241

Unit 12	Our Incredible Earth	244
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12	287
	Module 6 Question Bank on Units 11 & 12	290

Review 4 293



End of the Book

Listening Texts 297

Challenging Questions Answers 299

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2025-2026

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

English for Preparatory Schools - Year Two (SB)

MONTH(S)

FEBRUARY

MARCH

APRIL

MAY

UNITS

Units 7 + 8

Units 9 + 10

Units 11 + 12

General Revision

1 Finish the following dialog:

Mona and her friend Jana are talking about the differences between generations.

Mona : I've been thinking about how life has changed from one generation to another.

Jana : Me too! Each generation lives differently.

Mona : (1).....

Jana : That's interesting! Have you talked to your parents about it?

Mona : (2)..... I need to be more alert.

Jana : Ask them what their daily life was like—it's fun to know.

Mona : (3).....

Jana : True! Things have changed a lot.

Mona : (4).....?

Jana : I read or go for a quick walk—it feels way more productive.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Today, we use technology every day: phones, computers, and smart devices. They make life easier, but we must use them safely. First, it's important to protect our personal information. We should use strong passwords and avoid sharing details with strangers online. Second, we need to think before we click. Some links or messages may be dangerous or fake. Finally, we should balance our time. Taking breaks helps our eyes and our minds stay healthy. When we use technology responsibly, it can help us learn, connect, and enjoy life safely.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Using strong passwords helps you

- a) take more breaks
- b) protect your personal information
- c) spend more time online
- d) open fake links

2. The text says we should think before we click because some links may be

- a) helpful
- b) easy
- c) dangerous or fake
- d) slow to load

3. Taking breaks while using technology helps our
- a) bags and clothes
 - b) plans and schedules
 - c) eyes and minds
 - d) phones and laptops

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why is it important to protect your personal information when using modern technology?
.....
5. What are some dangers of clicking on unknown links or messages?
.....
6. How can taking breaks help us use technology more safely?
.....

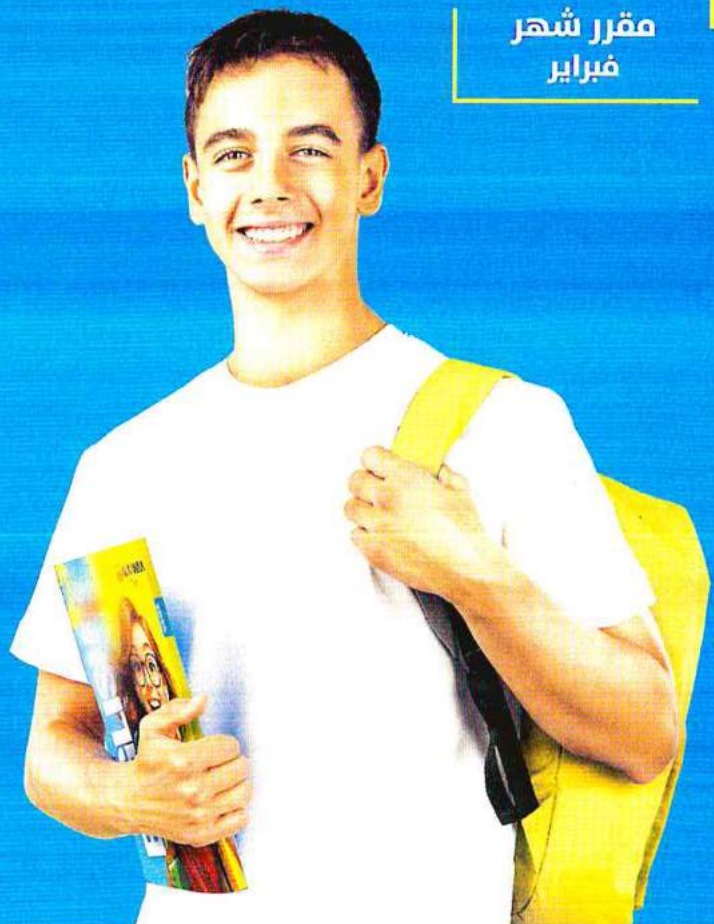
3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She tries to her schoolwork and her hobbies so she doesn't get too tired.
- a) balance
 - b) borrow
 - c) remove
 - d) collect
2. I forgot my keys, I couldn't enter the house.
- a) because
 - b) although
 - c) so
 - d) but
3. It needs a lot of to speak in front of a large crowd.
- a) courage
 - b) habit
 - c) distraction
 - d) pressure
4. I dinner when my friend called me.
- a) was cooking
 - b) cooked
 - c) cook
 - d) am cooking
5. The train went through a long before reaching the next station.
- a) tower
 - b) gate
 - c) tunnel
 - d) bridge

4

MODULE

مقرر شهر
فبراير



Unit 7 My School Life

Unit 8 Learn Smart, Learn Easy

Module 4 Question Bank

Unit 7

MY SCHOOL LIFE

WEEKLY PLAN

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main ideas and supporting details in short informational and descriptive texts.

Listening

- Identify specific information such as time, place, or steps in a process.
- Recognize speaker's attitudes or purposes (to inform, to explain, to describe).

Speaking

- Participate in short discussions and role-plays about daily routines, inventions, or school organization.

Language

- Form and use imperatives and should or shouldn't for advice.

Writing

- Write short paragraphs or reports describing processes or daily routines clearly and logically.
- Produce short opinion or explanatory paragraphs with topic sentences and supporting ideas.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

behavior (n)	سلوك/تصرف	hallway (n)	ممر/اردهة
dress code (n)	ضوابط ارتداء الملابس	rule (n)	قاعدة/لائحة
forbidden (adj)	ممنوع/محظور	sneakers (n)	حذاء رياضي

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

allow (ed) (v)	يسمح	narrow (adj)	ضيق
avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب	passage (n)	ممر
cell phone (n)	هاتف محمول	raise (d) (v)	يرفع/يزيد
classmate (n)	زميل دراسة	require (d) (v)	يتطلب
create (d) (v)	يُنشئ/يُبدع	respect (ed) (v)	يحترم
equally (adv)	بالتساوي	respectful (adj)	محترم (لغيره)
instructions (n)	تعليمات/إرشادات	specially (adv)	خصوصاً
learning environment (n)	بيئة تعلم	uniform (n)	زي موحد

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

as part of	كجزء من	on time	في الوقت المحدد
at any time	في أي وقت	show pride	يظهر الفخر
better for	أفضل لـ	towards	نحو/تجاه
by rules/law	وفقاً للقواعد/للقانون	keep ... clean	حافظ على نظافة ...

Read and complete with a word from the list:

forbidden – raise – show – on – at

- Please, your hand when you want to ask a question.
- We'll try to be here time tomorrow.
- It is to walk on the grass in the park.
- We pride when our team wins the game.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

actively (adv)	بنشاط	interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع
atmosphere (n)	الجو العام	manners (n)	أخلاق
distractions (n)	مشتتات	productive (adj)	منتج

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

carefully (adv)	برفق	positive (adj)	إيجابي
confident (adj)	واثق	prepare (d) (v)	يحضر/يجهز
corridors (n)	ممرات	review (ed) (v)	يراجع
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	safety rules (n)	قواعد السلامة
greet (ed) (v)	يحيي	silently (adv)	بصمت
organize (d) (v)	يرتب	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
participate (d) (v)	يشارك	well-planned (adj)	مخططة جيداً

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

arrive at	يصل إلى	on time	في الوقت
at break time	في وقت الفسحة	take care of	يعتنى بـ
create positive atmosphere	يخلق جوًا إيجابيًا	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
on the bus	في الحافلة	waste time on	يضيع وقتًا على

Read and complete with a word from the list:

waste – give – well-planned – take – manners

- 1 Did you notes during class?
- 2 You shouldn't time watching TV.
- 3 The trip was, so we enjoyed our time.
- 4 Good help create a good work atmosphere.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
wake	يستيقظ	woke	woken
wear	يرتدي/يلبس	wore	worn

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
actively	بنشاط	eagerly	بشغف	lazily	بكسل
allow	يسمح	permit	يسمح	forbid/ban	يمنع/يحظر
clear	واضح	obvious	واضح	unclear	غير واضح
comfortable	مريح	relaxing	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
confident	واثق	sure/certain	موقن	unsure/hesitant	متردد
create	يصنع/يبدع	make/produce	يصنع/ينتج	destroy/ruin	يدمر
safe	آمن	secure	آمن	dangerous	خطير
tidy	مرتب	neat	أنيف	untidy	غير مرتب

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
active (adj)	نشط	-ly	تحويل إلى حال	actively (adv)	بنشاط
comfortable (adj)	مريح	un-	تعطى عكس الصفة	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
enjoy (v)	يستمتع	-able	تحويل إلى صفة	enjoyable (adj)	ممتع
equal (adj)	متساو	-ly	تحويل إلى حال	equally (adv)	بالتساوي
product (n)	منتج	-ive	تحويل إلى صفة	productive (adj)	منتج
respect (v)	يحترم	-ful		respectful (adj)	محترم (لغيره)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- That soft chair is very comfortable to sit in. The synonym of "comfortable" is ".....".
 a) dirty b) relaxing c) neat d) calm
- We must respect our school rules. Add the suffix "....." to "respect" to change it into an adjective.
 a) -er b) -ous c) -ly d) -ful
- Hanaa wanted to enjoy her weekend. To form the adjective of the word "enjoy", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ive b) -ly c) -able d) -ful

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think schools have rules for students?
 - 2 What rules are there at your school?
-  Read the following text, and guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 14

Welcome to my **preparatory school**⁽¹⁾! Here are our important school **rules**. Every school has rules that help create a safe and respectful learning **environment**⁽²⁾. At my school, students must follow the dress code, classroom rules, behavior **rules**⁽³⁾, and library rules.

The **dress code** requires students to wear the school **uniform**⁽⁴⁾ every day. Jeans and **sneakers** are not allowed. It is also important to keep uniforms clean and tidy to show pride in the school.

Behavior rules are equally important. Students must **respect**⁽⁵⁾ teachers and each other, **avoid**⁽⁶⁾ running in the **hallways**, and help keep the school clean. Cell phones are not allowed in class, and eating or drinking inside classrooms is **forbidden**.

In the classroom, students should arrive on time. They must listen carefully to their teachers and **classmates**⁽⁷⁾. Talking while the teacher is speaking is not allowed. Students should **raise**⁽⁸⁾ their hands before speaking.

In the library, students should be quiet, return books on time, and never write in them. Good behavior makes the school better for everyone.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why should schools have rules?
.....
- 2 What does "dress code" mean?
.....
- 3 Where are students not allowed to eat or drink at school?
.....



- | | |
|-------------------|-------------|
| (1) مدرسة إعدادي | (2) بيئة |
| (3) قواعد | (4) زي موحد |
| (5) يحترم | (6) يتجنب |
| (7) زملاء الدراسة | (8) يرفع |

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 How do you spend your day at school?
- 2 What activities do you do at school?

Listen to the audio, and then do the following tasks.

SB page 16

A school day can be **enjoyable**⁽¹⁾ and productive if you follow a few simple steps. In the morning, wake up early, prepare your bag, and arrive at school on time. You should **greet**⁽²⁾ your teachers and classmates **respectfully**⁽³⁾, as good **manners**⁽⁴⁾ help create a positive **atmosphere**⁽⁵⁾. During lessons, listen carefully, take clear notes, and **participate**⁽⁶⁾ actively. You should ask questions when you don't understand something, but you shouldn't **interrupt**⁽⁷⁾ others while they are speaking.

At break time, choose healthy **snacks**⁽⁸⁾ and drink water because you should take care of your body. Don't run in the **corridors**⁽⁹⁾ to follow safety rules. After school, review your lessons, do your homework, and organize your timetable. You shouldn't waste your time on **distractions**⁽¹⁰⁾ if you want to succeed. A well-planned school day helps you learn more and feel confident.



- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| (1) ممتع | (2) يرحب |
| (3) باحترام | (4) أخلاق |
| (5) الجو العام | (6) يشارك |
| (7) يقطع | (8) وجبات خفيفة |
| (9) معرات | (10) مشتتات |

SB

Post-listening questions:

Write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Students should arrive at school on time.
- 2 You shouldn't ask questions during the lesson.
- 3 Healthy snacks are important during break time.
- 4 The text advises students to run in the corridors.
- 5 Reviewing lessons after school is important.

(.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

behavior سلوك/تصرف	the way someone acts	(1) مسموح
forbidden ممنوع/محظور/محرم	something not allowed ⁽¹⁾ to happen by rules or law ⁽²⁾	(2) القانون
hallway ممر/ردهة	a long narrow passage ⁽³⁾ in a building	(3) ممر
rules قواعد	instructions ⁽⁴⁾ that tell people what they must or must not do	(4) تعليمات/إرشادات
sneakers حذاء رياضي	comfortable shoes you wear for sports or walking	

1 allow + (to + inf.)

يسمح/يدع

- It is not **allowed** to use your mobile here.

2 avoid + (v+ing)

يتجنب

- Students must **avoid** running in the hallways.

3 stay/keep + adj. صفة

يبقى/يحافظ

- It is important to **keep** uniforms **clean** and **tidy**.
- Rules help us **stay safe** and learn better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- "....." are the instructions that tell people what they must or must not do.
 a) Behaviors b) Rules c) Hallways d) Sneakers
- The new law does not allow people in front of hospitals.
 a) park b) to park
 c) parking d) parked
- You should always avoid alone in dark streets at night.
 a) walk b) to walk
 c) to walking d) walking
- Please, your class clean and don't throw rubbish on the ground.
 a) take b) allow c) keep d) avoid

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The is the way someone acts.
 a) role b) rule c) behavior d) atmosphere
- Every student must understand and follow their school
 a) passages b) rules c) hallways d) bus
- A helpful listens well and supports others when needed.
 a) law b) rule c) behavior d) classmate
- All students must wear the school from Sunday to Thursday.
 a) breakfast b) timetable c) uniform d) cell phone
- Most jobs strong communication skills.
 a) avoid b) require c) return d) ignore
- My parents allow me to watch TV after I finish my homework. The antonym of "allow" is ".....".
 a) follow b) act c) permit d) forbid
- Kady will her timetable to see if she has art class today.
 a) do b) review c) have d) catch
- You should respect other people's ideas. Add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "respect".
 a) -ly b) -ful c) -ive d) -ness
- We pride when we follow rules and help others.
 a) avoid b) follow c) show d) respect
- Drivers must wear a seatbelt law.
 a) on b) at c) for d) by

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cell – rules – call – sneakers – code

At school, we have a few rules that make sure everyone is safe. We have a dress (1) that requires everyone to wear a uniform, which helps us all feel like we're part of the same team. Jeans and (2) are not allowed. We should avoid using our (3) phones during class time. These (4) show that we're proud to be part of our school.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. My sister her timetable to finish her work on time.
a) does b) watches c) takes d) organizes
2. Hend notes in class and studies them later.
a) reviews b) takes c) gives d) avoids
3. Practicing a lot improves your skills and makes you feel
a) confident b) silent c) noisy d) untidy
4. The hospital was calm and quiet.
a) behavior b) passage c) corridor d) timetable
5. The instructions were clear to follow. The synonym of the word "clear" is
a) dark b) create c) active d) obvious
6. I enjoy playing football with my friends. Add the suffix "....." to "enjoy" to form its adjective.
a) -able b) -ful c) -er d) -ly
7. Hanaa is never late. She always arrives time.
a) over b) by c) out d) on
8. You shouldn't time playing video games.
a) avoid b) allow c) waste d) take
9. Creating a positive at work makes everyone happy.
a) atmosphere b) surprise c) adventure d) story
10. She didn't want to just watch the game; she wanted to
a) participate b) hide c) quit d) shout

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

distractions – prepare – carefully – respectful – greet

To make your school day enjoyable, you need to follow these simple rules. You should wake up early in the morning and (1)..... your bag. You need to (2)..... your teachers and classmates with respect. Listen (3)..... and take clear notes. Don't waste your time on (4)..... if you want to succeed.

الأوامر وتقديم النصائح Imperatives and giving advice

Grammar story:



Read and choose:

Laila and Sami go to the park every Saturday. Before they leave, their mom gives them some advice. "(Wear/Wearing) your hats," she says. "(Not/Don't) forget your water bottles. At the park, Laila sees a lost cat. She remembers her mom's words and thinks, "You (should/shouldn't) help animals in trouble!" She and Sami look for the cat's owner. Finally, a little boy runs over and says, "That's my cat." They say, "You (should/shouldn't) leave it alone."

1 Imperatives

صيغة الأمر

We use imperatives to give orders, instructions, or advice to tell someone what to do or not to do.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات والنصائح لإخبار شخص ما بما يجب أن يفعله أو لا يفعله. وتبدأ جملة الأمر بالفعل في المصدر بدون الفاعل ويمكن ذكر المخاطب.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

We use the base form of the verb (without a subject).

نستخدم الشكل الأساسي للفعل (بدون فاعل).

- e.g. Ahmed, **open** the door.
 • **Sit** down, please. (commands)
 • **Stop** talking. (commands)
 • **Drink** more water. (advice)
 • **Turn** on the computer. (instructions)

لاحظ:

- يمكن استخدام كلمة (Always) قبل مصدر الفعل في صيغة الإثبات.

- e.g. **Always go** to bed early.
 • **Always eat** healthy food.

Negative النفي

For negative form, we use: لصيغة النفي نستخدم:

Don't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- e.g. **Don't run** in the hallway.
 • Hatim, **don't talk** in the library.

Don't be + (adj. الصفة)

- e.g. **Don't be** late, Tamer.
 • **Don't be** lazy. Do your homework now.

لاحظ:

- يمكن استخدام كلمة (Never) قبل مصدر الفعل في صيغة النفي.

- e.g. **Never run** across the street without looking.
 • **Never be** rude to your parents.



Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Don't play in the street.

(Never)

- الإجابة الصحيحة: **Never play in the street.** لأن Never تساوي Don't.

- 2 Can you give Donia some tea?

(Make)

- الإجابة الصحيحة: **Make Donia some tea, please.** لأنها تخير شخصًا بشيء ما ليفعله.

We use **"should"** and **"shouldn't"** to give advice or suggestions.

نستخدم **"should"** و **"shouldn't"** لإعطاء النصائح أو الاقتراحات.

Form التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

ينبغي أن

Subject الفاعل + **should** + inf. الفعل في المصدر

e.g. You **should** respect your school rules.

Negative النفي

ينبغي ألا

Subject الفاعل + **shouldn't** + inf. الفعل في المصدر

e.g. You **shouldn't** talk in the library.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question السؤال بمعنى هل

Should + subject فاعل + inf.?

e.g. A: **Should** you have a rest?

B: Yes, we **should**.

B: No, we **shouldn't**.

Wh- question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + **should/shouldn't** + subject فاعل + inf.?

e.g. A: What **should** you do in the library?

B: We **should be** quiet.

لاحظ

١- يمكن استخدام **should** بدلاً من هذه التعبيرات.

(It's important من الضروري / It's a good idea إنها فكرة جيدة / It's good الجيد / من الأفضل had better)

٢- يمكن استخدام **shouldn't** بدلاً من هذه التعبيرات.

(It's un/not important ليس من الضروري / It's not good ليس من الأفضل / It isn't wise ليس من الحكمة)



Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1 Is it important to go to the library?

(Should)

- الإجابة الصحيحة: **Should** لأن **Should** you go to the library?

2 It's not wise to talk loudly.

(shouldn't)

- الإجابة الصحيحة: **shouldn't** لأن **shouldn't** You talk loudly

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Always kind to animals, even if they are small or unfamiliar to you.
a) am b) is c) be d) are
- be late for your English class because the teacher gets upset.
a) Should b) Don't c) Always d) Shouldn't
- They take a short rest to feel better.
a) should b) shouldn't c) did not d) hardly
- If you want to be healthy, you eat more fresh vegetables every day.
a) shouldn't b) should c) never d) don't
- To start the game, the blue button on the front of the machine.
a) pressing b) press c) pressed d) presses

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- It's good to listen carefully to your teacher. (You should)
.....
- Don't run in the school hallway. (Never)
.....
- Don't cross the road without looking. (Never)
.....
- It's not a good idea to eat a lot of sweets. (shouldn't)
.....
- You had better help your parents at home. (should)
.....
- Don't forget to wash your hands before lunch. (Always)
.....
- It's not wise to shout at your friends. (You ...)
.....
- It's a good idea to read English stories every day. (should)
.....
- It's a good idea to sleep early on school nights. (should)
.....
- It's important not to be late for school. (Don't)
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When you feel stressed, you take a deep breath and relax for a while.
a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) ought
- Always your homework before you go out to play with your friends.
a) finish b) finished c) finishing d) finishes
- If the soup is too hot, you wait a few minutes before eating it.
a) shouldn't b) should c) have d) need
- Never rude to your classmates, even if they say something unfair.
a) is b) are c) be d) am
- your name clearly at the top of the exam paper before you start.
a) To write b) Wrote c) Writes d) Writing

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- You'd better revise your lessons before the test. (You should)
.....
- It's a good idea to drink water after exercise. (should)
.....
- Don't forget to turn off the lights when you leave. (Never)
.....
- It's not wise to eat fast food every day. (shouldn't)
.....
- It's a good idea to take notes in class. (should)
.....
- Don't touch the hot pot on the stove. (Never)
.....
- It's not a good idea to talk loudly in the library. (shouldn't)
.....
- It's important to drink enough water every day. (You should)
.....
- Don't forget to bring your school books. (Never)
.....
- It's not wise to waste your time on games. (You)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1. Talking about the school rules

التحدث عن قواعد المدرسة



online



How do school rules help students learn and work together?

كيف تساعد قواعد المدرسة الطلاب على التعلم والعمل معًا؟

By making the class calm and fair.

بجعل الفصل هادئًا وعادلًا.



Why does the school have a dress code?

لماذا لدى المدرسة نظام للزى؟

To make everyone look neat and equal.

ليبدو الجميع أنيقين ومتساوين.



What is forbidden in the classroom?

ما الذى يُمنع فى الفصل الدراسى؟

It is forbidden to shout, fight, or use cell phones in the classroom.

يُمنع الصراخ أو الشجار أو استخدام الهواتف فى الفصل الدراسى.



Why do you think rules at schools are important?

لماذا تعتقد أن القواعد فى المدارس مهمة؟

Because rules help us stay safe and learn better.

لأن القواعد تساعدنا على البقاء آمنين والتعلم بشكل أفضل.



2. Asking and answering about your typical day at school

السؤال والإجابة عن يومك المعتاد فى المدرسة



What time do you wake up?

فى أى وقت تستيقظ؟

I wake up at six o'clock in the morning.

أستيقظ فى الساعة السادسة صباحًا.



Do you take part in any after-school activities?

هل تشارك فى أى أنشطة بعد المدرسة؟

Yes, I take part in football practice after school.

نعم، أشارك فى تدريب كرة القدم بعد المدرسة.



What time do you usually get home?

فى أى وقت تعود إلى المنزل عادة؟

I usually get home at three o'clock in the afternoon.

أعود إلى المنزل عادة فى الساعة الثالثة بعد الظهر.



What's your first class?

ما هى حصتك الأولى؟

It's English. It's my favorite.

إنها اللغة الإنجليزية. إنها المفضلة لدى.



1 Complete the following dialog:

► Ali is asking Lina about their school uniform as one of the school rules.

Ali : Why do we wear a school uniform?

Lina : Because it's one of the school (1).....

Ali : What (2)..... is our uniform?

Lina : It's blue and white.

Ali : Can I wear jeans instead?

Lina : (3)....., you can't. It's important to wear our uniform.

Ali : (4)..... is it important?

Lina : Because it makes everyone look the same.

2 Complete the following dialog:

► Rami is asking Mariam about her typical day at school.

Rami : What time do you wake up, Mariam?

Mariam : I wake up (1)..... six in the morning.

Rami : What's your first (2).....?

Mariam : My first class is science.

Rami : (3)..... you like science?

Mariam : Yes, I do. I love doing experiments.

Rami : Do you take part in any after-school activities?

Mariam : Yes, I (4).....

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف
الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم
تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





How to write about your daily routine

كيف تكتب عن روتينك اليومي

1 In the morning

في الصباح

I wake up at 6:00 a.m.
I brush my teeth and wash my face.
I eat breakfast (e.g., bread and milk).

2 At school

في المدرسة

I go to school at 7:30 a.m.
I study subjects like math and English.
I have lunch at school.

3 In the afternoon

في الظهر

I come home at 2:00 p.m.
I rest for a while.
I do my homework.

My daily routine

روتيني اليومي

4 In the evening

في المساء

I play with my friends or watch TV.
I eat dinner with my family.

5 At night

ليلاً

I take a shower.
I go to bed at 9:30 p.m.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"My daily routine"

Every day, I wake up at 6:00 a.m. I brush my teeth, wash my face, and eat breakfast. I go to school at 7:30 a.m. and study math, English, and other subjects. At noon, I eat lunch at school. I come home at 2:00 p.m., rest a little, and then do my homework. In the evening, I play with my friends or watch TV. After that, I eat dinner with my family. Before I sleep, I take a shower. I go to bed at 9:30 p.m. My daily routine is simple, but I like it because it helps me stay healthy and do well in school.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What color is Youssef's backpack?
a) Red b) Green c) Black d) Blue
2. Who does Youssef talk to on the bus?
a) His teacher b) His brother c) Sami d) The bus driver

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. What does Youssef eat for breakfast?
.....
4. What subject's homework does he check for?
.....
5. Where does he have lunch?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Comfortable are better for walking in the park.
a) caps b) vests c) sneakers d) ties
2. I met my teacher yesterday break time.
a) on b) at c) of d) out
3. When something is, it's not allowed to happen by rules or law.
a) tidy b) safe c) comfortable d) forbidden
4. I feel comfortable in my new clothes. They are very
a) noisy b) dangerous c) relaxing d) uncomfortable

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

avoid – requires – acts – on – respectful

School rules are made to help students succeed. For example, coming to class (1)..... time shows respect. The dress code (2)..... a clean uniform. Sneakers are allowed because they are good for sports and moving around safely. In the hallway, we (3)..... talking loudly or pushing each other. These simple behaviors help create a calm and (4)..... learning environment where everyone feels welcomed and valued.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's a good idea to be kind to others. (should)
.....
2. Don't leave your room untidy. (Never)
.....
3. It isn't wise to be rude to your classmates at school. (Don't)
.....
4. It's a good idea to check your answers before you finish. (should)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Hana and Ziad are talking about the school day.

Hana : What time does your school day start, Ziad?

Ziad : At eight o'clock.

Hana : (1)..... is your first class?

Ziad : My first class is math, but I like English more.

Hana : (2)..... you take part in after-school activities?

Ziad : Yes, I (3)..... I learn to play the guitar.

Hana : When do you do your homework?

Ziad : I do my (4)..... after I rest.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Rules at school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's dangerous to run near the swimming pool. (Don't)
.....
2. It's kind to help your neighbor carry the heavy bags. (should)
.....
3. Don't speak loudly in the library. It's rude. (Never)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	period (n)	فترة/حصّة دراسية
fair (n)	معرض	responsibility (n)	مسؤولية
manage (d) (v)	يدير/يتحكم	self-control (n)	ضبط النفس
organized (adj)	منظم	smoothly (adv)	بسهولة/بسهولة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

art (n)	مادة الرسم	movement (n)	حركة
brush (n)	فرشاة	produce (d) (v)	يُنتج
busy (adj)	مشغول/مزدحم	ready (adj)	جاهز/مستعد
careless (adj)	مهمّل	result (n)	نتيجة
direct (ed) (v)	يوجه/يرشد	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
disorganized (adj)	غير منظم	specific (adj)	محدد/معين
event (n)	حدث	sports day (n)	يوم رياضي
fixed (adj)	ثابت/محدد	successfully (adv)	بنجاح
lab book (n)	دفتر/سجل المعمل	wisely (adv)	بحكمة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

follow the timetable	يتبع الجدول الزمني	manage your time	تنظم/تدير وقتك
full of	ممتلئ بـ	prepare for	يستعد/يجهز لـ
get enough time	يحصل على وقت كافٍ	respect for	احترام لـ
in order	بالترتيب	run smoothly	يسير بسهولة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

of – at – ready – manage – responsibility

- Are you to start the next lesson?
- It's my to do my homework every day.
- The sky is full bright stars tonight.
- I try to my time by making a daily plan.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought
learn (ed)	يتعلم	learned/learnt	learned/learnt
stand	يقف	stood	stood

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
manage	يدير/يتحكم	control	يتحكم في	mismanage	يساء الإدارة
regular	منتظم/معتاد	usual	معتاد	irregular	غير معتاد
destroy	يدمر	damage	يضر/يتلف	build	يبني

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
organized (adj)	منظم	dis-	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disorganized (adj)	غير منظم
responsible (adj)	مسئول	-ity	تحويل إلى اسم	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
move (v)	يتحرك	-ment		movement (n)	حركة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nour is trying to manage her busy timetable. The synonym of "manage" is ".....".
a) control b) irregular c) avoid d) allow
- We will move to a new house. We add the suffix "....." to "move" to get the noun.
a) -ous b) -ment c) -ly d) -ion
- Sally organized her birthday party carefully. We add the prefix "....." to form the opposite of "organized".
a) en- b) un- c) ir- d) dis-
- Mr. Reda us English last year.
a) brought b) bought c) taught d) had

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

Lesson 3

1 Why do schools have a timetable?

2 What might happen if there were no timetables at school?

 **Read the article. How does a timetable help you organize your school day?**

SB page 18

Every school day is full of lessons, activities, and movement. To make everything run smoothly⁽¹⁾, schools use a timetable. A timetable shows the subjects for each period⁽²⁾ and helps students know what to bring and when to be ready.



Having a timetable is very important. It keeps students organized⁽³⁾ and helps them manage their time wisely⁽⁴⁾. For example, if you have science first, you bring your lab book and coat. If you have art later, you prepare your colors and brushes. Teachers also follow the timetable, so every subject gets enough time.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| (1) بسلاسة | (2) فترة |
| (3) منظم | (4) بحكمة |
| (5) يراجع | (6) أحداث |
| (7) مقرر العلوم | (8) ضبط النفس |

At our school, the school day starts at 8:00 a.m. and finishes at 3:00 p.m. We have eight periods every day with short breaks between lessons. On Sunday morning, our class teacher reviews⁽⁵⁾ the timetable with us so we can prepare for the week.

Sometimes, we change it for special events⁽⁶⁾ like Sports Day or the Science Fair⁽⁷⁾, but most days we follow it carefully. The timetable teaches us self-control⁽⁸⁾, responsibility, and respect for time, which helps everyone learn more effectively.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What does a school timetable show?
- 2 Why is it important to have a timetable?
- 3 What time does the school day start and finish?
- 4 When do students review their timetable at school?
- 5 What do students learn by following their timetable?

Notes on Reading

التعريفات Definitions

effectively	بفاعلية	in a way that works well and produces good results ⁽¹⁾	(1) نتاج
manage	يدير/يتحكم	to control or direct ⁽²⁾ something successfully	(2) يوجه
organize	ينظم/يرتب	to plan and arrange things in order	(3) محدد
period	فترة/حصّة	is a fixed time in a school schedule during which a specific ⁽³⁾ subject or activity is taught	
smoothly	بسهولة/بسهولة	in a calm, easy, and regular way	

1 We use the present simple to express scheduled events:

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث المجردة:

- At our school, the school day **starts** at 8:00 a.m. and **finishes** at 3:00 p.m.

2 keep someone + adj

- A timetable keeps students **organized**.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** Practicing hard keeps you
a) strongly b) strong
c) strength d) a strongly
- 2** To plan things in order means to "....." them.
a) organize b) smooth
c) manage d) effective
- 3** Look at the timetable, the first lesson at 8 a.m.
a) start b) starting
c) would start d) starts
- 4** "....." means in a calm, easy, and regular way.
a) Regularly b) Equally
c) Smoothly d) Lately



Asking and answering questions about "Timetable at School"

عمل أسئلة والإجابة عنها حول «جدول الحصص في المدرسة»



online



Do you think a timetable is important? Why?

هل تعتقد أن جدول المواعيد مهم؟ لماذا؟

Yes, because it helps me know what to do each day.

نعم، لأنه يساعدني على معرفة ما يجب أن أفعله كل يوم.



Which day of the week is the busiest for you?

أي يوم في الأسبوع هو الأكثر انشغالاً بالنسبة لك؟

Tuesday is the busiest day because I have science, English, and math.

الثلاثاء هو اليوم الأكثر انشغالاً لأن لدى دروس العلوم، واللغة الإنجليزية، والرياضيات.



How does a timetable help you stay organized and manage your time?

كيف يساعدك جدول المواعيد على أن تبقى منظمًا وتتنظم وقتك؟

My timetable tells me when I have each class.

يخبرني جدول المواعيد بموعد كل درس.



Use expressions like:

- In my opinion ...
- I think that ...
- The best thing about our timetable is ...
- If we didn't have a timetable, ...

- في رأيي
- اعتقد أن
- أفضل شيء في جدولنا هو
- إذا لم يكن لدينا جدول مواعيد

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Mona and Ali are talking about their school timetable.

Mona : What do we have first today?

Ali : We have (1)..... first.

Mona : English! It's my favorite subject.

Ali : I think it's very (2).....

Mona : What (3)..... does it start?

Ali : It starts at eight o'clock.

Mona : (4)..... do we have after that?

Ali : We have math. I did my math homework.

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The first starts at 8:00 a.m., and we have math.
a) break b) period c) event d) schedule
- To make something means in a way that works well and produces good results.
a) ineffectively b) poorly c) effectively d) responsibility
- To is to control or direct something successfully.
a) recognize b) change c) play d) manage
- My sister is She plans her day and reviews her timetable.
a) specific b) careless c) organized d) disorganized
- The event was full surprises, music, and fun activities.
a) of b) at c) with d) on
- He showed no when he shouted at everyone in the room.
a) self-control b) self-defence c) strength d) focus
- Our class smoothly when everyone listens.
a) follows b) gets c) prepares d) runs
- During the lunch, students play and laugh loudly.
a) break b) sports c) movement d) responsibility
- Ramy sat in his seat in the class.
a) unusual b) abnormal c) strong d) usual
- I can manage my time well. The synonym of "manage" is ".....".
a) control b) ignore c) respect d) follow

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

runs – manage – produces – follows – period

Ahmed is an organized student. He keeps a schedule on his desk and (1) the timetable every day. Before school, he takes five minutes to review the timetable so he knows which (2) comes next. Because of his good habits, his week (3) smoothly. He even has time to prepare for the art fair. Staying organized helps him (4) his time and feel ready for any event.

Lesson 4

The Jungle Book

كتاب الغابة



Introduction about the Author:

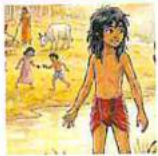
Rudyard Kipling (1865-1936) was a British writer, poet, and journalist. Born in India, he grew up surrounded by its culture and landscapes, which later inspired many of his stories. Kipling's most famous work, "The Jungle Book" (1894), is a collection of tales that mix adventure with moral lessons. It explores themes of identity, loyalty, courage, and the relationship between humans and nature. In 1907, Kipling became the first English writer to win the Nobel Prize in literature.

مقدمة عن المؤلف



Characters

الشخصيات



Mowgli:

The man-cub.
ماوكل: الشبل
البشري



Father and Mother Wolf:

The ones who discovered Mowgli in their cave.
الأب والأم: الذئبان اللذان
اكتشفا ماوكل في الكهف.



Shere Khan:

The wild tiger who hated Mowgli.
شيرخان: النمر
الشرس الذي يكره
ماوكل.



Baloo:

The bear who taught the Law of the Jungle.
بالو: الدب الذي يعلم
قانون الغابة.

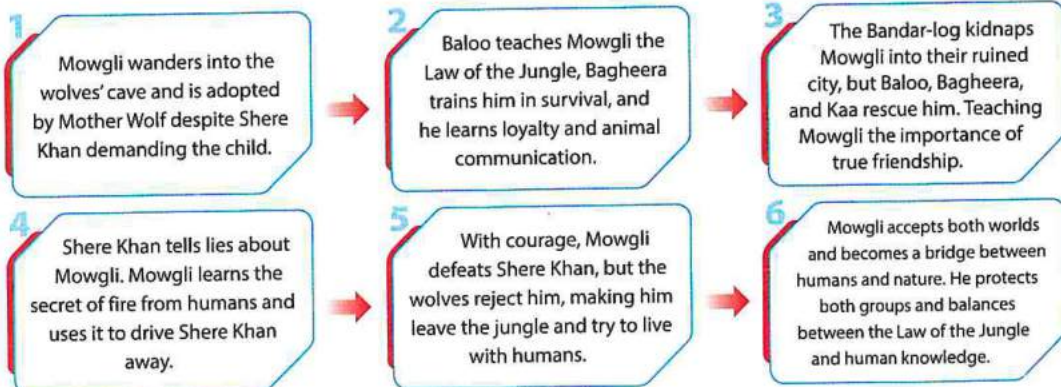


Bagheera:

The black panther who supported Mother Wolf.
باجيرا: النمر الأسود الذي
دعم الذئبة الأم.

EVENTS MAP

خريطة الأحداث



1

Chapter One: Found in the Jungle

Chapter (1) in points:

الفصل الأول في نقاط



1 A baby boy wandered from his village and was found by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf.

تاه طفل رضيع عن قريته، فعثر عليه الذئب الأب والذئبة الأم.

2 The animals were surprised to see a human child in a wolves' cave.

تفاجأت الحيوانات برؤية طفل بشري في كهف الذئاب.

3 Shere Khan demanded the child, claiming humans did not belong in the wild.

طالب شيرخان بالطفل، مدعياً أن البشر لا ينتمون إلى البرية.

4 Mother Wolf refused to give him up and declared the boy as her own.

رفضت الذئبة الأم التخلي عنه وأعلنت أن الصبي ابنها.

5 Baloo agreed to teach the child the Law of the Jungle, and Bagheera offered an ox to persuade the wolf pack to accept him.

وافق بالو على تعليم الطفل قانون الغابة، وعرض باجيرا ثوراً لإقناع قطيع الذئاب بقبوله.

6 The child was named Mowgli, "little frog," and joined the Seeonee wolf pack.

أطلق على الطفل اسم ماوكللي، أي «الضفدع الصغير»، وانضم إلى قطيع ذئاب سيونى.

7 Mowgli grew up learning the jungle ways, but Shere Khan continued to threaten him.

نشأ ماوكللي وهو يتعلم عادات الغابة، لكن شيرخان استمر في تهديده.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appear (ed) (v)	يظهر/يبدو	pack (n)	قطيع
cub (n)	صغير الحيوانات/شبل	ox (n)	ثور/ذكر البقرة
firmly (adv)	بشدة/بعزم	wander (ed) (v)	يتجول/يتوه
jungle (n)	أدغال/غابة كثيفة	wild (adj)	شرس

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

accept (ed) (v)	يقبل/يتقبل	freshly (adj)	بشكل طازج/حديثاً
aggressive (adj)	عدواني/هجومى	frog (n)	ضفدع
astonished (adj)	مدهش/مذهول	human child (n)	طفل بشرى
bear (n)	دب	killed (adj)	قتيل/مقتول
cave (n)	كهف/مغارة	man-cub (n)	طفل بشرى
deer (n)	غزال	panther (n)	فهد/نمر أسود
demand (ed) (v)	يطلب/يطلب	promise (d) (v)	يوعد/يعد
destroy (ed) (v)	يدمر	relaxed (adj)	مسترخ/هادئ
discover (ed) (v)	يكشف	remain (ed) (v)	يبقى/يظل
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	shadow (n)	ظل
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	support (ed) (v)	يدعم/يساند
forest (n)	غابة	the wild (n)	البرية/الحياة البرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

against	ضد	belong to	ينتمى إلى
at first	فى البداية/أولاً	in exchange of	فى مقابل/كتعويض عن
away from	بعيداً عن	take place	يحدث
based on	مبنى على		

Definitions التعريفات

cubs	أشبال	the young of a fox or lion
supported	يدعم/يساند	gave help and encouragement
pack	قطيع	a group of animals
wandered	يتجول	moved or walked in a relaxed way
wild	برى/متوحش	violent and aggressive

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Based on the title, where do you think the story takes place?
- 2 What animals do you expect to meet in a story called "The Jungle Book"?



Read the following text.

Lesson 4

SB page 20

Chapter One: Found in the Jungle

In the heart⁽¹⁾ of the Indian jungle⁽²⁾, a baby boy wandered away from his village and was discovered by Father Wolf⁽³⁾ and Mother Wolf. At first, the animals were astonished⁽⁴⁾. Why should a human child appear in the wolves' cave⁽⁵⁾? Shere Khan, the wild⁽⁶⁾ tiger, demanded the child for himself, saying that humans did not belong in the wild. But Mother Wolf stood firmly بحزم against him, saying the boy was hers now.

(1) قلب

(2) غابة/أدغال

(3) ذئب

(4) مذهش

(5) كهف

(6) شرس/عنيف

(7) قانون

(8) ثور

Who found the baby boy in the jungle?

Baloo the bear and Bagheera the black panther supported her. Baloo, who taught the Law⁽⁷⁾ of the Jungle to all young animals, promised to train the child. Bagheera offered the price of a freshly killed ox⁽⁸⁾ to the wolf pack قطيع so they would accept the boy. So, the child, named Mowgli "little frog", became part of the Seeonee wolf pack.

Who helped Mother Wolf take care of Mowgli?

Mowgli grew up running with the cubs, learning the ways of the forest. Though human in body, he was raised by the laws of the jungle. Yet the shadow of Shere Khan remained, for the tiger swore أقسم he would one day destroy the man-cub شبل الإنسان.

What did Mowgli learn while growing up with the wolf cubs?

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Who found Mowgli in the jungle?

من الذي وجد ماوكللي في الغابة؟

- Father Wolf and Mother Wolf found him.

2. What kind of animal is Shere Khan?

ما نوع الحيوان شيرخان؟

- Shere Khan is a tiger.

3. Who promised to train Mowgli?

من الذي وعد بتدريب ماوكللي؟

- Baloo the bear promised to train him.

4. What did Bagheera give to the wolf pack?

ماذا أعطى باجير لقطيع الذئاب؟

- Bagheera gave the price of a freshly killed ox.

5. What name did the wolves give the boy?

ما الاسم الذي أعطته الذئاب للطفل؟

- They named him Mowgli, which means "little frog."

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Mother Wolf wanted to protect Mowgli from Shere Khan?

لماذا تعتقد أن الذئبة الأم أرادت حماية ماوكللي من شيرخان؟

- I think she wanted to keep the baby safe and loved him.

2. Why did Baloo and Bagheera help Mowgli?

لماذا ساعد بالو وباجيرا ماوكللي؟

- They wanted him to learn the jungle and be safe.

3. How do you think Mowgli felt when he joined the wolf pack?

يرأيك كيف شعر ماوكللي عندما انضم إلى قطيع الذئاب؟

- He probably felt happy and safe with the wolves.

4. Do you think Shere Khan is a threat to Mowgli? Why?

هل تعتقد أن شيرخان يشكل تهديداً لماوكللي؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. Because he wants to hurt Mowgli and does not like humans.

5. What can we learn from the way the animals treated Mowgli?

ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم من طريقة معاملة الحيوانات لماوكللي؟

- We can learn about kindness, caring, and helping others.

A

- B**

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A baby boy away from his village and was discovered by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf.
a) accepted b) supported c) gave d) wandered
- The tiger, demanded the child for himself.
a) wild b) astonished c) relaxed d) based
- The Mother Wolf stood against the tiger, saying the boy was hers.
a) rudely b) silently c) firmly d) happily
- Mowgli became a part of the Seeone wolf
a) pack b) shadow c) jungle d) animal
- The animals were Why should a human child appear in the wolves' cave?
a) relaxed b) dead c) astonished d) killed

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- A baby boy was found in the jungle by two wolves. (.....)
- Shere Khan, the tiger, wanted to hurt the baby boy. (.....)
- Baloo the bear gave an ox to the wolf pack. (.....)
- Mowgli's name means "little frog." (.....)
- Mother Wolf said the boy was not hers and gave him to Shere Khan. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Who found the baby boy in the jungle?
.....
- What did Bagheera give to the wolf pack to let Mowgli stay?
.....
- What does the name "Mowgli" mean?
.....
- Why do you think Mother Wolf decided to protect the human child?
.....
- If you were in the wolf pack, would you have accepted Mowgli as one of your own? Why or why not?
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We teach students to have for their teachers and classmates.
a) worry b) fair c) respect d) schedule
- Sara took the of cleaning the board after class.
a) surprise b) responsibility c) problem d) reason
- You need to learn to manage your time. We add the prefix "....." to form the antonym of "manage".
a) dis- b) mis- c) il- d) ir-
- Please, move your bag. Add the suffix "....." to "move" to form its noun.
a) -ity b) -ment c) -less d) -ful

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My brother, Omar, is 13 years old. He has a fixed timetable. He follows the timetable every day. He knows his period for art is on Wednesday. He always brings his brush and lab book. He says being organized is his responsibility. He doesn't want to be careless or disorganized. He plans his week on Sunday. He reviews the timetable every morning. He uses his break to rest and smile. He says, "If I manage my time wisely, I can play and study." He produces great drawings in art class. He even helped his teacher direct the class during the fair. His teacher said, "Omar, you are a good example." Now, Omar feels proud. He says, "I am ready for everything because I am organized." His life runs smoothly, and he is happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Omar has a timetable.
a) changing b) fixed c) funny d) broken
- Omar says if he manages his time wisely, he can
a) skip school b) play and study
c) eat candy all day d) run away

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of this passage?

- What two things does Omar always bring to art class?

- What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Father Wolf carried the baby boy to Mother Wolf. (.....)
2. Shere Khan said that humans belonged in the wild. (.....)
3. Baloo taught the Law of the Jungle to young animals. (.....)
4. Mowgli was raised like a human child in a village. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Who gave the price of a bull to help Mowgli join the wolf pack?

.....

6. What might Mowgli's life teach us about belonging and family?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's important not to be cruel قاسى to animals. (Don't be)

.....

2. Don't forget to bring your PE uniform. (Always)

.....

3. It's not wise to sit too close to the TV. (You shouldn't)

.....

4. It's a good idea to do your homework before playing. (should)

.....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your school timetable"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. You must not be late for your doctor's appointment. (Don't)

.....

2. It's helpful to read English books every evening. (should)

.....

3. You are advised to wear a helmet when cycling. (should)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

duty (n)	واجب/مهمة	playground (n)	ملعب/ساحة المدرسة
gym (n)	صالة رياضية	principal (n)	مدير/ناظر
morning line (n)	طابور الصباح		

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

active (adj)	نشط/فعال	notebook (n)	دفتر/كراسة
attend (ed) (v)	يحضر	notice (n)	تنويه/ملاحظة
daily (adj/adv)	يومي/يوميًا	overall (adj/adv)	شامل/إجمالي
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	P.E. (physical education) (n)	تربية بدنية/رياضية
drama (n)	دراما/مسرحية	patient (adj)	صبور
floor (n)	طابق/دور	preparatory (adj)	إعدادي
friendly (adj)	ودود	remind (ed) (v)	يذكر/ينبه
helpful (adj)	مفيد/معاون/مساعد	scientific (adj)	علمي
library (n)	مكتبة (للقراءة والاستعارة)	suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a bit	قليلاً	on your phone	على هاتفك
confused about	مرتبك بشأن/بخصوص	present ideas to	يقدم الأفكار إلى
do experiments	يقوم بتجارب	share with	يشارك مع
make a chart	يعدّ رسمًا بيانيًا	start with	يبدأ بـ
make sense	يعطى معنى	write down	يدون/يسجل

Read and complete with a word from the list:

attend – down – up – make – palace

- 1 The teacher tells us to write the new words.
- 2 We the morning line before classes start.
- 3 A long red carpet covered the floor.
- 4 The teacher asked us to a chart for our project.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
friendly	ودود	kind	عطوف/طيب	unfriendly	غير ودود
patient	صبور/حليم	tolerant	متسامح	impatient	غير صبور
active	نشط/فعال	lively	حيوي	lazy	كسول

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
help (v)	يساعد	-ful	تحويل إلى صفة	helpful (adj)	مفيد/معاون
patient (adj)	صبور	im-	تعطى العكس	impatient (adj)	غير صبور
friendly (adj)	ودود	un-		unfriendly (adj)	غير ودود

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Anas is patient and waits his turn quietly. We add the prefix "....." to "patient" to get its opposite.
a) en- b) un- c) dis- d) im-
- 2 I am active and play football every day. The synonym of "active" is ".....".
a) impatient b) lively c) lazy d) kind
- 3 Can you help me carry this bag? To form the adjective of "help", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ion c) -ly d) -ment

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- How can school rules and timetables help us?

 Read the following dialog.

Ahmed Mahmoud, the **principal**⁽¹⁾ says we need to review the new school rules and timetable for this term.

Mahmoud Yeah, I saw the **notice**⁽²⁾. Some students were confused about the new schedule. What changes do you think we have to discuss?

Ahmed Well, we should start with the **morning line**⁽³⁾. It's now at 7:45, so everyone must arrive earlier.

Mahmoud That makes sense. It keeps the school more organized. We could also remind everyone to wear the school uniform every day.

Ahmed Right. And students mustn't use their phones during lessons. It's one of the most important rules.

Mahmoud True. We should also plan how to manage homework time-maybe each class could have a fixed study period after school.

Ahmed Good point! We can make a **chart**⁽⁴⁾ showing the daily timetable and class **duties**⁽⁵⁾.

Mahmoud Excellent! Let's present our ideas to the teacher tomorrow so everyone knows and follows the rules.



(1) مدير المدرسة

(2) ملاحظة

(3) طابور الصباح

(4) خريطة

(5) واجبات

Post-reading questions:

1 What did the principal ask the students to review?

2 What time does the new morning line start?

3 What rule did Ahmed mention about using phones?

4 What did Mahmoud suggest about homework time?

5 How do Ahmed and Mahmoud plan to share their ideas with others?

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you like most about your school?
- 2 How do teachers make learning fun for students?

Read the following dialog.

I am a student at a **preparatory**⁽¹⁾ school in Cairo. I want to tell you about my school life and what I think about it.

First, our school is an old building and has two **floors**⁽²⁾. We have 15 classrooms, a big **library**, one computer lab, and a gym.

Next, my teachers are very **helpful** and patient. My favorite teacher is Mrs. Nermin, who teaches English. She makes learning easy and **fun** with games and songs.

The students at my school are **friendly**⁽³⁾ and respectful. After school, I play in the school **playground**, and then I attend the art club. After that we also have **sports teams**⁽⁴⁾ and a **drama club**⁽⁵⁾.

Overall, I really like my school. The learning is good, and I have many friends. I think my school is a great place to **learn** and grow.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What was the building of the school before it became a school?
.....
- 2 How many classrooms are there in the school?
.....
- 3 What kind of food does the cafeteria serve?
.....
- 4 Why does the writer like Mrs. Nermin's English class?
.....
- 5 What does the writer think about the school at the end of the passage?
.....

Lesson 6

SB page 24



Writing Tip

A school report includes

1. Start with a title:
e.g. "My School Day"
2. Write an introduction:
Begin with general information
e.g. "Our school day starts at 7:30 and ends at 2:00".
3. Use paragraphs:
Each paragraph should talk about one idea.
4. Use time words:
e.g. "first, then, after that ..."
5. End with a conclusion.
Write your opinion or feeling:
e.g. "I enjoy my school because I learn many new things".

(1) إعدادي (2) طوابق/أدوار

(3) وودود (4) فرق رياضية

(5) نادي الدراما

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed was while waiting for the bus and never pushed anyone.
a) focused b) active c) patient d) scientific
- In science class, we use a notebook to write down facts.
a) preparatory b) active c) friendly d) scientific
- At school, we always start with the morning
a) line b) library c) lab d) scientific
- It is your to be on time for the for the meeting.
a) respectful b) notice c) right d) duty
- The is where we do P.E. and play sports.
a) lab b) library c) gym d) drama
- The is the person who manages and controls the school.
a) line b) experiment c) principal d) chart
- Basmala is very active and plays sports every day. She is all the time.
a) lively b) lazy c) tolerant d) impatient
- I help my mother in the kitchen. We add the suffix "....." to "help" to get its adjective.
a) -ness b) -er c) -ion d) -ful
- To write a good paragraph, you must start a clear topic.
a) with b) at c) to d) for
- You must ideas to your group before you write down your final project.
a) present b) serve c) remind d) make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

down – think – principal – gym – do

Every morning, I attend school and stand in the morning line with my classmates. We start with a short speech from the (1) After that, we go to our classroom on the second floor. In science, we (2) experiments and make a chart to show results. The teacher reminds us to write (3) our notes in our notebook. During P.E., we play in the playground or use the (4)



How to write a school report كيفية كتابة تقرير مدرسي

1. Start with a title.
2. Write an introduction:
e.g. Begin with general information.
3. Use paragraphs:
e.g. Each paragraph should talk about one main idea.
4. Use time words:
e.g. "first, then, after that ..."
5. End with a conclusion:
e.g. Write your opinion or feeling.



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A report on my science class"

I am writing about my science class. We have science every Monday and Wednesday. We start with a question, then we do experiments. We use materials like water, cups, and paper. We make a chart to show what we see. I write down my ideas in my notebook. My teacher is patient and helpful. She reminds us to be focused and safe. We discuss with our friends and share with the class. I feel happy when I see my chart. It makes sense now. I am not confused anymore. The principal says learning is fun when we try hard. I love science because I am active, focused, and I learn every day.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- To be, you must sit quietly and listen to the teacher.
a) active b) physical c) focused d) preparatory
- The science club was because they taught us how to do experiments.
a) daily b) helpful c) overall d) scientific
- Kady always speaks in a friendly way. Add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "friendly".
a) dis- b) un- c) in- d) im-
- Mr. Said is patient and never gets angry easily. The antonym of "patient" is ".....".
a) helpful b) lazy c) unfriendly d) impatient

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

share – serve – friendly – patient – attend

Our school has clear rules to help everyone feel safe. First, we must be (1) and friendly to others. We cannot use cell phones during class. If you forget something, ask a helpful friend to (2) with you. We must (3) all lessons every day and write down the homework. The principal reminds us that education means more than grades. It means to be (4)

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- It's important to share things with your friends. (You should)
.....
- It's not a good idea to spend all your money at once. (shouldn't)
.....
- Don't leave the tap running. (Never)
.....
- It's a good idea to plan your day. (should)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is asking Sara about their school rules and timetables.

Ali : What time does school start?

Sara : It (1)..... at 8 o'clock.

Ali : What's your first class?

Sara : My first class is English.

Ali : (2)..... you like it?

Sara : Yes. I like it very much.

Ali : What (3)..... we do in the English class?

Sara : We shouldn't use cell phones in class.

Ali : (4)..... can we practice?

Sara : We can practice in the school playground.

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your classroom rules"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Don't forget to check your timetable. (Always)

.....

2. It's not wise to tell lies. (You shouldn't)

.....

3. It's a good idea to practice speaking English. (should)

.....

4. Don't eat unhealthy food. (Never)

.....

Skills Bank Reading



1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
action	تصرف	hardly	بالكاد
regular	معتاد	repair	يصلح
achieve	يحقق	remain	يظل/يبقى

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

• What does the word "....." mean?

How to guess the meaning of a word:

كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. (اسم، فعل، صفة، ...)
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help you understand its meaning.
4. Make a guess.

FOR EXAMPLE:

In the classroom, students should arrive on time. They must listen carefully to their teachers and classmates. Talking while the teacher is speaking is not permitted. Students should raise their hands before speaking.

- The underlined word "permitted" means

- a) allowed b) refused c) disturbed d) annoyed

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Students must respect teachers and each other.

- ☐ يجب على الطلاب احترام المعلمين وبعضهم البعض.
☐ يجب على المعلمين احترام الطلاب وبعضهم البعض.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يساعد الجدول الزمني الطلاب على إدارة وقتهم بحكمة.

- ☐ The timetable helps students manage their time wisely.
☐ The timetable helps teachers manage their time wisely.

behavior	سلوك/ تصرف
hallway	ممر / دجحة
dress code	قواعد نظام الزي
rule	قاعدة/لائحة
forbidden	ممنوع/محظور
sneakers	حذاء رياضي/كوتشي
typical	نموذجي/معتاد
effectively	بفاعلية
organized	منظم
fair	معرض
manage (d)	يدير/يتحكم
self-control	ضبط النفس
responsibility	مسئولية
smoothly	بسهولة/بسهولة
jungle	ادغال
ox	ثور/ذكر البقرة
pack	قطيع
support (ed)	يدعم/يساند
fierce	شرس/عنيف
wander (ed)	يتجول

A. Speaking

Talking about the school rules

- How do school rules help students learn and work together?
By making the class calm and fair.
- Why does the school have a dress code?
To make everyone look neat and equal.
- What is forbidden in the classroom?
It is forbidden to shout, fight, or use cell phones in the classroom.
- Why do you think rules at schools are important?
Because rules help us stay safe and learn better.

B. Writing

My School Day

My school day starts at 7:30 in the morning. I wake up, get dressed, and eat my breakfast. Then I go to school with my friends. When the bell rings, we line up and walk to our classroom. Our first lesson is usually English, and I enjoy it a lot. After that, we study math, science, and Arabic. At break time, I play football in the playground. My teachers are kind and always help us. After the last lesson, I pack my bag and go home. I eat lunch, do my homework, and relax. My school day is busy but fun.

1) Imperatives

1) Affirmative:

We use the base form of the verb (without a subject).

e.g.

- Stop talking. (commands)
- Drink more water. (advice)
- Turn on the computer. (instructions)

2) Negative:

Don't + inf. الفعل في المصغر

- e.g. • Don't run in the hallway.
- Don't be late.

2) Giving Advice

1) Affirmative:

Subject + should + should + inf.

e.g. You should respect your school rules.

2) Negative:

Subject + shouldn't + inf.

e.g. You shouldn't talk in the library.

3) Question:

A) Yes/No question:

Should + subject + inf.

e.g. A: Should you have a rest?

B: Yes, we should. B: No, we shouldn't.

B) Wh- question:

Q. Word + should/shouldn't + subject + inf. + inf.?

e.g. A: What should you do at the library?

A Vocabulary

1 Read and complete using the words from the box:

uniform – timetable – library – follow – experiments

1. A is a schedule that shows your classes for each day of the week.
2. Students must wear their school every day at school.
3. Students should all school rules.
4. We borrow books and study quietly in the school
5. We enjoy doing scientific in the lab.

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. your homework before you play video games.
a) Should b) Do c) Shouldn't do d) Don't
2. You talk on your phone during class.
a) should b) don't c) shouldn't d) must
3. late for school! It's important to be on time.
a) Don't be b) Shouldn't be c) Be not d) Aren't
4. Students ask the teacher if they don't understand the lesson.
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) do
5. your school uniform every morning to look tidy.
a) Should wear b) Wear
c) Wears d) Shouldn't wear

C Writing

3 Write your own class report (90–100 words). Include the rules your class follows and your own timetable.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When does Lina plan her week?
 - Every Monday
 - Every Friday
 - Every Sunday
 - Every Saturday
- What did Lina produce for the art fair?
 - A model
 - A video
 - Beautiful drawings
 - A poster

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- When is her period for science?
- What does Lina check the night before science class?
- What makes Lina stressed?



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Please read the safety carefully before using the machine.
 - behaviors
 - roles
 - instructions
 - passages
- You can improve your by studying regularly and reviewing every day.
 - breaks
 - timetables
 - packs
 - results
- Remove "e" and add the suffix "....." to the word "responsible" to get its noun.
 - ment
 - less
 - ful
 - ity
- A means a long narrow passage in a building.
 - gym
 - lab
 - instructions
 - playground

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

required – managed – rule – raise – follow

Using a cell phone is forbidden during lessons. Why? Because it stops us from listening to the teacher and focusing on learning. Instead, we are asked to (1)..... our hands if we have a question. Teachers give clear instructions, and we should (2)..... them carefully. In the library, silence is (3)..... so everyone can read. Acting respectfully toward classmates is not just a (4)....., it's a way to build a better school community for all.



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's not a good idea to use your phone in class. (shouldn't)

.....

2. Don't shout at your little brother. (Never)

.....

3. It's a good idea to ask for help when needed. (should)

.....

4. It's important not to be late for your lessons. (Don't be)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Laila and Karim are talking about their timetable.

Laila : What do we study on Tuesday?

Karim : We study (1)..... and English.

Laila : (2)..... time is science class?

Karim : Science class is at nine o'clock.

Laila : Do we have music on Tuesday?

Karim : No, we (3)..... . It's on Thursday.

Laila : What do we have in the last period?

Karim : We have art in the last period.

Laila : Do you (4)..... art?

Karim : Yes, I do. It's fun.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your typical day at school"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8

**LEARN SMART,
LEARN EASY**

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main idea of a text about games and getting smarter.

Identify specific details.

Listening

Identify the gist of a text about games and getting smarter.

Identify how teachers make learning fun.

Identify a teacher's advice and belief about learning.

Speaking

Participate in a mini debate using reasons and vocabulary from the lesson.

Share ideas about how to make learning fun.

Discuss different study methods and learning preferences.

Language

Contrast connectors.

Writing

Create a "Study Tips" poster with 4-5 practical tips and explanations (90-100) words.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

combine (d) (v)	يُدمج/يخلط	expert (n)	خبير
concentration (n)	تركيز	mental (adj)	عقلي/ذهني
educational (adj)	تعليمي	participate in (d) (v)	يشارك في
effective (adj)	فعال	shy (adj)	خجول

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

mind (n)	عقل/ذهن	clearly (adv)	بوضوح
scientist (n)	عالم	real life (n)	الحياة الواقعية
research (n)	بحث علمي	develop (ed) (v)	يطور/ينمي/يتطور
certain (adj)	محدد/معين	quick thinking (n)	سرعة البديهة/التفكير السريع
improve (d) (v)	يحسن	development (n)	تطوير/تنمية/تطور
confident (adj)	واثق	smarter (adj)	أكثر ذكاءً
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى	growth (n)	نمو/تطور/زيادة

أنواع الألعاب Kinds of games

action game	لعبة أكشن/حركة	learning game	لعبة تعليمية
brain training game	لعبة تدريب للعقل	puzzle game	لعبة ألغاز
educational game	لعبة تعليمية	video game	لعبة فيديو

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

find a solution	يجد حلاً	popular with	محبوب من/لدى
focus on	يركّز على	put ... together	يجمع/يضع الأشياء معاً
get distracted	يتشتت	related to	متعلق بـ
good for	مفيد لـ	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

participate – with – at – improve – get

- 1 This book is popular young readers because it's easy and exciting.
- 2 Many students in sports after school.
- 3 I distracted easily when my phone is near me.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

active (adj)	نشيط	interactive (adj)	تفاعلي
distract (d) (v)	يششت	skill (n)	مهارة
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع/يحفز	style (n)	نمط
focused (adj)	محدد/مركز	motivating (adj)	محفّز/مشجع

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

activity (n)	نشاط	motivate (d) (v)	يشجع/يحفز
administrator (n)	مدير/مسئول	proper (adj)	مناسب/لائق
balance (d) (v)	يوازن	replace (d) (v)	يستبدل/يحل محل
basic (adj)	أساسي/رئيسي	role (n)	دور
digital (adj)	رقمي/إلكتروني	support (ed) (v)	يساند
engage (d) (v)	يشارك/يرتبط	tasks (n)	مهام
gradually (adv)	تدريجيا/بالتدريج	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
handle(v)	يعالج/يتعامل	tool (n)	أداة/وسيلة
learning goals (n)	أهداف تعليمية	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
method (n)	طريقة	training (n)	تدريب/تمرين

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

group work	عمل جماعي	practice the lesson	يتدرب على الدرس
join in	يشارك في	take time	يأخذ وقت
make sure	يتأكد	worry about	يقلق بشأن/على

Read and complete with a word from the list:

in – balance – on – interactive

- Mr. Mesbah uses games to make learning fun.
- Hana joined an activity at the sports club.
- Try to between screen time and studying.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
find	يجد	found	found
show	يوضح/يبين/يعرض	showed	shown/showed
speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
effective	فعال	helpful	متعاون	ineffective	غير فعال
improve	يحسن	boost	يحسن	worsen	تزداد سوءاً
distracted	مشتت	confused	مشوش	focused	مركز
popular	محبوب	common	شائع	unpopular	غير محبوب

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
concentrate (v)	يركز	-ion	تحويل إلى اسم	concentration (n) تركيز
develop (v)	يطور	-ment		development (n) تطوير/تنمية/تطور
administrate (v)	يدير	-or	تحويل إلى اسم فاعل	administrator (n) مدير/مسؤول
education (n)	تعليم	-al	تحويل إلى صفة	educational (adj) تعليمي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I was distracted by the noise outside the classroom. The antonym of "distracted" is ".....".
a) definite b) helpful c) unpopular d) focused
- The new phone a lot of money.
a) chooses b) costs c) shows d) begins
- I want to develop my reading skills. We add the suffix "....." to the verb "develop" to get the noun.
a) -ment b) -or c) -ion d) -ful
- Reading more books will improve your vocabulary. The synonym of "improve" is ".....".
a) show b) choose c) boost d) destroy

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you play video games? What games are they?
- 2 Can games help you learn? How?
- 3 What's your favorite game? Why is it fun?

 Read the following text. What advice does the writer give in the text?

Lesson 1

SB page 27

Many people think video games are just for fun, but scientists believe games can make you smarter! Research shows that certain games can improve **concentration**⁽¹⁾ and help players solve problems faster.

Brain training games are especially popular with students. These games focus on memory skills, math, and language learning. When you play puzzle games, your **brain**⁽²⁾ works harder to find **solutions**⁽³⁾.

This **mental**⁽⁴⁾ exercise helps you think more clearly in **real life**⁽⁵⁾.

However, experts say not all games are educational. Action games can develop **quick thinking**⁽⁶⁾, but players need to choose games **carefully**⁽⁷⁾. The best learning games combine fun with education. They make skill **development**⁽⁸⁾ enjoyable and effective.

Many teachers now use games in their classrooms. Students learn better when they're having fun. Games can make difficult subjects like math and science more interesting. They also help shy students **participate**⁽⁹⁾ actively in lessons.

So, can games make you smarter? The answer seems to be yes — if you choose the right games and don't play too much!



- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| (1) تركيز | (2) مخ |
| (3) حلول | (4) عقلي |
| (5) حياة واقعية | (6) التفكير السريع |
| (7) بعناية | (8) تنمية/تطوير |
| (9) يشارك | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Does the writer think video games can make you smarter?
- 2 What kind of games help your brain most?
- 3 Why do teachers use games in classrooms?
- 4 How can games help shy students?

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Do you like fun lessons? What makes a lesson fun for you?
- 2 How can you learn about space in a fun way?

Listen to the audio and answer the following questions:

SB page 29

Interviewer Good morning! Can you tell me how you make learning fun in your classroom?

Mrs. Manal Good morning! I use games and group activities to keep students active while they learn new **skills**⁽¹⁾.

Interviewer That sounds wonderful. Do all students enjoy these activities?

Mrs. Manal Most of them enjoy them, but some students prefer quieter **tasks**⁽²⁾, so I always try to **balance**⁽³⁾ both **styles**⁽⁴⁾.

Interviewer Interesting. However, games sometimes take a long time. How do you handle that?

Mrs. Manal I choose short and **focused**⁽⁵⁾ games that take only a few minutes but still help students practice the lesson.

Interviewer And what about technology? Do you use it in your lessons?

Mrs. Manal Yes, I use videos and **interactive**⁽⁶⁾ apps; however, I make sure they **support**⁽⁷⁾ the lesson and do not **distract**⁽⁸⁾ the students.

Interviewer How do you **motivate**⁽⁹⁾ shy students to join in?

Mrs. Manal I give them simple roles in group work while **gradually**⁽¹⁰⁾ encouraging them to speak and participate more.

Interviewer Do fun activities really improve learning?

Mrs. Manal Sure! Students remember information better when they enjoy the lesson; however, the most important thing is to have learning goals.



- | | |
|------------|-----------------------|
| (1) مهارات | (2) مهام |
| (3) يوازن | (4) أنماط |
| (5) مركز | (6) تفاعلي |
| (7) يدعم | (8) يشتت |
| (9) يحفز | (10) بالتدريج/تدرجياً |

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 How does Mrs. Manal choose the games for her students?
- 2 What kind of technology does Mrs. Manal use for her lessons?

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

combine	يجمع/يخلط	to put things together
concentration	تركيز	focusing your mind on one thing
experts	خبراء	people who know a lot about something
mental	عقلي/ذهني	related to the mind or thinking
participate	يشارك	to take part in an activity
shy	خجول	not confident to talk to others

1 help + (inf. / to + inf.)

يساعد

- Games **help** shy students participate/to participate actively in lessons.
- This mental exercise **helps** you think/to think more clearly in real life.

2 make + مفعول + adj.

يجعل

- Interactive games **make** math and science more interesting.

3 need to + inf.

يحتاج إلى أن

- Students still **need** to practice basic skills through traditional methods.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed didn't join the game because he felt around new people.
a) brave b) shy c) excited d) strong
- These colorful science games make the lesson for everyone.
a) excite b) exciting c) excites d) excitement
- Students need their reading skills through regular short stories.
a) improving b) to improve
c) improved d) to improving
- The new digital activities help young learners difficult words easily.
a) understood b) understanding
c) to understanding d) understand

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My brother is in class, but he talks a lot at home.
a) shy b) mental c) clear d) fun
- To means to put things together.
a) participate b) develop c) concentrate d) combine
- The teacher encouraged us to in the discussion.
a) find b) feel c) take place d) participate
- Some games are effective in learning. The synonym of "effective" is ".....".
a) unpopular b) confused c) ineffective d) helpful
- Basmala distracted during the test because the room was too noisy.
a) left b) believed c) focused d) got
- are people who know a lot about something.
a) Experts b) Players c) Puzzles d) Minds
- Scientists study how video games can mental skills.
a) begin b) participate c) develop d) seem
- I lost my when my phone rang.
a) memory b) concentration c) skill d) expert
- The scientist spent years doing on how the brain learns.
a) mind b) exercise c) research d) memory
- Good learners what they read with what they already know.
a) participate b) invite c) combine d) concentrate

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

learning – fun – smarter – shy – concentration

Playing educational games can help you develop your mind. I used to think at games were only for (1)....., but now I believe they can be good for (2)..... too. A brain training game helped me improve my memory and (3)..... . My friend, who is (4)....., joined me for fun, and now she says she feels better. Scientists say that if you play these games regularly, your brain grows. It's not magic. It's exercise for your mind.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The ringing phone me while I was studying.
a) focused b) distracted c) welcomed d) encouraged
2. The scientist tried to his old method with a new technique.
a) prepare b) replace c) practice d) engage
3. The group shared the equally so everyone had something to do.
a) tasks b) toys c) surprises d) drawings
4. A/An is a person who manages a school or a factory.
a) doctor b) nurse c) adventure d) administrator
5. Every year, teachers develop their teaching
a) styles b) active c) interactive d) shy
6. Concentrate during your classes. We remove the letter "e" from "concentrate" and add the suffix "....." to form its noun.
a) -or b) -al c) -ment d) -tion
7. Students were on learning in this class.
a) focused b) concentrated c) practiced d) balanced
8. Learning a new language can, so you must be patient.
a) take time b) make sure c) turn off d) worry about
9. Each scientist used a different to test the experiment.
a) movie b) method c) accident d) celebration
10. You should work on reaching your learning
a) goals b) matches c) guides d) races

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

expert – sure – interactive – skills – focused

Mr. Shabrawy's classes are never boring. He always uses (1) apps to make learning fun. Everyone is (2) during his explanations. These apps improve our learning (3) Mr. Shabrawy makes (4) that everyone joins in the activities.

روابط التناقض (But/However/While) Contrast Connectors

Grammar story:



Read and choose the correct answer:

Omar loves swimming, (but/and) his brother prefers running. They both like to stay healthy. (However/Because), they enjoy different sports. (While/So) Omar is in the pool, his brother is running around the park. Omar gets tired quickly, (but/because) his brother can run for a long time. They are different, (however/so) they always support each other.

We use contrast connectors to show differences or opposite ideas.

نستخدم أدوات الربط الخاصة بالتناقض لإظهار الاختلافات أو الأفكار المتعاكسة.

e.g. I like tea, **but** my sister likes coffee.

It's raining. **However**, we are still going out.

Sara was reading **while** her brother was playing games.

Connectors

Usage & Examples

It is used between two clauses in one sentence. It shows direct contrast.

تستخدم بين جملتين في جملة واحدة. وتظهر تناقضاً مباشراً.

✓ But

- Games are fun, **but** they should also be educational.
- I like coffee, **but** I don't like tea.
- Nada is young, **but** very smart.

It's used at the beginning of a new sentence. It's more formal than "but". It's always followed by a comma.

تستخدم في بداية جملة جديدة. وهي أكثر رسمية من كلمة «but». ويأتي دائماً بعدها فاصلة.

✓ However

- Students love video games. **However**, parents worry about too much screen time.
- It was raining. **However**, we decided to go out.
- Hana didn't study. **However**, she passed the exam.

It shows contrast between two simultaneous ideas. It can start a sentence or come in the middle.

تظهر تناقضاً بين فكرتين تحدثان في الوقت نفسه. ويمكن أن تأتي في بداية الجملة أو في منتصفها.

✓ While

- While** traditional methods work well, modern techniques engage students more.
- I enjoy city life **while** my brother likes the countryside.
- While** English is easy for me, math is difficult.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My sister loves eating spicy food I don't like eating it.
a) so b) as c) while d) because
- Nader studied for three hours, he still didn't pass the test.
a) but b) while c) because d) therefore
- The weather was sunny., it rained this morning.
a) Because b) So c) While d) However
- My parents work very hard, they don't have enough money for us.
a) because b) so c) while d) but
- Kady speaks French well, she didn't enjoy practising it.
a) but b) and c) so d) a and c

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I really like red apples, but my brother likes green ones. (However)
.....
- The small cat sleeps inside. The dog sleeps outside. (but)
.....
- In the morning, Adam felt tired. He went to school. (However)
.....
- Hala wants a new doll. However, she has no money. (but)
.....
- Today is a sunny day, but the wind is cold. (However)
.....
- The teacher was explaining the lesson. The students were writing their notes. (While)
.....
- My friend is very short. However, he plays basketball well. (but)
.....
- Celine loves chocolate. It is bad for teeth. (but)
.....
- The blue car is fast, but the red truck is slow. (while)
.....
- Yesterday, it rained all day, but we played outside happily. (However)
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Ahmed likes playing football, his best friend prefers drawing.
a) and b) for c) so d) but
- The restaurant was full of people., we found a table near the window.
a) However b) But c) While d) So
- my mom prefers sweet, my dad likes fruits.
a) But b) However c) While d) Because
- She wants to go to the club, she doesn't have the time.
a) but b) and c) because d) so
- We were playing computer games, We did our homework.
a) Because b) So c) And d) However

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- My brother watches TV every night. I read books before sleeping. (while)
.....
- She studied for the test. She failed. (However)
.....
- I like eating fruit. My sister prefers chocolate. (but)
.....
- My father works in an office. My mother works in a hospital. (While)
.....
- Tarek studies very hard. The test is difficult. (but)
.....
- My sister likes to draw, but I like to paint. (while)
.....
- The food looks very good. However, it tastes very spicy. (but)
.....
- Every day, we walk to the park, but never play. (However)
.....
- He runs very fast. However, he did not win the race. (but)
.....
- Ayla is a smart girl, but she is very quiet. (However)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





1) Participating in a mini debate about playing games at school

المشاركة في مناظرة صغيرة حول ممارسة الألعاب في المدرسة

For:	مع	Against:	ضد
Games help us learn better!	الألعاب تساعدنا على التعلم بشكل أفضل!	Games are just for fun; not school!	الألعاب لمجرد للمتعة، وليست للمدرسة!
I agree because ...	أوافق لأن ...	I don't agree because ...	لا أوافق لأن ...
I think games are good because ...	أعتقد أن الألعاب جيدة لأن ...	But sometimes they are not good because ...	لكن أحياناً ليست جيدة لأن ...

2) How teachers make learning fun

كيف يجعل المعلمون التعلم ممتعاً

If you were a teacher, how would you make learning fun?

- I would teach (subject/topic).
- I would use (game/song/etc.).
- It would be fun because

Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Hatem and Mahmoud are talking about how to make learning fun.

Hatem : How does your teacher make learning fun?

Mahmoud : She uses (1)..... in class.

Hatem : Games! (2)..... kind of games does she use?

Mahmoud : She uses spelling games.

Hatem : Do you like them?

Mahmoud : Yes, I (3)..... They are exciting.

Hatem : (4)..... your friends enjoy these games?

Mahmoud : Yes, my friends enjoy them, too.



How to write about how games make learning fun

كيفية الكتابة عن كيف تجعل الألعاب التعلم ممتعاً

1 Interest and Enjoyment

الاهتمام والمتعة

- Students feel happy while playing.
- Learning becomes exciting.

2 Teamwork and Communication

العمل الجماعي والتواصل

- Students talk and share ideas.
- They learn to help each other.

Games make learning fun

الألعاب تجعل التعلم ممتعاً

3 Practice and Memory

الممارسة والذاكرة

- Games help students remember words.
- Students practice grammar easily.

4 Motivation and Confidence

الدافع والثقة

- Students want to learn more.
- Games make them brave to speak.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Games make learning fun”

Games make learning fun and interesting for students. When students play games in class, they feel happy and excited to learn. They work together, talk to each other, and share ideas. Games help students remember new words and practice grammar in an easy way. When they make mistakes, they learn from them without feeling afraid. Playing games also gives students confidence and makes them want to learn more. Learning with games turns the classroom into a place full of joy and teamwork.

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who invited Ahmed to try the game?
 a) his teacher
 b) his cousin
 c) his uncle
 d) his friend from school
2. What did Ahmed think at first about learning games?
 a) They were too easy.
 b) They were only for children.
 c) Only books could help him learn.
 d) They were better than school.

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How does Ahmed feel about the game?
4. What change did his teacher notice in Ahmed's speaking?
5. Why was Ahmed afraid of the game?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Brain training games are a/an way to improve memory.
a) shy b) afraid c) effective d) distracted
- Students often use devices like tablets and laptops in class.
a) digital b) ancient c) natural d) heavy
- Students should concentrate on their studies. Add the suffix "....." to "concentrate" to get the noun.
a) -or b) -ion c) -ment d) -or
- Reading every day can improve your English. The antonym of "improve" is ".....".
a) practice b) choose c) develop d) worsen

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

to – with – thinking – learning – solve

Many people think that playing video games makes you lazy, but that's not true. Many games are popular (1)..... students. If you choose the right games, they are good for learning. I play a puzzle game after school. It helps me (2)..... problems and my memory has improved. My teacher says brain training games are related (3)..... real life because we need quick (4)..... and patience in class too.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The team worked hard. They didn't win the match. (but)
.....
2. The story was interesting. It was a little too long. (However)
.....
3. Rana was cooking dinner. Her brother was cleaning his room. (While)
.....
4. The weather was nice. We stayed indoors. (However)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Laila and Omar are talking about games at school.

Laila : Should we play games at school?

Omar : Yes, we (1).....

Laila : (2)..... do you think so?

Omar : I think so because games make learning exciting.

Laila : What can games teach us?

Omar : Games can teach us (3).....

Laila : Teamwork! When (4)..... you play games?

Omar : We can play games after lessons.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Games are fun at schools"

.....

.....

.....

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mazen didn't practice the piano. He played very well at the concert. (However)
.....
2. I enjoy swimming in the pool. I am afraid of the sea. (but)
.....
3. My sister loves drawing. I prefer listening to music. (while)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

anxious (adj)	قلق/متوتر	memorize (d) (v)	يحفظ/يستذكر
empathize (d) (v)	يتعاطف	meaningful (adj)	ذو معنى/هادف
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	smart learning (n)	التعلم الذكي

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

bored (adj)	ملل/ضجر	joy (n)	فرح/بهجة
communication (n)	تواصل/تخاطب	naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي/تلقائياً
creative (adj)	مبدع/مبتكر	nervous (adj)	متوتر/عصبي
culture (n)	ثقافة	powerful (adj)	قوى/مؤثر/فعال
emotion (n)	عاطفة/شعور	pronunciation (n)	نطق
fact (n)	حقيقة/واقع	purpose (n)	غرض/هدف
feelings (n)	مشاعر/عواطف	role (n)	دور
focus (n)	تركيز	storytelling (n)	سرد/رواية
form (ed) (v)	يشكل/يكون	value (n)	قيمة
importance (n)	أهمية		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

around the world	حول العالم	explore ideas	يستكشف الأفكار
build confidence	يبني الثقة	instead of	بدلاً من
connect knowledge to	يصل المعرفة بـ	learn with	يتعلم باستخدام
create a happy atmosphere	يخلق جوّاً سعيداً	turn ... into	يحول (شيئاً ما) إلى

Read and complete with a word from the list:

purpose – empathize – of – on

- 1 We played football instead watching TV.
- 2 The of the game is to improve math skills.
- 3 I with my friend when she feels sad.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
make يصنع	made	made

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (opposite) عكسها
anxious قلق/متوتر	worried قلق	calm هادئ
modern حديث/عصري	new جديد	old/ancient قديم
exciting مثير	interesting شيق	boring مممل

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
meaning (n) معنى	-ful	تحويل إلى صفة	meaningful (adj) ذو معنى/هادف
empathy (n) تعاطف	-ize	تحويل إلى فعل	empathize (d) (v) يتعاطف

Definitions التعريفات

interactive تفاعلي/متفاعل	involving active participation and communication
anxious قلق/متوتر	worried or nervous
meaningful ذو معنى/هادف	having real importance or purpose
imagine يتخيل/يتصور/يفترض	to form ideas in the mind about something
empathize يتعاطف	to understand other's feelings

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We study in a modern school with smart boards. The antonym of "modern" is ".....".
a) calm b) new c) ancient d) worried
- To means to understand other's feelings.
a) form b) imagine c) worry d) empathize
- I felt anxious before my final exam. The synonym of "anxious" is ".....".
a) worried b) calm c) new d) old

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

1 Do you like learning with songs, stories, or videos? Why?

2 How do you usually remember new information best?

Read the following text. What activities make learning more fun and effective.

SB Page 31

Today, schools around the world are moving towards smart learning. This modern way of education uses **digital tools**⁽¹⁾, songs, and stories to make lessons more exciting. Instead of **memorizing**⁽²⁾ facts, students explore ideas in a creative and **interactive**⁽³⁾ way. Smart learning helps students connect **knowledge**⁽⁴⁾ to real life and enjoy every moment of study.



Singing is not only fun—it also helps with memory and **pronunciation**⁽⁵⁾. When students sing educational songs, they remember vocabulary and grammar more easily. Music improves focus, builds **confidence**⁽⁶⁾, and creates a happy atmosphere in the classroom. Teachers often use songs to make students repeat new phrases naturally without feeling bored or anxious.

(1) أدوات رقمية (2) تذكر

(3) تفاعلي (4) معرفة

(5) نطق (6) ثقة

(7) قيم (8) تعاطف

Stories are another powerful tool in smart learning. Through stories, students learn about **values**⁽⁷⁾, emotions, and culture. They also practice listening, reading and speaking skills. Good stories make lessons more meaningful and help students imagine and **empathize**⁽⁸⁾ with others. Together, singing and storytelling turn classrooms into creative spaces full of learning and joy.

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 What makes smart learning different from traditional learning?

2 How does singing help students in class?

3 Why are stories important in smart learning?

4 Which technique do you enjoy more — singing or storytelling? Why?

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I get anxious when I can't find my phone. The antonym of "anxious" is ".....".
 a) interactive b) bored c) calm d) worried
- Samy tried to hide his during the game.
 a) forms b) emotions c) memory d) storytelling
- The teacher's smile helped the shy student confidence.
 a) avoid b) begin c) repeat d) build
- Children can numbers and letters by using songs and games.
 a) memorize b) remind c) skip d) break
- You can a happy atmosphere by smiling and being kind.
 a) repeat b) create c) push d) memorize
- To is to form ideas in the mind about something.
 a) connect b) empathize c) memorize d) imagine
- Can you explain the meaning of this word? We add the suffix "....." to the word "meaning" to form an adjective.
 a) -ous b) -ize c) -ful d) -ing
- Good friends learn to when someone is sad.
 a) form b) repeat c) empathize d) create
- The teacher encouraged students to be in their writing.
 a) creative b) boring c) careless d) nervous
- The students understood the of the experiment before starting.
 a) phrase b) culture c) purpose d) communication

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

pronunciation – memorize – explores – turns – build

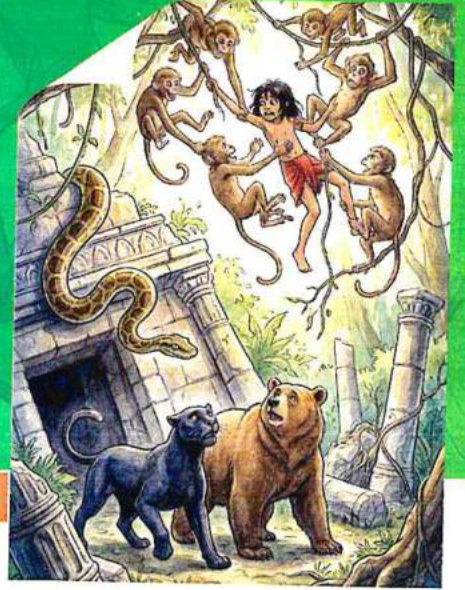
I used to feel anxious when I had to sing in front of my class. I was worried everyone would laugh. But my teacher said, "Don't (1)..... the words, just feel them." She played a simple song, and we sang together. Slowly, my (2)..... became clearer. I didn't need to be perfect. I just needed to try. Now, singing helps me (3)..... confidence. It's not about being loud. It's about being naturally happy. Music (4)..... fear into joy.

2

Chapter Two: The Law of the Jungle

Chapter (2) in points:

الفصل الثاني في نقاط



1 Baloo taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.

بدأ بالو تعليم ماوكللي قانون الغابة.

2 He taught him respect, loyalty, and warning cries.

علّمه الاحترام والولاء ونداءات التحذير.

3 Bagheera trained him to hide, climb, and stay safe.

درّبته باجيرا على الاختباء والتسلق وأن يبقى في أمان.

4 Mowgli loved his teachers and followed their advice.

أحب ماوكللي معلميه واتبع نصائحهم.

5 One day, the Bandar-log kidnapped Mowgli.

ذات يوم خطفه باندار-لوج.

6 They took him to the treetops to make him their leader.

أخذوه إلى قمم الأشجار ليجعلوه زعيمهم.

7 Mowgli realized their promises were false.

أدرك ماوكللي أن وعودهم كاذبة.

8 Baloo, Bagheera, and Kaa attacked the monkeys' city.

هاجم بالو وباجيرا وكا مدينة القردة.

9 Kaa's strength scared the monkeys away.

قوة كا أخافت القردة وأبعدتهم.

10 Mowgli learned that true friendship needs loyalty and respect.

تعلم ماوكللي أن الصداقة الحقيقية تحتاج للولاء والاحترام.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

hopeless (adj)	ميئوس منه/عديم الأمل	scare (d) (v)	يخيف
kidnap (ped) (v)	يختطف	tough (adj)	صعب/قاس/شديد
naughty (adj)	شقي/مشاغب	warning (n)	تحذير/إنذار

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

behavior (n)	سلوك/تصرف	log (n)	جذع/حطب
chaotic (adj)	فوضى/غير منظم	loyalty (n)	ولاء/إخلاص
coils (n)	لفائف/ملفات	python (n)	بيثون (ثعبان كبير غير سام)
creature (n)	مخلوق/كائن	ruined (adj)	مدمر/خرب
false promises (n)	وعود زائفة/كاذبة	self-defense (n)	دفاع عن النفس
giant (n)	عملاق	strength (n)	قوة/صلابة
guardian (n)	وصي/حارس	struggle (n)	كفاح/نضال
hiding (n)	اختباء/تخفي	true friendship (n)	صداقة حقيقية
honor (n)	شرف/تكريم	trusted (adj)	موثوق/مأمون
hunting grounds (n)	أراضي الصيد	wild (adj)	بري

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	follow advice	يتبع النصيحة/يعمل بالنصيحة
break the law	يخالف القانون/ينتهك القانون	grateful for	ممتن لـ/شاكر لـ
cause trouble	يسبب المشاكل	play tricks	يقوم بالاعيب
drive away	يقود بعيداً/يطرد	respect for	احترام لـ/تقدير لـ

Definitions التعريفات

scared	خائف/مرعوب	frightened of something or nervous to do something
warning	تحذير/إنذار	a sign to help avoid danger
tough	قاس/شديد	a person who is strong or rough قاس/حاد
naughty	شقي/مشاغب	liking to play tricks or cause trouble
hopeless	ميئوس منه	feeling no hope
kidnapped	مختطف	taken away by force بالقوة

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What kind of lessons do you think Mowgli might learn from Baloo and Bagheera in the jungle?
- 2 What do you think might happen if someone in the jungle breaks the "Law of the Jungle"?

 Read the following text. Who rescued Mowgli?

SB Page 33

Chapter Two: The Law of the Jungle

Baloo began Mowgli's training in the Law of the Jungle⁽¹⁾. He taught him respect for the hunting grounds, the importance of loyalty⁽²⁾, and the warning cries of different animals. Bagheera added lessons of hiding, climbing, and self-defense. Though sometimes tough قاس/شديد, Mowgli loved his teachers and followed their advice.

Why do you think it was important for Mowgli to learn the Law of the Jungle?

Yet not all creatures⁽³⁾ followed the law. One day, the naughty Bandar-log, the monkey, kidnapped⁽⁵⁾ Mowgli. They carried him high into the tress, saying that they would make him their leader. But the Bandar-log were chaotic⁽⁶⁾ without order or honor. Mowgli soon realized their false promises.

How did Mowgli know the monkeys were not trustworthy?

Baloo and Bagheera, hopeless⁽⁷⁾ to save their pupil, asked for help from Kaa, the giant python. Together, they stormed the monkeys' ruined city. In a wild struggle, Kaa's coils⁽⁸⁾ and the guardians⁽⁹⁾ strength scared and drove away the Bandar-log. Mowgli was saved, grateful for the loyalty of his friends.

Why did Baloo and Bagheera need Kaa's help to rescue Mowgli?

This adventure taught him that not all who call themselves friends can be trusted. True friendship⁽¹⁰⁾, he realized, came from loyalty and respect⁽¹¹⁾.

What does true friendship mean to you after reading this chapter?

(1) قانون الغابة

(2) إخلاص

(3) مخلوقات

(4) شقي/مشاعب

(5) مختطف

(6) فوضوى

(7) ميئوس منه/عديم الأمل

(8) ملفات/لفائف

(9) حراس

(10) صداقة

(11) احترام

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Who taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle?

من علّم ماوكلّي قانون الغابة؟

- Baloo and Bagheera taught him.

2. What did the Bandar-log promise Mowgli?

ماذا وعد باندار-لوج ماوكلّي؟

- They promised to make him their leader.

3. Why couldn't Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli alone?

لماذا لم يستطيع بالو وباجيرا إنقاذ ماوكلّي وحدهما؟

- Because the monkeys were too many and too wild.

4. Who helped Baloo and Bagheera rescue Mowgli?

من ساعد بالو وباجيرا في إنقاذ ماوكلّي؟

- Kaa, the giant python, helped them.

5. What did Mowgli learn about the Bandar-log?

ماذا تعلّم ماوكلّي عن باندار-لوج؟

- He learned they don't follow any rules and can't be trusted.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think the Law of the Jungle is important for all animals?

لماذا تعتقد أن قانون الغابة مهم لجميع الحيوانات؟

- Because it keeps the jungle safe, fair, and peaceful for everyone.

2. What does this chapter teach us about true friendship?

ماذا يعلمنا هذا الفصل عن الصداقة الحقيقية؟

- It teaches us that true friends help you, protect you, and stay loyal even in danger.

3. Why didn't the monkeys' promises work?

لماذا لم تنجح وعود القرود؟

- Because they talked a lot but had no plan, no rules, and no loyalty.

4. How did Mowgli show bravery during the rescue?

كيف أظهر ماوكلّي شجاعته أثناء عملية الإنقاذ؟

- He stayed calm and trusted his friends, even when he was scared.

5. What would happen if no one followed the Law of the Jungle?

ماذا سيحدث لو لم يتبع أحد قانون الغابة؟

- The jungle would become chaotic and dangerous, like the monkeys' world.

Chapter 2 Exercises

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

1. scared
2. warning
3. tough
4. naughty
5. hopeless
6. kidnapped

B

- a) taken away by force
- b) liking to play tricks or cause trouble
- c) a sign to help avoid danger
- d) frightened of something or nervous to do out something
- e) a person who is strong or rough
- f) feeling no hope

2 Answer the following questions:

1. Who began Mowgli's training?
.....
2. Which animal helped Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli?
.....
3. How did Mowgli feel after he was saved?
.....
4. Who kidnapped Mowgli? Why?
.....
5. What kind of animal is Kaa?
.....
6. How is the behavior of Bandar-log described in the story?
.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Baloo taught Mowgli how to hunt animals only. (.....)
2. Bagheera's lessons included hiding and climbing. (.....)
3. The Bandar-log made Mowgli their leader. (.....)
4. Mowgli learned that loyalty and respect are parts of true friendship. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. Why do you think Baloo taught Mowgli the cries of different animals?
2. What does the story teach us about the difference between true friends and false friends?

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Baloo began Mowgli's training in the of the Jungle.
a) rescue b) behavior c) law d) struggle
- Bagheera taught Mowgli important skills like hiding, climbing, and
a) loyalty b) self-defense c) honor d) order
- The Bandar-log are described as without order or honor.
a) tough b) grateful c) chaotic d) loyal
- Baloo and Bagheera felt when they couldn't save Mowgli alone.
a) naughty b) scared c) hopeless d) wild
- Kaa helped by using his powerful to frighten the monkeys.
a) cries b) coils c) promises d) grounds

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Baloo taught Mowgli to respect hunting grounds and learn animal warning cries. (.....)
- The Bandar-log followed the Law of the Jungle carefully. (.....)
- Bagheera and Baloo rescued Mowgli without any help. (.....)
- Kaa is a giant python who helped save Mowgli. (.....)
- Mowgli learned that true friendship is based on loyalty and respect. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why did Bagheera and Baloo teach Mowgli the Law of the Jungle?
.....
- What lessons did Bagheera teach Mowgli?
.....
- Why did the Bandar-log kidnap Mowgli?
.....
- Why couldn't Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli by themselves?
.....
- What important lesson did Mowgli learn from this adventure?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Children love games because they think while playing.
a) worried b) powerful c) interactive d) bored
- The students wanted to do something to help the community.
a) meaningful b) harmful c) shallow d) silent
- Most schools use modern devices. The antonym of "modern" is ".....".
a) new b) old c) calm d) worried
- The teacher showed empathy to the sad student. We remove "y" and add the suffix "....." to "empathy" to form a verb.
a) -or b) -ful c) -ous d) -ize

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In our schoolyard, there is a big old tree. We call it the Storytelling Tree. Every Thursday, we sit under it and tell stories in English. One child talked about a dragon who was afraid of fire. Another talked about a star that forgot how to shine. We didn't use big words. We used feelings. When someone said they were upset, we didn't laugh. We listened. Our teacher says, "Stories are not about perfect pronunciation. They are about purpose." We explore ideas like, "What if animals could talk?" We don't repeat the same story twice. We create a happy atmosphere by being kind. Last week, a quiet boy told a story about his dog. He spoke so softly. That's when I understood—the most **powerful** voice isn't the loudest. It's the one that tells the truth.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children tell stories under the tree because they want to
a) practice grammar b) create a happy atmosphere
c) get good grades d) compete with each other
- The word "**powerful**" in the passage means a voice that is
a) very loud b) full of truth and courage
c) very fast d) full of new words

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of this passage?
.....
- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?
.....
- Why do you think the teacher says stories are about "purpose"?
.....

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Baloo taught Mowgli to ignore animal warning cries to be brave. (.....)
2. The Bandar-log respected the Law of the Jungle and kept their promises. (.....)
3. Bagheera helped Mowgli learn skills like climbing and self-defense. (.....)
4. Kaa refused to help Baloo and Bagheera because he didn't care about Mowgli. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Baloo and Bagheera need help to rescue Mowgli?
6. How did Mowgli know the Bandar-log were not true friends?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I like swimming, but I don't like deep water. (However)
.....
2. My brother studies hard. I prefer playing games. (but)
.....
3. The movie was long. I enjoyed it a lot. (However)
.....
4. Mariam is friendly. Her sister is very shy. (While)
.....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Smart learning"

.....
.....
.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.



Challenging Questions

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. They bought ice cream. It melted before they ate it. (However)
.....
2. I like playing football. My best friend likes chess. (while)
.....
3. She didn't study for the quiz. She got full marks. (but)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

definition (n)	تعريف/تفسير	photosynthesis (n)	التمثيل/البناء الضوئي
edutainment (n)	التعليم الترفيهي	strategy (n)	إستراتيجية/أسلوب
feedback (n)	ملاحظات/تغذية راجعة	struggle (d) (v)	يكافح/يناضل

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق	graphic novel (n)	رواية/قصة مصورة
aloud (adv)	بصوت عالٍ	poem (n)	قصيدة
animation (n)	رسوم متحركة	practical (adj)	عملي/تطبيقي
argument (n)	جدال/نقاش	preference (n)	تفضيل
classical (adj)	كلاسيكي/تقليدي	process (n)	عملية/إجراء
consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر/يفكر في	rhythm (n)	إيقاع/نغمة
diagram (n)	رسم بياني	several (adj)	عديد
documentaries (n)	أفلام /برامج وثائقية	song lyrics (n)	كلمات/نص الأغنية
educational comics (n)	قصص تعليمية مصورة	suit (ed) (v)	يناسب/يلتئم
entertain (ed) (v)	يسلى/يرقه	time management (n)	إدارة/تنظيم الوقت
familiar (adj)	مألوف/معروف	upcoming (adj)	قادم/مقبل
flashcard (n)	بطاقة تعليمية	visual memory (n)	الذاكرة البصرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

connect to	يتصل/يرتبط بـ	Practice makes perfect!	الممارسة تؤدي إلى الإتقان (التكرار يعلم الشطار)
get a high score	يحصل على درجة عالية	process information	يعالج المعلومات
in silence	في صمت/بهدهوء	rain heavily	تمطر بغزارة
make a story	يؤلف قصة	set a goal	يضع هدفًا
make flashcards	يعد بطاقات تعليمية	stay up late	يسهر
method for	طريقة/أسلوب لـ	work for you	يناسبك/يجدى نفعًا لك

Read and complete with a word from the list:

in – on – diagram – suit

- 1 The teacher drew a of the sun and the earth to help us understand.
- 2 The blue shirt doesn't him; the red one looks better.
- 3 He cried silence, because he didn't want anyone to know he was sad.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
suit	يناسب/يلائم	match/fit	يناسب	mismatch	لا يناسب
familiar	مألوف/متعود عليه	common	شائع	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
motivated	متحمس/متحفز	inspired	ملهم	unmotivated	غير متحفز

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
achieve (v)	يحقق	-able	تحويل إلى صفة	achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق
prefer (v)	يفضل	-ence	تحويل إلى اسم	preference (n)	تفضيل
read (v)	يقرأ	re-	تشير إلى الإعادة	reread (v)	يقرأ مرة أخرى
motivate (v)	يحمس/يحفز	-ion	تحويل إلى اسم	motivation (n)	حماس/تحفيز

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 This word is familiar to me because I see it every day. The synonym of "familiar" is ".....".
a) unfamiliar b) common c) mismatch d) inspired
- 2 I read a short story every night. To make the verb "read" means to read again, add the prefix ".....".
a) ir- b) un- c) en- d) re-
- 3 The blue color suits her. It looks calm and nice. The antonym of "suit" is ".....".
a) mismatch b) fit c) prefer d) achieve
- 4 We can achieve big things if we try little by little. Remove "e" and add the suffix "....." to "achieve" to form its adjective.
a) -ion b) -able c) -ence d) -ous

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How do you usually study for a test?
- 2 Do you like using flashcards when you study?

Read this conversation between Samir and Maher who are discussing study methods for an upcoming test.

SB Page 35

Samir Hey Maher, how are you preparing for the science test? I'm **struggling**⁽¹⁾ with the vocabulary.

Maher I use flashcards. You should try making your own—they help me memorize **definitions**⁽²⁾.

Samir I've tried, but they got boring.

Maher Add colors and pictures! I draw **diagrams**⁽³⁾. Visual memory really helps.

Samir Good idea. But what about long processes, like **photosynthesis**⁽⁴⁾?

Maher Make a story! Connect each step to something familiar. Understanding is better than memorizing.

Samir I usually just reread notes. Maybe I need to change.

Maher **Definitely**⁽⁵⁾. What helps you remember in daily life?

Samir Song lyrics!

Maher Perfect! Turn facts into songs.

Samir **Brilliant**⁽⁶⁾! I also teach my sister.

Maher Let's study together and mix our **methods**⁽⁷⁾!



- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| (1) يكافح | (2) تعريفات |
| (3) رسوم توضيحية | (4) البناء الضوئي |
| (5) بالتأكيد | (6) رائع |
| (7) طرق | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What two methods does Maher suggest for learning science vocabulary?
- 2 Why does Maher say "understanding is better than memorizing"?
- 3 How does Samir use music to help him learn?
- 4 What does Samir do with his sister, and how might that help him learn?
- 5 What can you learn from this conversation about how to study smarter—not harder?

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The new app uses to help children learn math while having fun.
a) definition b) preference c) edutainment d) memory
- The teacher shared a practical for time management that works for everyone.
a) feedback b) definition c) process d) strategy
- My brother and I had a/an over which learning style is most effective.
a) motivation b) argument c) rhythm d) diagram
- The science book used a clear to explain the process of photosynthesis.
a) definition b) animation c) diagram d) rhythm
- Mayar prefers eating fish. To get the noun of the verb "prefer", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ence b) -ness c) -ly d) -able
- To is to try hard to do something.
a) struggle b) keep c) compare d) suit
- You should your learning style before choosing a study method.
a) entertain b) suit c) consider d) reread
- This blue shirt will suit you because the color is nice. The synonym of "suit" is ".....".
a) entertain b) connect c) practice d) match
- I'm not with this word. Can you explain it?
a) achievable b) classical c) familiar d) motivated
- I want to a high score on my next English vocabulary test.
a) consider b) entertain c) struggle d) get

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

boring – for – to – visual – comics

I used to struggle with English because I tried to memorize definitions like a robot. Then I discovered my learning style: I have a (1)..... memory. I watch educational (2)..... and animation to understand more. I don't like reading long texts because they get (3)..... . But when I listen to the rhythm of song lyrics or read a poem aloud, I remember everything. My teacher says this method works (4)..... me. Practice makes perfect.



What's Better for Learning?

ما الأفضل للتعلم؟

Sharing Your Methods:	مشاركة طرقك:	Giving Advice:	إعطاء نصائح:
- I usually ...	أستخدم عادةً ...	- You should try ...	يجب أن تجرب ...
- What works for me is ...	ما يناسبني هو ...	- Why don't you ...?	لماذا لا تجرب ...؟
- I find it helpful to ...	أجد أنه مفيد أن ...	- Have you considered...?	هل فكرت في ...؟
- My strategy is to ...	استراتيجيتي هي ...	- It might help to ...	قد يساعدك أن ...
- I prefer to ...	أفضل أن ...		
Asking About Methods:	السؤال عن الطرق:	Responding to Suggestions:	الرد على الاقتراحات:
- How do you remember ...?	كيف تتذكر ...؟	- That's a good/great idea!	هذا فكرة جيدة/رائعة.
- What's your strategy for ...?	ما هي استراتيجيتك في ...؟	- I never thought of that.	لم أفكر قط في ذلك.
- Do you find it useful to ...?	هل تجد أنه مفيد أن ...؟	- That sounds interesting.	يبدو ذلك مثيراً للاهتمام.
		- I'm not sure that would work for me.	لست متأكدًا أن هذا سيناسبني.
		- I'll definitely try that.	سأجرب هذا بالتأكيد.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Youssef and Ahmed are talking about remembering new words.

Ahmed: How do you remember spelling new words?

Youssef: I find it helpful to write them five times.

Ahmed: That sounds interesting. (1)..... you also say them aloud?

Youssef: Yes, I usually say them aloud.

Ahmed: (2)..... is your strategy for learning math?

Youssef: My strategy is to use flashcards.

Ahmed: Flashcards! You (3)..... try singing them. It works for me.

Youssef: I'll definitely (4)..... that.



How to write about Creating a "Study Tips" Poster

كيفية الكتابة عن إنشاء «ملصق نصائح دراسية»

Tip (1): Find a Quiet Place:

النصيحة (١): ابحث عن مكان هادئ

Choose a quiet spot to study. It helps you focus and finish your work faster.

Tip (2): Make a Study Schedule:

النصيحة (٢): ضع جدولاً للدراسة

Study at the same time every day. A routine makes learning easier.

Tip (3): Take Short Breaks:

النصيحة (٣): خذ فترات راحة قصيرة

Rest for a few minutes after studying. Breaks help your mind stay fresh.

Tip (4): Use Simple Tools:

النصيحة (٤): استخدم أدوات بسيطة

Keep a notebook, a pen, and a highlighter. These tools help you stay organized.

Tip (5): Review Your Notes:

النصيحة (٥): راجع ملاحظاتك

Read your notes again every evening. This helps you remember information better.

Now write a paragraph using these tips:

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

Students can follow these tips to help them learn better at school. First, they should find a quiet place to study because it helps them focus. They can also make a study schedule so they study at the same time every day. It is helpful to take short breaks to keep the mind fresh. Students should use simple tools like a notebook and a pen to stay organized. They can review their notes every evening to remember the information more easily.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I flashcards every day to memorize new vocabulary and definitions.
a) connect b) make c) struggle d) suit
- I study silence because I focus better without music or distractions.
a) by b) for c) on d) in
- I will reread the story to understand it better. The prefix "re-" in "reread" means
a) none b) again c) too d) once
- Hani stays motivated by setting small goals for himself. The synonym of "motivated" is ".....".
a) inspired b) common c) upcoming d) visual

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

animation – method – visual – make – connect

My brother thinks studying means reading books all day. But I have a (1) memory. I watch documentaries about ancient Egypt. They teach me history and English at the same time. I don't feel like I'm studying; I feel like I'm watching a movie. The (2) makes the process of building pyramids easy to understand. I even (3) a story from what I hear. This (4) suits me better than silent reading.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I lost my keys, but I could get into the house. (However)
.....
- It was very hot. We went out for walking. (but)
.....
- My aunt likes traveling. My uncle likes staying at home. (while)
.....
- I was tired. I continued studying. (However)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Sara draws parts of a plant and colors each part to remember them.

Ahmed: How do you remember the parts of a plant, Sara?

Sara : I (1)..... them and color each part.

Ahmed : (2)..... you write the name under each picture?

Sara : Yes, I write the name under each picture.

Ahmed : What (3)..... you do to remember facts?

Sara : I should imagine facts as stories to remember them.

Ahmed : (4)..... you try making stories for your lessons?

Sara : No, I didn't. But I'll try it later.

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your learning style"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.



Challenging Questions

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Some people like coffee. Other people prefer tea. (while)

2. She studied hard for the test, but she found the questions difficult. (However)

3. She wanted to go swimming, unluckily, it was raining outside. (but)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
distraction	تشويش	senseless	بلا معنى
stimulating	محفز	hide	يخفي
sympathize	يتعاطف	forgiveness	تسامح

2 Comprehension strategies:

Giving a title to the passage:

To give a title to a passage, you should:

- Read the passage carefully:

Understand what the passage is mainly about.

اقرأ القطعة بعناية وحاول أن تفهم الفكرة الرئيسية لها.

- Pick out keywords: Choose 2-3 important words from the passage that relate to the topic.

اختر من ٢-٣ كلمات مهمة من النص ترتبط بالموضوع.

- Keep it short and clear: A good title is usually 3-7 words. Make it catchy and meaningful. اجعل العنوان قصيرًا وواضحًا، فعادة ما يكون العنوان الجيد من ٣ إلى ٧ كلمات. اجعله جذابًا وله معنى.

إعطاء عنوان للفقرة:

لتضع عنوانًا لقطعة، يجب أن:

FOR EXAMPLE:

Many people think video games are just for fun, but scientists believe games can make you smarter! Research shows that certain games can improve concentration and help players solve problems faster.

*What's the best title of the text?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Many people think video games are just for fun.

- ☐ يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن ألعاب الفيديو فقط من أجل المتعة.
- ☐ يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن ألعاب الفيديو فقط من أجل الدراسة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- تخلف الموسيقى جوًا سعيدًا في الفصل الدراسي.

- ☐ Music creates a happy atmosphere in the classroom.
- ☐ Music creates a scary atmosphere in the classroom.

Vocabulary

combine (d)	يجمع/يخطط
expert	خبير
concentration	تركيز
mental	عقلي/ذهني
educational	تعليمي
participate (d) in	يشترك في
effective	فعال
shy	خجول
administrator	مدير/مستول
interactive	تفاعلي
encourage (d)	يشجع/يحفز
replace (d)	يستبدل
method	طريقة
motivating	محفز/مبشع
engage (d)	يشرك/يرتبط
tool	أداة/وسيلة
anxious	قلق/مقوتر
empathize (d)	يتعاطف
meaningful	ذو معنى/هادف
imagine (d)	يتخيل/يتصور/يفترض
smart learning	التعلم الذكي
photosynthesis	البناء الضوئي

Language

Contrast Connectors (But/ However/ While)

(But)

It is used between two clauses in one sentence. It shows direct contrast.

e.g. • Games are fun, **but** they should also be educational.
• I like coffee, **but** I don't like tea.

(However)

It's used at the beginning of a new sentence. It's more formal than "but". It's always followed by a comma.

e.g. • Students love video games. **However**, parents worry about too much screen time.

• It was raining. **However**, we decided to go out.

(While)

It shows contrast between two simultaneous ideas. It can start a sentence or come in the middle.

e.g. • **While** traditional methods work well, modern techniques engage students more.

• I enjoy city life **while** my brother likes the countryside.

A. Speaking

Giving Advice:

- You should try ...
- Why don't you ...?
- Have you considered ...
- It might help to ...

Asking About Methods

- How do you remember ...?
- What's your strategy for ...?
- Do you find it useful to ...?
- What helps you ...?
- Have you tried ...?

Responding to Suggestions:

- That's a good/great idea!
- I never thought of that.
- That sounds interesting.
- I'm not sure that would work for me.
- I'll definitely try that.

B. Writing

Video Games and Smart Learning

Video games are not just for fun; scientists say they can actually make players smarter. Studies show that some games improve concentration and help people solve problems more quickly. Brain-training and puzzle games strengthen memory and thinking skills by giving the brain good mental exercise. However, not all games are educational, so players must choose carefully. The best games mix learning with enjoyment. Many teachers now use games in class because they make difficult subjects more interesting and help shy students participate. Overall, games can boost learning if used wisely and not played too much.

A Vocabulary

1 Fill in the gaps using the words in the box:

mental – effective – animation – combine – memorize

1. I need to all the new vocabulary words for the test.
2. The children loved the colorful in the online story.
3. You should study with rest to stay healthy and focused.
4. Regular practice is the most way to improve your English.
5. Playing puzzles helps improve your skills and concentration.

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She was ill, she went to school.
a) while b) but c) so d) since
2. She worked very hard. she didn't pass the exam.
a) Therefore b) Because c) However d) So
3. he was tired, he stayed up late to finish his homework.
a) So b) While c) Since d) Therefore
4. My sister loves classical music, I prefer modern music.
a) so b) because c) but d) if
5. she studied a lot, she didn't get a high score.
a) While b) Because c) So d) Therefore

C Writing

3 Design a poster of about (90–100 words) about getting ready for the exam. Include:

Giving advice: You should ..., It's important to ..., Make sure you ...

Explaining reasons: This helps you ..., This way you can ..., Because ...

Connecting ideas: Also, While, but, However

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What does Mariam dislike?
a) Poems b) Textbooks c) Definitions d) Songs
- How does Mariam remember new vocabulary?
a) By drawing diagrams. b) By reading silently.
c) By singing lyrics aloud. d) By watching documentaries.

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What happened last week?
- What does Mariam turn the definition of words into?
- When does she play her recordings?

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When you face a hard problem, try to a solution instead of giving up.
a) focus b) keep c) find d) stay
- To be good at brain games, you should at least 15 minutes daily.
a) retreat b) replace c) prepare d) practice
- She felt when she had to present her project to the whole school.
a) powerful b) nervous c) interactive d) bored
- The speech was powerful enough to motivate the workers. To form a noun from "motivate", we remove "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -able b) -tion c) -ion d) -sion

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

growth – interactive – upset – value – focus

One phrase changed my life: "I am learning." I used to feel (1)..... when I forgot words. Now, I say that phrase every morning. It reminds me that (2)..... is slow, and that's okay. My teacher says, "Don't learn with fear, but learn with curiosity." We use (3)..... games where we match songs to emotions. That phrase gives me (4).....

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My best friend, Youssef, plays video games every weekend. He says they are exciting. But he never thought they could help him learn. One day, his uncle, who is a scientist, gave him a puzzle game. He said, "Try this for fun. It's educational, too." Youssef played for ten minutes. He had to put pieces together and think quickly. He liked it! Now he plays every Saturday. He says his mind feels stronger. He can solve math problems faster. His teacher says his skill in thinking has improved. Youssef didn't believe games could help, but now he says, "I didn't know games could be good for my brain." He still plays action games, but he also plays brain games. He says, "I play to have fun and to grow my mind." He even gave advice to his classmates. He says, "Try a brain training game. It's good for your development."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Youssef's uncle is a
a) teacher b) player c) scientist d) doctor
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a) action game b) puzzle game c) weekend d) advice

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
4. What two types of games does Youssef play now?
5. How do we know Youssef's thinking skills improved?



The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Baloo taught Mowgli to ignore animal warning cries to be brave. (.....)
2. The Bandar-log respected the Law of the Jungle and kept their promises. (.....)
3. Bagheera helped Mowgli learn skills like climbing and self-defense. (.....)
4. Kaa refused to help Baloo and Bagheera because he didn't care about Mowgli. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Baloo and Bagheera need help to rescue Mowgli?
.....
6. In your opinion, how did Mowgli know the Bandar-log were not true friends?
.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The test was easy, but some students failed. (However)

.....

2. Hani runs fast. His brother walks slowly. (while)

.....

3. The food smelled strange. I ate it anyway. (However)

.....

4. I like English. My friend prefers Arabic. (while)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Yasin is telling Fatma that his teacher uses puzzles to make class fun.

Fatma: How does your teacher make class fun?

Yasin: She uses (1).....

Fatma: What (2)..... of puzzles does she use?

Yasin: She uses word and number puzzles.

Fatma: (3)..... you solve them?

Yasin: Yes, I do. It is very fun.

Fatma: Do puzzles help you learn?

Yasin: (4)....., puzzles help me learn.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Tips for better learning"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You need to all the pieces of this puzzle before time finishes.
a) participate b) combine c) develop d) believe
2. If you distracted while studying, you will not remember what you learned.
a) have b) play c) get d) find
3. The ability to focus your mind on one thing is called
a) development b) concentration c) education d) preference
4. The opposite of "anxious" is ".....," which means relaxed.
a) modern b) shy c) calm d) popular
5. apps help you learn in a fun way.
a) Interactive b) Balance c) Focused d) Supported
6. The teacher asked us to in the activity.
a) allow b) join c) give d) take
7. To change the verb "develop" into a noun, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ion b) -ment c) -er d) -al
8. My brother is very; he always helps me with my homework.
a) shy b) helpful c) unfamiliar d) careless
9. They felt when the exam got nearer.
a) modern b) creative c) meaningful d) anxious
10. Try to life without cell phones or the internet.
a) imagine b) memorize c) think d) remind
11. The word "comfortable" is made by adding the suffix "-able" to the verb "comfort" to form a/an
a) adverb b) noun c) adjective d) verb
12. This app showed a visual of photosynthesis.
a) diagram b) definition c) tip d) space
13. Waleed's sudden change in worried both his parents and his teachers.
a) cell b) environment c) behavior d) classmate
14. Our school dress does not allow bright colors.
a) rule b) law c) code d) passage
15. Azza stayed during the science lesson and didn't look at her phone.
a) focused b) friendly c) helpful d) distracted

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

allowed – forbidden – rules – identity – avoid

At school, we must act in a respectful way toward everyone. This means using kind words and listening carefully during lessons. The uniform is part of our (1)....., and wearing it correctly shows pride in our school. Cell phones are not (2)..... in class because they distract learning. Also, in narrow hallways, we walk calmly to (3)..... injury. Following these (4)..... helps us build a better and safer place for everyone to grow and learn.

B)

checks – on – for – organizes – manages

Omar has a busy week, but he stays calm. He (1)..... his school bag in order every evening. He puts his brush, lab book, and books in a way that makes them easy to find. He also (2)..... his time wisely. During break, he (3)..... his timetable to prepare for the next class. Because he is ready, he never feels stressed. His self-control and respect (4)..... rules help his school life run smoothly every day.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I love eating pizza. I don't eat it often because it's unhealthy. (but)
.....
2. The school bus was late. I arrived at school on time. (However)
.....
3. My brother plays video games after school. I do my homework. (while)
.....
4. He didn't finish his homework. The teacher didn't punish him. (However)
.....
5. I like cold drinks. My brother likes hot tea. (but)
.....
6. Please, keep your room tidy and organized. (Always)
.....
7. It's unsafe to walk home alone at night. (Don't)
.....
8. You need to apologize if you hurt someone. (should)
.....
9. Don't leave your bike outside in the rain. (Never)
.....
10. It's respectful to say "thank you" when helped. (should)
.....

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Ali and Dina are talking about using games at school.

Ali : Do you think we need games at school?

Dina: Yes, they (1)..... important.

Ali : (2)..... do they help students?

Dina: They help students by making lessons exciting.

Ali : Can games help shy students?

Dina: Yes, they can. They (3)..... everyone to join.

Ali : Are games always (4).....?

Dina: Yes, games always fun.

B) Sara and Omar are talking about their school timetable.

Sara : What subject do we have on Monday morning?

Omar: We have (1).....

Sara : (2)..... do we after Arabic?

Omar: We have art.

Sara : How (3)..... is the art class?

Omar: The art class is one hour.

Sara : Do we have break after art?

Omar: Yes, we (4)..... break after art.

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: تقدر تستعد لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء
www.aladwaa.com

5

مقرر شهر
مارس

MODULE



Unit 9 Jobs & Skills

Unit 10 Storytelling

Module 5 Question Bank

Unit 9

JOBS & SKILLS

DOCTOR

ENGINEER

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main idea in a text about job profiles.
Analyze a job profile.
Determine the meaning of unknown words based on context.

Listening

Identify the gist in a text about workers' stories.
Identify key details about workers' jobs, feelings, and main responsibilities.
Recognize the meanings of new words related to job experiences based on context.

Speaking

Discuss and present ideas about a dream job, including required skills and responsibilities.
Role-play a job interview, asking and answering questions about skills and values.
Discuss the importance of different jobs.

Language

Cause & Effect

Writing

Write a paragraph about a future job, including interests, skills, why chosen, and future goals.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

career (n)	حياة مهنية	job profile (n)	ملف وظيفي
communication (n)	تواصل/اتصال	qualification (n)	مؤهل دراسي
strength (n)	قوة/نقطة قوة	responsibility (n)	مسئولية

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

application (n)	تطبيق	mechanical engineer (n)	مهندس ميكانيكا
certificate (n)	شهادة/وثيقة	medicine (n)	دواء/الطب
company (n)	شركة	mention (ed) (v)	يذكر/يشير إلى
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	particular (adj)	محدد/خاص
description (n)	وصف	problem-solving (n)	حل المشكلات
dream job (n)	وظيفة المستقبل	society (n)	مجتمع
employee (n)	موظف/عامل	support (ed) (v)	يدعم/يساند
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	talent (n)	موهبة
ensure (d) (v)	يتأكد/يؤكد	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي
highlight (ed) (v)	يوضح/يبرز	technical training (n)	تدريب تقني/فني
interest (n)	اهتمام/ميل	treatment (n)	علاج
involve (d) (v)	يشمل/يتطلب	university degree (n)	درجة جامعية
leadership (n)	قيادة/ريادة	young people (n)	الشباب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

act like	يتصرف مثل/كأنه	important for	مهم لـ
apply for	يتقدم لـ/يقدم طلباً لـ	plan your future	تخطط لمستقبلك
care for	يعتني بـ/يرعى	share ideas/thoughts	يشارك الأفكار/الآراء
design a machine/bridge	يصمم آلة/جسراً	test equipment	يختبر/يفحص المعدات

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – employer – employee – qualifications

- 1 You should have good to get your dream job.
- 2 My brother applied a job yesterday.
- 3 Our encourages us to work as a team.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

dangerous (adj)	خطير	tiring (adj)	متعب/مُرهق/مُجهّد
exciting (adj)	مثير/مشوق/ممتع	traffic (n)	المرور
mindful (adj)	مدرّك/واع	useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

background (n)	خلفية	interview (ed) (v)	يجرى مقابلة/يقابل
borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير/يقترض	passion (n)	شغف/حب
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	promotion (n)	ترقية/ترويج
customer (n)	زبون	technical problems (n)	مشكلات فنية
flooded (adj)	مغمورة/غارقة	vehicles (n)	مركبات

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

break down	تتعطل	go out	يخرج
change jobs	يغير الوظائف	stay focused	يبقى منبها
depend/rely on	يعتمد على	stay home	يبقى/يمكث في البيت
for the day	خلال اليوم	work as ...	يعمل ك...

Read and complete with a word from the list:

out – in – traffic – change

- 1 My family will go for dinner tonight.
- 2 There is heavy in the afternoon.
- 3 Sometimes, people jobs to learn new skills.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
give	يعطي	gave	given
sell	بيع	sold	sold

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	risky/unsafe	مجازف/غير آمن	safe/secure	آمن/محتكم
exciting	مثير	thrilling/fun	مشوق/ممتع	boring/dull	ممل/كئيب
mindful	مدرك/واع	careful/aware	حريص/مدرك	careless	مهمل
proud	فخور	pleased/satisfied	مسرور/راض	ashamed/embarrassed	خجل/مخجل
tiring	متعب	exhausting/challenging	مجهّد/صعب	relaxing/easy	مريح/سهل
useful	مفيد	helpful/valuable	متعاون/قيم	useless	بلا قيمة

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
employ (v)	يوظف	-ee	تحول إلى اسم مفعول		employee (n)	موظف/عامل
		-er	تحول إلى اسم فاعل		employer (n)	صاحب العمل
sure (adj)	متأكد	en-	تحول إلى فعل		ensure (v)	يضمن/يتأكد/يؤكد
danger (n)	خطر	-ous	تحول إلى صفة		dangerous (adj)	خطير
use (v)	يستخدم	-ful			useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My teacher advises us to avoid danger. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "danger".
a) -er b) -ous c) -ee d) -ful
- Are you sure this is the right way? Add the prefix "....." to the word "sure" to form a verb.
a) en- b) dis- c) un- d) ir-
- Listening to music is useful. The synonym of "useful" is ".....".
a) risky b) tiring c) useless d) helpful
- The shop different fruits today.
a) borrowed b) sold c) bought d) employed

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What jobs do you think are most important in society? Why?
- 2 What job would you want to do? Why?

 Read the following text, and guess the meanings of the words in bold. **SB page 40**

A job **profile** is a short but clear **description**⁽¹⁾ of a person's work, skills, and **responsibilities**. It acts like a guide that helps both **employers**⁽²⁾ and **employees**⁽³⁾ understand exactly what is expected in a particular role. For example, the job profile of a teacher includes **facilitating**⁽⁴⁾ student learning and **development**⁽⁵⁾, preparing lessons, explaining ideas in a simple way, and supporting students in their learning journey. A mechanical engineer's profile is quite different: it **involves**⁽⁶⁾ solving technical problems, testing equipment, and **ensuring**⁽⁷⁾ safety in workshops and factories. A nurse's profile focuses on caring for patients, giving medicines correctly, and supporting doctors during **treatment**⁽⁸⁾.

Job profiles often mention the specific skills needed, such as **communication**, teamwork, problem-solving, and sometimes **leadership**⁽⁹⁾. They also highlight **qualifications**, like university degrees, **certificates**⁽¹⁰⁾, or technical training.

For young people, understanding job profiles is very useful because it helps them plan their future. When you know what a job requires, you can decide if it matches your own interests, **strengths**, and **career goals**.



- (1) وصف
- (2) أصحاب العمل
- (3) الموظفين
- (4) تسهيل
- (5) تنمية
- (6) يتضمن
- (7) ضمان
- (8) علاج / معاملة
- (9) قيادة
- (10) شهادات

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why is having a clear job profile important for both employers and employees?
- 2 In what way can a job profile help young people plan their future careers?
- 3 Which skills do you think are most important for success in any job profile?
- 4 Give examples of qualifications needed for a person's job profile.
- 5 If you were writing your own future job profile, what skills and responsibilities would you include?

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What do you think is the hardest part of most jobs?
- 2 Why do people change jobs sometimes?

Listen to the audio and answer the following questions.

Hi. My name is Ali, and I am a bus driver. I wake up at 4 a.m. every day to start my work. Because the city is always crowded⁽¹⁾ and full of traffic⁽²⁾, I must stay focused and very careful on the road. I work for a long time, and that is tiring. My job is important since many people depend on me to get to their schools and workplaces safely.

My name is Samir. I'm a mechanic. I repair cars and solve technical problems⁽³⁾, so people rely on me whenever their vehicles⁽⁴⁾ break down. This makes me feel useful and respected.

Hi, my name is Hassan. I'm a chef. I work in a busy restaurant where I prepare meals for many people. Cooking is my passion⁽⁵⁾; therefore, I enjoy spending long hours in the kitchen. As a result, I improve my skills every day.

Hi, I'm Rana, and I work as a journalist. I write news stories and interview people from different backgrounds⁽⁶⁾, so my job is exciting. However, it can be dangerous when I report fires or accidents. As a result, I always stay mindful⁽⁷⁾ and careful.



- | | |
|----------------------|------------|
| (1) مزدحم | (2) المرور |
| (3) مشاكل فنية/تقنية | (4) مركبات |
| (5) شغف | (6) خلفيات |
| (7) مدرك/واع | |

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 What time does Ali wake up?
.....
- 2 What is Samir's main responsibility?
.....
- 3 What is Hassan's passion?
.....
- 4 What makes Rana's job sometimes dangerous?
.....

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

responsibilities مسؤوليات	duties or tasks someone must do
qualifications مؤهلات	studies or training needed for a job
career مهنة / حياة مهنية	the work a person does through life
communication تواصل / اتصال	the way people share ideas, thoughts, or feelings
job profile ملف وظيفي	tells about a person's work, skills, and responsibilities

1 such as/ like

مثل

Job profiles often mention the specific skills needed, **such as** communication and teamwork.

Job profiles highlight qualifications, **like** university degrees and certificates.

2 include/involve + (v + ing)

يتضمن

The job profile of a teacher **includes** preparing lessons and explaining ideas in a simple way.

A mechanical engineer's profile **involves** solving technical problems.

3 gerund (v+ing)

تستخدم كاسم فاعل

For young people, **understanding** job profiles is very useful.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The job of a tour guide involves to visitors and explaining places clearly.

a) talks b) talked c) talk d) talking

- 2 For many teenagers, a suitable career is becoming more and more important.

a) choose b) choosing
c) to choose d) to choosing

- 3 I like all the school subjects math, English, and science.

a) look like b) but c) like d) such

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- are studies or training needed for a job.
 a) Applications b) Careers c) Newspapers d) Qualifications
- Many companies require a before you join them.
 a) description b) certificate
 c) responsibility d) communication
- Every must follow the company's safety rules.
 a) employee b) runner c) player d) athlete
- Did they use the correct tools? We add the suffix "....." to "use" to form its adjective.
 a) -ness b) -ive c) -ous d) -ful
- Learning new skills is important finding a good job.
 a) with b) at c) for d) on
- Having a strong in technology can help you choose the right career.
 a) product b) employer c) player d) interest
- She the date of the meeting, but didn't discuss the details.
 a) asked b) appeared c) mentioned d) matched
- Parents should their sons' career choices.
 a) support b) allow c) include d) let
- Our manager asked us to our thoughts in the meeting.
 a) care b) share c) appear d) make
- Nurses must care patients with kindness and patience.
 a) in b) to c) for d) at

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ensure – responsibility – make – includes – company

My brother is a mechanical engineer. His work (1)..... designing machines and testing equipment every day. He must fix problems quickly and (2)..... safety for everyone in the factory. He works for a big (3)..... that makes different products. He says communication is important because he works with a team. It's not just a job for him, he takes (4)..... seriously.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Many snakes are very dangerous. The antonym of "dangerous" is ".....".
 a) frightened b) safe c) mindful d) useless
2. She had to her job because of stress.
 a) change b) take c) stay d) miss
3. Many came to the market because the prices were low.
 a) enemies b) jobs c) customers d) sellers
4. The mechanic repaired the broken engine of the
 a) fridge b) oven c) vehicle d) fan
5. The teacher asked the students to be of their behavior سلوك during the trip.
 a) mindful b) confused c) jealous d) noisy
6. Caring for a baby all day can be because it needs too much effort.
 a) proud b) exciting c) tiring d) busy
7. My mom's advice was useful to me. The antonym of "useful" is ".....".
 a) proud b) sick c) busy d) useless
8. The picnic plan depends the weather tomorrow.
 a) at b) on c) for d) to
9. She asked if she could my book for a few days.
 a) pass b) miss c) waste d) borrow
10. Fareed's for music made him practice every day.
 a) passion b) promotion c) home d) anger

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mindful – careless – exciting – risky – backgrounds

My name is Rana, and I work as a journalist. I create news stories and talk to people from many different (1)..... . I find my job (2)..... . Still, it can be (3)..... when I report fires or accidents. That's why I always stay (4)..... and careful.

Cause & Effect

السبب والنتيجة

(because, since/so, therefore, as a result)

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Sara is excited today (because/so) it is her school's art show. She is bringing the painting she made at home. (Since/Therefore) she is very creative, her friends are sure she will do well. The hall is full of colors and happy music. Sara drops a little paint on the floor, (since/so) she is quick to clean it. Her teacher smiles at her; (since/therefore), Sara feels proud. The judges like her artwork; (as a result/because), she wins a ribbon for "Best Colors".

1

Cause

السبب

(because / لأن / since / بما أن)

■ We use (because/since) to show the reason.

نستخدم (since/because) لتوضيح السبب.

effect (النتيجة) ← because/since → cause (السبب)

Because/Since → cause (السبب), → effect (النتيجة)

e.g. ■ Nabil stayed home because it was raining. ■ Since I was tired, I went to bed early.

2

Effect

النتيجة

(so / لذلك / therefore / وبالتالي / as a result / ونتيجة لذلك)

■ We use (so/therefore/as a result) to show the result.

نستخدم (so/therefore/as a result) لتوضيح النتيجة.

cause (السبب) ← so/; therefore,; as a result, → effect (النتيجة)

e.g. ■ It was raining, so we stayed home. ■ Omar studied well; therefore, he got full marks.
 ■ The room was dark; as a result, I turned on the light.

لاحظ أن



الفاصلة (,) قبل so ضرورية لأنها تربط بين جملتين مستقلتين.

الفاصلة المنقوطة قبل therefore أو as a result تُستخدم عندما تكون الجملتان مترابطتين بشكل وثيق.

الفاصلة (,) تأتي بعد therefore أو as a result عند بدء الجملة الثانية.



Got it?

Rewrite the following sentence using the word(s) between brackets:

- Aida ate a lot because she was hungry.

(so)

- يتم البدء بجملة السبب وهي الجملة الثانية ثم كتابة (so) ثم كتابة جملة النتيجة وهي الجملة الأولى (مع حذف because).

Aida was hungry, so she ate a lot.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I couldn't sleep last night my neighbor was playing loud music.
a) therefore b) as a result c) so d) because
- Hala passed the test;, she got a nice reward.
a) because b) since c) therefore d) however
- The phone rang while I was showering;, I didn't hear it at all.
a) because b) since c) when d) as a result
- We missed the train we left the house too late.
a) since b) therefore c) as a result d) but
- Hatem didn't understand the lesson, he asked the teacher to explain again.
a) because b) so c) since d) however

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- He didn't come to school because he was ill. (so) SB
.....
- I was tired, so I went to bed early. (since) SB
.....
- The streets were wet because it rained. (therefore) SB
.....
- She studied hard, so she passed the exam. (because) SB
.....
- We stayed at home because it was raining. (as a result) SB
.....
- Amany is happy because her dad bought a present. (so)
.....
- Yesterday, Badr woke up late, so he missed the school bus. (since)
.....
- The boy was cold, so he put on a coat. (because)
.....
- Since the door is open, the cat ran outside. (as a result)
.....
- Kady likes to draw because she is an artist. (so)
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I didn't sleep well, I felt tired during the math test.
a) because b) so c) since d) but
- Adel didn't study at all, he failed the exam.
a) So b) Therefore c) As a result d) Since
- The baby was crying all night;, I couldn't get any sleep.
a) because b) since c) therefore d) however
- We stayed home it was raining too heavily.
a) as a result b) therefore c) so d) because
- Salma finished her project early;, she watched a movie before going to bed.
a) because b) since c) as a result d) however

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Bilal studied hard; therefore, he got good marks. (because)
.....
- Adam ran very fast, so he won the race. (because)
.....
- The baby is sleeping because the house is quiet. (so)
.....
- Since it was raining, Amira played inside the house. (as a result)
.....
- Akram lost his bag; as a result, he cried. (Since)
.....
- Since the water is hot, Fadel cannot drink it. (therefore)
.....
- My mom cooked dinner quickly because we were all hungry. (as a result)
.....
- Noha feels sick today, so she will stay home. (since)
.....
- Emad broke his toy; as a result, he is sad. (because)
.....
- Last week, Dalia went to the park because it was sunny. (so)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Talking about Dream Jobs

الحديث عن وظائف الأحلام



online



What's your dream job?

ما هي وظيفة أحلامك؟

My dream job is to be a teacher.

وظيفة أحلامي هي أن أكون معلمًا.



Why do you want to do that job?

لماذا تريد أن تقوم بهذه الوظيفة؟

I want to do that job because it makes me happy.

أريد أن أقوم بهذه الوظيفة لأنها تجعلني سعيدًا.



What skills or talents does it need?

ما المهارات أو المواهب التي تحتاج إليها هذه الوظيفة؟

It needs patience, kindness and good communication.

تحتاج إلى الصبر، واللبف، والتواصل الجيد.



Who inspired you to choose this job?

من الذي ألهمك لاختيار هذه الوظيفة؟

My school teacher inspired me.

ألهمتني معلمتي بالمدرسة.



Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



Complete the following dialog:

► Sara thinks she needs patience and kindness to be a teacher.

Ali : What's your dream job?

Sara : My dream job is to be a (1).....

Ali : (2)..... do you want to be a teacher?

Sara : I want to be a teacher to help children learn.

Ali : (3)..... inspired you?

Sara : My English teacher inspired me.

Ali : What skills do teachers need?

Sara : They (4)..... patience and kindness.



How to write about your dream job

كيفية الكتابة عن وظيفة أحلامك



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"My dream job"

My dream job is to be a teacher because I love helping children learn new things. I want to teach English and make learning fun for my students. To be a good teacher, I need to be patient, kind, and able to explain ideas clearly. My English teacher inspired me because she always encourages me and makes the lessons enjoyable. I hope I can be like her one day. I will work hard and study well to reach my dream. Becoming a teacher makes me very happy!

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Salma's dream job is to be a/an
a) engineer b) teacher c) nurse d) worker
- Salma must when she talks to patients.
a) design a machine b) communicate clearly
c) test equipment d) prepare a lesson

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Why does Salma study hard?

.....

4. What does Salma's teacher say?

.....

5. How does Salma want to help other young people?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My son dreams of having a successful in the future.
a) product b) customer c) career d) vehicle
- Taking care of younger sisters can be a big
a) responsibility b) holiday c) design d) joke
- She decided to employ a gardener to take care of her yard. We add the suffix "....." to "employ" to form the noun.
a) -ful b) -ous c) -er d) -ion
- is the way people share ideas, thoughts, or feelings.
a) Equipment b) Passion c) Promotion d) Communication

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

customer – tiring – profile – useful – change

Ali drives a taxi. He is busy from morning until night. His job is (1)....., but he is proud because he helps people get to work, school, or the hospital. One day, a (2)..... was sick, so Ali took them to the hospital. He didn't (3)..... his job because he loves talking to people. He says, "Even a small ride can be (4)......"

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The room was dark, so I turned on the light. (because)
.....
2. Doaa finished her homework, so she can watch TV. (Since)
.....
3. Fares missed the bus because he woke up late. (so)
.....
4. Donia is excited today because it is her birthday. (therefore)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Omar is good at science, so he wants to be a doctor.

Nora : What's your dream job?

Omar : I (1)..... to be a doctor.

Nora : Why do you want to be a doctor?

Omar : I want to be a doctor to (2)..... sick people.

Nora : (3)..... skills do you need?

Omar : I need to be good at science.

Nora : (4)..... you like science?

Omar : Yes, I like science very much.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your future job"

.....
.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب:

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Nabil didn't come to school because he was ill. (so)
.....
2. You're here early, so we can start the meeting. (Since)
.....
3. Basmala studied hard, so she passed the exam. (because)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

disappointment (n)	خيبة أمل/إحباط	opportunity (n)	فرصة
interests (n)	اهتمامات	satisfaction (n)	رضا/قناعة
motivation (n)	دافع/حافز	stress (n)	توتر/ضغط

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	path (n)	مسار/طريق
choice/option (n)	اختيار/خيار	personality (n)	شخصية
confidence (n)	ثقة	pressure (n)	ضغط/توتر
creativity (n)	إبداع	relationship (n)	علاقة/صلة
dissatisfaction (n)	استياء/سخط	satisfying (adj)	مُرضٍ/مبهِج
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة	social work (n)	عمل اجتماعي
influence (d) (v)	يؤثر على	university study (n)	دراسة جامعية
long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد/على مدى طويل	wealth (n)	ثروة/غنى
needs (n)	احتياجات/حاجات		

Job fields مجالات العمل

architecture (n)	عمارة/هندسة معمارية	graphic design (n)	تصميم جرافيكي
computer science (n)	علوم الحاسوب	journalism (n)	صحافة
engineering (n)	هندسة	nursing (n)	تمريض
farming (n)	زراعة	programming (n)	برمجة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

available to	متاح/متوافر لـ	for money	من أجل المال
begin with	يبدأ بـ	make a decision	يتخذ قراراً
explore options	يستكشف خيارات	think about	يفكر في

Read and complete with a word from the list:

confidence – architecture – about – for

- 1 My brother studies at university to design buildings.
- 2 I speak with when I know the answer.
- 3 We think our plans on the weekend.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
lead to	يؤدي إلى	led to	led to
spend	يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
happiness	سعادة	joy/pleasure	مرح/فرح	sorrow/sadness	حزن
accustomed	معتاد/مألوف	familiar	مألوف	unaccustomed	غير معتاد
succeed	ينجح	pass	ينجح	fail	يفشل
stress	توتر/ضغط	tension	توتر	calmness	هدوء
confidence	ثقة	trust	ثقة	doubt	شك/ريبة

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
disappoint (v)	يحبط	-ment	تحول لاسم	disappointment (n)	إحباط
satisfaction (n)	رضا/قناعة	dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	dissatisfaction (n)	استياء/سخط

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They are accustomed to the warm weather. The synonym of "accustomed" is ".....".
 a) true b) familiar c) unfamiliar d) untrue
- 2 I feel happiness when I am with my family. The antonym of "happiness" is ".....".
 a) joy b) sadness c) calmness d) sickness
- 3 She felt great satisfaction after completing her work successfully. We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of the word "satisfaction".
 a) il- b) im- c) un- d) dis-

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How can a person know if a job is right for them?
- 2 Should people choose jobs only for money? Why or why not?

 Read the following text, and guess the meaning of the words in bold. SB Page 44

Choosing the right career is one of the most important **decisions**⁽¹⁾ in life. People spend many years working, so their jobs greatly affect their happiness, health, and even **relationships**⁽²⁾.

A good career can give you **motivation** and happiness. When thinking about a career, you should always begin with your **interests**. For example, if you love helping people or nursing, social work could be an excellent choice. If you enjoy **solving problems**⁽³⁾ and working with technology or computer science, programming may suit you. If you are a **creative**⁽⁴⁾ person, jobs such as **architecture**⁽⁵⁾, writing, music, or cooking might be more **satisfying**⁽⁶⁾.



- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| (1) قرارات | (2) علاقات |
| (3) حل المشكلات | (4) مبدع |
| (5) هندسة معمارية | (6) مريض/مليح |
| (7) مؤهلات | (8) النمو الشخصي |

It is also important to consider your skills, **qualifications**⁽⁷⁾, and personality. Some careers require years of university study, while others depend on training or experience. Students should also think about job **opportunities** in the future and how careers connect to their country's needs.

Because work is such a big part of life, choosing the wrong job can cause **stress** and **disappointment**. However, the right choice can bring success, confidence, **personal growth**⁽⁸⁾, and long-term satisfaction. Therefore, students should carefully explore many options before making a final decision about their future.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How can a person's job affect their happiness, health, and relationships?
.....
- 2 Which careers could be a good choice for people who love solving problems with technology?
.....
- 3 How do creativity and personality influence career choices?
.....

Notes on Reading

Definitions	التعريفات	
interests	اهتمامات	things you like or enjoy
motivation	دافع/تحفيز/حافز	what pushes you to do something and helps you keep going until you succeed
disappointment	خيبة أمل/إحباط	a feeling of sadness, unhappiness, and dissatisfaction
stress	توتر/ضغط	feeling worried or under pressure
satisfaction	رضا/قناعة	feeling happy and proud of what you did

1 (keep يستمر / spend يقضي / enjoy يستمتع / when وقتما) + (verb+ing)

- Keep going until you succeed.
- People spend many years working.
- If you enjoy solving problems, programming may suit you.
- When thinking about a career, you should always begin with your interests.

2 with + noun

باستخدام

- Some people love solving problems with technology.

3 For giving career advice, use expressions like (You should ..., If I were you ..., It's a good idea to ..., Why don't you ...)

- You should choose a job that matches your skills.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 To be a good musician, you need to keep every day.
 a) practice b) to practice c) to practicing d) practicing
- 2 I enjoy new languages in my free time. It's my favorite hobby.
 a) learn b) learning c) learns d) to learn
- 3 Nagwa will spend the weekend her family.
 a) visiting b) visit c) visited d) to visit
- 4 The engineer fixed the machine a simple tool.
 a) on b) for c) with d) at



How to write about giving advice on how to choose a job

كيفية الكتابة عن تقديم النصائح حول كيفية اختيار الوظيفة

1 Think About Your Interests: فكر في اهتماماتك:

- I like drawing → graphic design
- I like helping people → nursing or social work

2 Know Your Needs: اعرّف احتياجاتك:

- Do you need to work with people? → journalism or nursing
- Do you like computers? → computer science or programming

How to choose a job

كيف تختار وظيفة

3 Explore Options: استكشف الخيارات المتاحة:

- Talk to people who work in different jobs.
- Watch videos or visit places (like a hospital or farm).

4 Check Your Personality: تحقق من شخصيتك:

- Are you quiet? → maybe programming or writing
- Are you brave? → maybe law enforcement

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“How to choose a job”

When you choose a job, think about your interests and needs. Don't choose a job only for money. It can cause stress and dissatisfaction. Explore options by talking to people or watching videos. For example, if you like drawing, try graphic design. If you love helping others, nursing or social work may be right for you. Work with something that makes you feel satisfied and proud. It is important to consider your skills, qualifications, and personality. Your path can change, and that's okay. Choose something true to you, not just what others want.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Knowing your helps you make a good choice.
a) satisfaction b) stress c) confidence d) interests
- is feeling happy and proud of what you did.
a) Stress b) Wealth c) Satisfaction d) Health
- With more practice, Mariam was able to deliver the speech with
a) confidence b) stress c) tension d) disappointment
- Too much makes it hard to think clearly.
a) motivation b) stress c) health d) satisfaction
- Wael dreams of studying to design beautiful buildings.
a) nursing b) architecture c) farming d) journalism
- The job requires some previous in computer programming.
a) experience b) responsibility c) dream d) choice
- Nour spoke with confidence during the class. The synonym of "confidence" is ".....".
a) anger b) tension c) trust d) wealth
- I get satisfaction from helping my friends. To get the opposite of "satisfaction", add the prefix ".....".
a) dis- b) im- c) en- d) ir-
- Don't let others a decision for you. It's your life.
a) explore b) make c) think d) focus
- Social media can our way of thinking.
a) push b) influence c) succeed d) cause

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

explore – interests – motivation-qualifications – stress

One of the most important decisions you can make is choosing the right career. A good career gives you (1)..... and joy. First, you need to start with your (2)..... . Second, you should consider your (3)..... as some jobs require years of university study. That's why, students should (4)..... many options before making a final decision.

3

Chapter Three: The Secret of Fire

Chapter (3) in points:

الفصل الثالث في نقاط



1 Shere Khan hated Mowgli because he was a human.

كره شيرخان ماوكلى لأنه إنسان.

2 Shere Khan spread lies to the wolf pack, saying Mowgli would bring fire and ruin the jungle.

نشر شيرخان أكاذيب بين قطيع الذئاب، قائلاً إن ماوكلى سيجلب النار ويدمر الغابة.

3 Bagheera warned Mowgli that he must learn the secret of fire to protect himself.

حذر باجيرا ماوكلى بأنه يجب أن يتعلم سر النار ليحمي نفسه.

4 Mowgli went to the human village and secretly took a pot of burning coals.

ذهب ماوكلى إلى القرية البشر وأخذ سرّاً وعاء من الجمر المشتعل.

5 At the wolf council, Shere Khan demanded that Mowgli be sent away.

في مجلس الذئاب، طالب شيرخان بإبعاد ماوكلى.

6 Mowgli showed the fire to everyone, and Shere Khan ran away in fear.

أظهر ماوكلى النار للجميع، فهرب شيرخان خائفاً.

7 Even though he won, Mowgli felt sad because many wolves no longer trusted him.

رغم فوزه، شعر ماوكلى بالحزن لأن كثيراً من الذئاب لم تعد تثق به.

8 He realized his place in the jungle was changing, and his future might lie beyond the pack.

أدرك أن مكانه في الغابة يتغير، وربما يكون مستقبله خارج القطيع.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

doubt (ed) (v/n)	يشك في/ شك	reveal (ed) (v)	أظهر/ كشف
hatred (n)	كراهية/ بغض	ruin (ed) (v/n)	يدمر/ يخرّب/ خراب/ دمار
loyalty (n)	ولاء/ إخلاص/ وفاء	tension (n)	توتر/ شد
revenge (n)	انتقام/ ثأر/ قصاص	weapon (n)	سلاح

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

among (prep)	بين/ ضمن/ وسط	fear (ed) (v/n)	يخاف/ خوف
argue (d) (v)	يجادل/ يناقش/ يخاصم	nearby (adj/adv)	قريب/ على مقربة/ بالجوار
burning coal (n)	فحم مشتعل/ محترق	power (n)	قوة/ طاقة/ سلطة/ نفوذ
closely (adv)	عن كثب/ قرب	realize (d) (v)	يدرك
council (n)	مجلس/ هيئة	secretly (adv)	سرّياً/ خفية/ في الخفاء
directly (adv)	مباشرةً/ بشكل مباشر	tension (n)	توتر/ قلق
fate (n)	مصير/ قدر/ نصيب	warn (ed) (v)	يحذر/ ينذر

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

as one of their own	كواحد منهم	move back	يرجع/ يترجع
drive ... back	يقود ... بعيداً/ يطرد	torn between	محتار/ متردد بين
hold up	يرفع	whisper lies to	يهمس بأكاذيب لـ

Definitions التعريفات

hatred	كراهية/ بغض	very strong feeling of dislike
doubt	يشك/ شك	not being sure
tension	توتر/ شد	a mind affected by stress
loyalty	ولاء/ إخلاص/ وفاء	a strong feeling of support
revenge	انتقام/ ثأر/ قصاص	the act of hurting someone who hurt you first

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think fire represents for humans and animals?
- 2 Why do you think some animals might not trust Mowgli even though he grew up in the jungle?

 Read the following text. What happened at the wolf council?

SB page 46

Chapter Three: The Secret of Fire

As Mowgli grew, so did Shere Khan's **hatred**⁽¹⁾. The tiger could not accept a human living among the animals. He **whispered**⁽²⁾ lies to the wolf pack, warning them that Mowgli would bring fire and **ruin**⁽³⁾ to the jungle. Some wolves began to **doubt**⁽⁴⁾ the boy's place.

Why did Shere Khan want Mowgli to leave the jungle?

Bagheera warned Mowgli that the day would come when he must face the tiger directly. "Men have one power the jungle fears," he said. "You must learn the **secret of fire**⁽⁵⁾." Following this advice, Mowgli visited the nearby village, watching **humans**⁽⁶⁾ closely. From them, he secretly stole **a pot of burning coals**⁽⁷⁾, which he guarded carefully.

What did Mowgli steal from the village, and why did he take it?

The **tension**⁽⁸⁾ grew. At the wolf council, Shere Khan wanted Mowgli to leave the jungle. The pack argued, torn between **loyalty**⁽⁹⁾ to the boy and fear of the tiger. At last, Mowgli **revealed**⁽¹⁰⁾ the secret **weapon**⁽¹¹⁾. Holding up the fire, he drove Shere Khan back. The tiger moved back but still wanted **revenge**⁽¹²⁾.

How did Mowgli use the fire at the wolf council?

Though he won, Mowgli felt sad. He realized that many wolves no longer saw him as one of their own. He loved the jungle, but problems between them had started. His fate, he felt, might be away from the pack.

How did Mowgli feel after he won? Why did he feel that way?

(1) كراهية

(2) همس

(3) خراب/دمار

(4) شك

(5) سر النار

(6) البشر

(7) وعاء من الفحم المحترق

(8) توتر

(9) إخلاص

(10) أظهر/كشف

(11) سلاح

(12) انتقام/ثأر

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Who hated Mowgli and spread lies about him? من كره ماوكلى ونشر الأكاذيب حوله؟

- Shere Khan.

2. What did Mowgli take from the village? ماذا أخذ ماوكلى من القرية؟

- He took a pot of burning coals.

3. Who told Mowgli about the secret of fire? من أخبر ماوكلى عن سر النار؟

- Bagheera told him about the secret of fire.

4. Where did the wolves have their meeting? أين عقدت الذئاب اجتماعها؟

- The wolves had their meeting at the wolf council.

5. What did Mowgli show to make Shere Khan run away? ما الذى أظهره ماوكلى لجعل شيرخان يهرب؟

- He showed the fire.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Do you think the fire made Shere Khan move back? Why? هل تعتقد أن النار جعلت شيرخان يتراجع؟ لماذا؟

- Yes. Because fire is the one power that the jungle fears.

2. How did Mowgli feel after using the fire? كيف شعر ماوكلى بعد استخدام النار؟

- He felt sad because the wolves didn't love him like before.

3. Why do you think Mowgli needed to take burning coals from the human village? لماذا تعتقد أن ماوكلى احتاج إلى أخذ جمر مشتعل من القرية البشرية؟

- Because Bagheera told him he must learn the secret of fire to protect himself from Shere Khan.

4. Why do you think some wolves listened to Shere Khan instead of Mowgli? لماذا تعتقد أن بعض الذئاب استمعت إلى شيرخان بدلاً من ماوكلى؟

- Because they were scared of the tiger and didn't know fire.

5. Why did Mowgli feel sad even though he won? لماذا شعر ماوكلى بالحزن رغم أنه فاز؟

- Because many wolves no longer saw him as one of their own, and he loved the jungle.

Chapter 3 Exercises

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

1. hatred
2. doubt
3. tension
4. loyalty
5. revenge

B

- a) a mind affected by stress
- b) not being sure
- c) the act of hurting someone who hurt you first
- d) very strong feeling of dislike
- e) a strong feeling of support

2 Answer the following questions:

1. Who hated Mowgli? Why?

.....

2. What warning did Shere Khan give the wolves about Mowgli?

.....

3. What did Bagheera tell Mowgli about the power the jungle fears?

.....

4. Where did Mowgli get the fire from?

.....

3 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolves. (.....)
2. Mowgli took burning coals from the village. (.....)
3. Bagheera advised Mowgli to learn about fire. (.....)
4. Mowgli used fire to drive away the wolves. (.....)

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. Why do you think Mowgli felt sad after he won against Shere Khan?

.....

2. Why did Mowgli think that his fate might be away from the pack?

.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Shere Khan's hatred grew because Mowgli was a human living the animals.
a) against b) among c) away from d) beyond
- Bagheera told Mowgli that men have one the jungle fears.
a) council b) chance c) power d) pot
- Mowgli watched the villagers to learn how to use fire.
a) badly b) closely c) secretly d) sadly
- At the wolf council, the pack was loyalty to Mowgli and fear of Shere Khan.
a) arguing with b) torn between
c) guarding against d) warning about
- After driving Shere Khan back, Mowgli felt, not joy.
a) excited b) interested c) sad d) exhausted

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Shere Khan told the truth to the wolf pack about Mowgli and fire. (.....)
- Mowgli stole burning coals from the human village secretly. (.....)
- The wolf pack all agreed that Mowgli should stay in the jungle. (.....)
- Mowgli held up fire and made Shere Khan move back. (.....)
- Mowgli felt happy and proud after using fire against Shere Khan. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why did Shere Khan hate Mowgli?
.....
- What did Bagheera mean when he said, "Men have one power the jungle fears"?
.....
- How did Mowgli get the secret of fire?
.....
- Why were the wolves unsure about Mowgli during the council meeting?
.....
- Why do you think Mowgli felt sad even though he won against Shere Khan?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This is available to anyone who tries.
a) council b) weapon c) opportunity d) guard
2. Sally was when Ali lied to her; she was really angry.
a) disappointed b) joy c) stress d) excited
3. Playing outside brings me happiness. The antonym of "happiness" is ".....".
a) sorrow b) pleasure c) familiar d) joy
4. Mazin succeeded in winning the English test. The synonym of "succeeded" is ".....".
a) respected b) trusted c) failed d) passed

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Sami lives on a farm with his grandparents. He helps feed chickens, collect eggs, and water plants. Some kids at school laugh at him and say, "Farming is for old people." But Sami doesn't mind. He loves being outside. He says farming gives him peace. His grandfather told him, "This job is hard, but it's satisfying." Sami didn't know that farmers use technology now, like apps, to check the weather and soil. He wants to be a farmer when he grows up. His parents wanted him to study computer science because they think it's excellent and brings wealth. But Sami says, "I don't need a lot of money. I need fresh air and sunshine." He feels pressure sometimes when people say farming is not a real job. But he knows his needs are different. He doesn't want to work inside all day. He wants to work with the earth. His dream is to grow organic food for his town. He says, "My path is right for me."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sami feels peace when he
a) watches TV b) is outside on the farm
c) plays with his phone d) studies at night
2. Sami says his path is right for him because he wants to
a) become rich b) work inside with computers
c) work with the earth d) move to the city

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of this passage?
.....
4. What does Sami want to be when he grows up?
.....
5. If you were in the place of Sami, would you do the same work? Why?
.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Shere Khan warned the wolves that Mowgli would bring fire and ruin to the jungle. (.....)
2. Bagheera told Mowgli to avoid humans and never go near their village. (.....)
3. Mowgli took the burning coals openly, without hiding from the villagers. (.....)
4. After seeing the fire, Shere Khan promised never to return to the jungle. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did some wolves begin to doubt Mowgli's place in the pack?
.....
6. Do you think Mowgli's choice to use the fire (a human weapon) helped him secure his place in the jungle? Why?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Gamal likes football, so he plays in the club with his friends. (because)
.....
2. Since the car stopped, Eman walked to the shop. (as a result)
.....
3. The baby is crying because he wants some milk. (so)
.....
4. Hadi loves animals; therefore, he has a pet dog. (Since)
.....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"How to choose a job"

.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We stayed at home because it was raining. (as a result)
2. The phone rang loudly, so I answered it. (therefore)
3. Hamza missed the bus, so he was late for school. (Since)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

ability (n)	قدرة	park guard (n)	حارس حديقة
community development (n)	تنمية المجتمع	project management (n)	إدارة المشاريع
environmental scientist (n)	عالم بيئي	public service (n)	خدمة عامة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

adaptability (n)	قدرة على التكيف	patience (n)	صبر
adaptable (adj)	قادر على التكيف/مرن	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
ambitious (adj)	طموح	responsible (adj)	مسئول
challenging (adj)	متحد/صعب	rewarding (adj)	منجز/مريض
confident (adj)	واثق/مطمئن	skilled (adj)	ماهر
event planning (n)	تخطيط الفعاليات	workplace (n)	مكان العمل
matter (ed) (v)	يهم	motivate (d) (v)	يحفز

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

believe in	يؤمن ب/يثق في	interested in	مهتم بـ
follow a dream	يتبع حلمًا	save lives	ينقذ الأرواح

Read and complete with a word from the list:

in – at – follow – adaptability

- I always believe a better future.
- Traveling to different countries improved his
- She decided to her dream of becoming a photographer.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
think يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	fulfill	يحقق	fail	يفشل
challenging	متحد/صعب	difficult	صعب	easy	سهل
confident	واثق/مطمئن	sure	متأكد	nervous	متوتر
responsible	مسئول	in control of	في السيطرة على	irresponsible	غير مسئول
patience	صبر	calmness	هدوء	impatience	نفاد الصبر
rewarding	مجز/مرض	satisfying	مرضى	unrewarding	غير مجز
skilled	ماهر	experienced	ذو خبرة	unskilled	غير ماهر

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	Function	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
adapt (v)	يتكيف	-able	تحويل إلى صفة		adaptable (adj)	قادر على التكيف
environment (n)	بيئة	-al			environmental (adj)	بيئي
challenge (n)	تحد	-ing			challenging (adj)	متحد/صعب
present (v)	يقدم	-ation	تحويل إلى اسم		presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
manage (v)	يدير	-ment			management (n)	إدارة
work (v)	يعمل	-er			worker (n)	عامل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The student is confident about his answers. The synonym of "confident" is ".....".
 a) easy b) difficult c) sure d) nervous
- I will present my project to the class. Add the suffix "....." to "present" to get its noun.
 a) -ation b) -al c) -able d) -ment
- The chef is very skilled at cooking. We add the prefix "....." to "skilled" to get its opposite.
 a) dis- b) im- c) en- d) un-

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What skills do you think are important for someone to be successful in a job?
- 2 Do you believe certificates are enough to get a good job? Why or why not?

Talking about Job Skills

SB page 48

Sara Hi, Lina. Are you still reading about careers?

Lina Yes, but this book talks about how interests and **values**⁽¹⁾ shape your job choice.

Sara That sounds interesting! Can you give me an example?

Lina Sure. For example, if someone enjoys **nature**⁽²⁾, they might become an **environmental scientist**⁽³⁾.

Sara Oh, that's different. What about people who like helping their **communities**⁽⁴⁾?

Lina They could think about public service, like working in **community development**⁽⁵⁾.

Sara I see. And what about people who are good at organizing things?

Lina Then jobs in event planning or **project management**⁽⁶⁾ could be great for them.

Sara That makes sense. So, what do you think matters more - skills or values?

Lina I'd say values, because they guide you toward a career that truly matches your **personality**⁽⁷⁾. What do you think?

Sara I agree. A job feels more meaningful when it fits what you believe in.



- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| (1) قيم | (2) طبيعة |
| (3) عالم بيئي | (4) مجتمعات |
| (5) تنمية المجتمع | (6) إدارة المشاريع |
| (7) شخصية | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Which do you think is more important when choosing a career: skills, values, or interests? Why?
.....
- 2 What kind of jobs can people do if they are good at organizing?
.....
- 3 Why do you think values are important in choosing a career?
.....

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. An scientist studies ways to protect nature and solve pollution problems.
a) environmental b) emotional c) personal d) cultural
2. A good citizen is for following the law.
a) rewarding b) careless c) responsible d) curious
3. Teaching children can be a rewarding job. The synonym of "rewarding" is ".....".
a) satisfying b) doubtful c) confident d) experienced
4. Whether you like it or not doesn't; the rules are the same for everyone.
a) forget b) explain c) matter d) imagine
5. Nabil tries to his team to win the big football game.
a) focus b) make c) motivate d) achieve
6. A brave girl feels when she speaks to the whole class.
a) shy b) doubtful c) confident d) adaptable
7. Hady is very interested learning about space and the stars.
a) on b) at c) of d) in
8. She prepared a colorful about climate change for her class, she has great skills.
a) presentation b) experiment c) homework d) vacation
9. Wearing a seatbelt is a simple way to lives during a car accident.
a) ignore b) waste c) create d) save
10. I can manage my time well at school. We add the suffix "....." to "manage" to get the noun.
a) -ation b) -al c) -able d) -ment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

nature – business – community – environmental – successful

My uncle spends every day working outside because he has a great love for the planet. He is an (1)..... scientist who studies different plants and trees. His job is very interesting and important for everyone here. He works hard to help our local (2)..... keep the water clean and safe. He wants to be (3)..... in his big project this year. He enjoys looking at (4)..... every morning. It is a great job.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Complete the following dialog:

SB (modified)

Ramy is preparing a presentation about job skills for our class project.

Ramy : Hi, Nader. I'm preparing a presentation about job skills for our class project.

Nader : Oh, nice! Which (1)..... are you going to include?

Ramy : Well, I already wrote about communication and teamwork.

Nader : That's a good one. I believe (2).....-solving is very important.

Ramy : You're right. Without problem-solving, many jobs would be difficult. I'm also thinking about flexibility.

Nader : Do you think (3)..... is important?

Ramy : Yes, people who are motivated work harder and achieve more.

Nader : I totally (4).....

Ramy : I'll add that point to my presentation. Thanks for your help, Nader.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

workplace – skills – confident – presentation – skilled

Today is a very big day for my father at his office. He feels (1)..... because he has prepared very well for his meeting. He has to give a long (2)..... to many people in his team today. My father is a (3)..... worker who knows how to talk to people well. His (4)..... is nice and has big windows. I know he will do a great job at work.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She studied because she enjoys organizing weddings and parties.
a) cooking b) event planning c) photography d) drawing
2. is important when you move to a new house.
a) Ability b) Adaptability c) Workplace d) Stress
3. The math test was challenging. It wasn't
a) adaptable b) ambitious c) successful d) easy
4. We should keep our environment clean. Add the suffix "....." to get the adjective of "environment".
a) -al b) -ous c) -able d) -ation

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. Esraa is smart; therefore, she helps her friends often. (because)

.....

2. Hamdy forgot his key, so he waited outside the house. (since)

.....

3. Faiza washed the dishes because they were very dirty. (so)

.....

4. Because it is hot, Hassan wants some cold water. (therefore)

.....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hazem plays football well; as a result, he wins. (since)

.....

2. Fatma went to the doctor because she felt ill. (so)

.....

3. Since it's sunny today, Hesham is wearing his hat. (therefore)

.....

4. The students are quiet because the teacher is explaining. (so)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
indicate	يوضح	destroy	يدمر
strain	توتر	poverty	فقر
victorious	منتصراً	weakness	ضعف

2 Comprehension strategies:

What is critical thinking?

ما مهارة التفكير النقدي؟

- هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي على ما تم قراءته من معلومات في النص، ودائماً ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على الرأي الخاص بك وفهمك للأحداث.

FOR EXAMPLE:

For young people, understanding job profiles is very useful because it helps them plan their future. When you know what a job requires, you can decide if it matches your own interests, strengths, and career goals.

- Why do you think it's important to understand what a job requires before deciding to follow that career?

- It is important because you need to know if the job fits your skills and if you are ready for its responsibilities. This helps you make a good choice.

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- The job profile of a teacher includes preparing lessons.

☐

- يشمل الملف الوظيفي للمعلم إعداد الدروس.

☐

- تشمل السيرة الذاتية للمعلم إعداد الدروس.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- إن المهنة الجيدة يمكن أن تمنحك الدافع والسعادة.

☐

A good career can give you motivation and happiness.

☐

A bad career can give you stress and sadness.

Vocabulary

career	مهنة/ حياة مهنية
job profile	ملف وظيفي
communication	تواصل/ اتصال
qualification	مؤهل
dream job	وظيفة مثالية
responsibility	مسؤولية
mindful	مدرك/ واعي
tiring	متعب/ مرهق/ مجهد
exciting	مثير/ ممتع/ مبهج
useful	مفيد/ لنفع
dangerous	خطير
traffic	المرور
disappointment	خيبة أمل/ إحباط
opportunity	فرصة
interests	اهتمامات
satisfaction	رضا/ قناعة
motivation	دافع/ تحفيز/ حافز
stress	توتر/ ضغط
ability	قدرة
park guard	حارس حديقة
community development	تنمية المجتمع
public service	خدمة عامة

Language

1. Cause

(because / لأن - since / بما أن)

We use (because/since) to give the **cause** (the reason).

effect (النتيجة) + because/since + **cause** (السبب)
Because/Since + **cause** (السبب), **effect** (النتيجة)

Examples:

e.g. • Nabil stayed home **because** it was raining.

• Because it was raining, Nabil stayed home.

2. Effect

لذلك/ وبالتالي (so) -
as a result لذلك (نتيجة)

We use (so/therefore/as a result) to give the **effect** (the result).

cause (السبب) + , so + **effect** (النتيجة)
cause (السبب) + , therefore / as a **result**,

effect (النتيجة)

e.g. • It was raining, so we stayed home.

• Omar studied well; therefore, he got full marks.

Skills

A. Speaking

Talking about Dream Jobs

- What's your dream job?
- My dream job is to be a teacher.
- Why do you want to do that job?
- I want to do that job because it makes me happy.
- What skills or talents does it need?
- It needs patience, kindness, and good communication.
- Who inspired you to choose this job?
- My school teacher inspired me.

B. Writing

"Your dream job"

My dream job is to become a teacher. I enjoy explaining ideas to others, and I like helping students learn new things. Teaching is not always easy, but I believe it is a very rewarding career. For example, a teacher can inspire students and make them confident about their abilities. In the future, I hope to teach English because it is an international language that connects people from all over the world. I know it will take hard work and patience, but I am ready to follow this dream.

Unit 9 Review

A Vocabulary**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The word "responsibilities" means
a) holidays
b) duties or tasks someone must do
c) free time for everyone
d) family activities
2. The word "communication" is about
a) sharing ideas and information
b) building houses and bridges
c) studying at university
d) collecting certificates
3. The word "motivation" refers to
a) what pushes you to act and keep going
b) the result of an exam
c) the tools used in a job
d) a certificate from a school

B Language**2 Fill in the blanks with the correct connector (because, since, so, therefore, as a result):**

1. She studied hard, she passed the exam.
2. He stayed home he was sick.
3. The shop was closed;, we couldn't buy anything.
4. The bus was late; we missed the class.
5. I borrowed an umbrella it was raining.

C Writing**3 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words about your dream job:**

- Mention your skills and interests.
- Explain why you chose this job.
- Use future tense verbs and expressions like (will, want to, hope to, would like to).
- Give one example of a responsibility in that job.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What does Karim design?
 - A product.
 - A machine.
 - A lesson.
 - A certificate.
- What did Karim complete before getting his certificate?
 - A university degree.
 - Technical training.
 - A workshop on cooking.
 - A job interview.

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What two things does Karim's job profile require?
- What is Karim's dream job?
- What is Karim's long-term goal?

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Employees must complete their on time.
 - responsibilities
 - opportunities
 - career
 - skills
- A proves you have the qualifications and skills for this job.
 - wealth
 - paper
 - decision
 - certificate
- Hend is proud of her good grades. The antonym of "proud" is ".....".
 - ashamed
 - pleased
 - thrilling
 - dull
- He checked the results with, pleased that his hard work was rewarding
 - pressure
 - opportunity
 - health
 - satisfaction

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

programming – journalism – with – excellent – stress

Don't feel pressured to make a final decision about your career. Begin (1)..... your needs. What do you enjoy? If you like helping people, nursing or (2)..... could be satisfying. If you love computers, computer science or (3)..... may be your path. Many students feel stressed because they think they must be (4)..... at everything. Remember: it's okay to change your mind. Don't give up at all.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did Shere Khan try to turn the wolf pack against Mowgli?

6. Why do you think Mowgli's fate "might be away from the pack," even though he loved the jungle?



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The girl was tired, so she sat on the chair. (because)

2. Fayrouz likes reading books, so she goes to the library. (since)

3. Hosni is very strong because he exercises every day. (as a result)

4. Gamila cleaned her room because it was very messy. (so)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sami is asking his grandpa about farming.

Sami : Grandpa, what do you think about farming as a job?

Grandpa : I (1)..... it's hard work, but very satisfying.

Sami : (2)..... farmers get rich?

Grandpa : Not always, but they grow food for everyone.

Sami : (3)..... I be strong?

Grandpa : No, you shouldn't. You learn strength over time.

Sami : Can I start now?

Grandpa : (4).....! Plant a seed in a pot.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Your future career"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 3

LESSON 1



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer:

- Some games can improve your, problem-solving skills, and concentration.
a) memory b) hunger c) speed d) energy
- Puzzle games and strategy games help players carefully and make quick decisions.
a) sleep b) eat c) think d) run
- It is important to play games in
a) a hurry b) moderation c) groups d) competition
- Playing too much games can badly affect schoolwork, sleep, and
a) homework b) friends c) money d) health

2 Complete the following dialog:

Maha and her friend Nada are talking about school life.

Maha: I have so much homework and exams these days!

Nada: Me too! School is really busy.

Maha: (1).....

Nada: That's true! Do you make a plan for your tasks?

Maha: (2)..... I need to focus more.

Nada: Taking short breaks helps me finish my work.

Maha: (3).....

Nada: Yes! It's easier to learn when classes are fun.

Maha: (4).....?

Nada: I do my homework first, then I read or draw. It helps me relax.

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box:

uniform – wild – manage – combine – anxious

- All students must wear a school every day.
- We saw some animals during our trip to the jungle.
- She felt before giving her first presentation.
- It is hard to studying, sports, and hobbies at the same time.
- You can art and science to create interesting projects.

4 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words about healthy habits:

.....

LESSON

2

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Every job needs different skills. Some jobs need practical skills, like building, cooking, or fixing things. Other jobs need thinking skills, like solving problems, planning, or designing. Communication and teamwork are important in almost every job. Technology skills are also becoming more important today because many jobs use computers and machines. Learning new skills can help you get better jobs and enjoy your work more. It is important to choose a job that matches your interests and abilities.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Some jobs need practical skills, like, cooking, or fixing things.
a) reading b) painting
c) running d) building
- Communication and are important in almost every job.
a) reading b) painting
c) teamwork d) traveling
- Learning new skills can help you get better jobs and your work more.
a) eat b) enjoy
c) buy d) watch

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why are technology skills important in many jobs today?
-
5. How can learning new skills help you in your future career?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students did a/an in the science lab to test their ideas.
a) experience b) experiment c) response d) homework
2. Playing chess can improve your skills and help you think clearly.
a) musical b) cooking c) physical d) mental
3. She wants to have a conversation, not just small talk.
a) quick b) boring c) meaningful d) meaningless
4. I need to all the new vocabulary words before the test.
a) forget b) memorize c) ignore d) write
5. To apply for this job, you need the right skills and
a) qualifications b) hobbies c) friends d) clothes
6. I like coffee, my sister prefers tea.
a) so b) but c) because d) and
7. He studied hard, he didn't pass the exam.
a) although b) and c) because d) so
8. You eat too much fast food; it is unhealthy.
a) should b) shouldn't c) could d) must
9. your hands before eating to stay healthy.
a) Washing b) Washed c) Washes d) Wash
10. I forgot my umbrella, I got wet in the rain.
a) and b) so c) but d) although

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I like pizza, but I don't like pasta. (although)
.....
2. I advise you to study for the exam. (should)
.....
3. I missed the bus, so I was late for school. (because)
.....

The Story

4 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Mother Wolf insist that Mowgli should stay with the wolf pack?
.....
2. How did Bagheera and Baloo help Mowgli when he was kidnapped by the Bandar-log?
.....
3. What lesson did Mowgli learn about friendship and loyalty in the jungle?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 4.** Mowgli was discovered by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf because he had from his village.
a) run away b) slept
c) played d) walked
- 5.** Baloo promised to Mowgli and teach him the Law of the Jungle.
a) ignore b) train
c) hide d) chase
- 6.** Mowgli learned the secret of fire from watching humans, so he could Shere Khan.
a) help b) follow
c) feed d) drive back

5 Write a “Study Tips” poster of about (90-100) words for your little brother to organize his study time.

[illegible]

Unit 10

STORYTELLING

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify plot points and characters in a familiar story (Cinderella).
- Infer lessons or morals from stories (e.g., trust, greed).

Listening

- Recognize words related to relationships (gratitude, promise, trust, secret).
- Identify key events and the moral lesson in a folktale.

Speaking

- Express opinions on what makes a good story and favorite characters.
- Retell a story in a short sequence, using time connectors (first, then, after that, finally).

Language

- The past perfect tense.

Writing

- Write a story ending that includes feelings, unexpected events, and a final reflection.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

admit (ted) (v)	يعترف بـ	fade (d) (v)	يبهت/يتلاشى
courage (n)	شجاعة/جراة	generation (n)	جيل
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	precious (adj)	ثمين/غال

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

alive (adj)	حي	necklace (n)	عقد/قلادة
confused (adj)	مرتبك	period (n)	فترة/مدة
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	picture (d) (v/n)	يتصور/يتخيل/صورة
ending (n)	نهاية	plain (adj)	بسيط/سادة
expensive (adj)	غال/باهظ الثمن	quality (n)	سمة/صفة
folded (adj)	مطوى	surprised (adj)	مندعش/متفاجئ
gift (n)	هدية/هبة	treasure (n)	كنز
hope (d) (v/n)	يأمل/أمل	valuable (adj)	ثمين/قيم
ink (n)	حبر	wooden (adj)	خشبي
living memory (n)	ذكرى حية	yellow (v)	يجعل اللون أصفر

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

carry its light forward يبقى نوره (رسالته) مضيئاً للأجيال القادمة	filled with	ملء/ممتلئ بـ
do with يفعل بـ/يتعامل مع	moved across	تحرك/انتقل عبر
face danger/fear يواجه خطر/خوف	say sorry	يقول أسف/يعتذر
far more than أكثر بكثير من	sit at a desk	يجلس على مكتب

Read and complete with a word from the list:

say – courage – folded – plain

- Noha likes dresses because they look simple and neat.
- When you hurt someone's feelings, it's important to sorry.
- It needs to speak in front of the class.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

curiosity (n)	فضول	moral (n/adj)	عبرة / أخلاقى
folktale (n)	حكاية شعبية / قصة تراثية	promise (d) (v/n)	يعد / وعود
gratitude (n)	امتنان / شكر	trust (ed) (v/n)	يثق / ثقة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

agreement (n)	اتفاق / تفاهم	fridge (n)	ثلاجة
aloud (adv)	بصوت عالٍ	gold (n)	ذهب
character (n)	شخصية	ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل / يجهل
check (ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق	miss (ed) (v)	يفوت / يفتقد
common (adj)	شائع / منتشر / مشترك	request (ed) (v/n)	يطلب / طلب
desire (n)	إرادة / رغبة	thank (ed) (v)	يشكر
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	trap (ped) (v)	يوقع فى فخ / يصطاد

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

break his promise	يُخلف وعده	move to	ينتقل إلى
catch birds	يصطاد الطيور	retell a story	يعيد سرد قصة
feel safe with	يشعر بالأمان مع	set free	يطلق سراح
fly away	يطير بعيداً	tell folktale	يروى حكاية شعبية
go for a walk	يذهب فى نزهة / يتمشى	thankful for	ممتن لـ
keep a promise	يبقى على الوعد	trapped in a net	محاصر فى شبكة
make a promise	يتعهد / يوعده	turn into	يتحول إلى

Read and complete with a word from the list:

gratitude – to – for – set – desire

- 1 Yesterday, we went a walk in the park.
- 2 His was to sit near the window.
- 3 Rana showed by saying, "Thank you."
- 4 The kind man the trapped bird free.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
build	يبني	built	built
fly	يطير	flew	flown
set	يضبط/يعد	set	set
sit	يجلس	sat	sat

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
admit	يعترف	confess	يعترف	deny	ينكر
alive	حي	living	حي	dead	ميت
clear	واضح	obvious	واضح	unclear	غير واضح
common	شائع/منتشر	usual/ordinary	عادي	uncommon	غير شائع
courage	شجاعة/جراة	bravery	شجاعة	fear	خوف
expensive	غال/باهظ الثمن	costly	مكلف	cheap/inexpensive	رخيص
gratitude	امتنان/شكر	thankfulness	شكر	ingratitude	إنكار الجميل/جحدود
normal	عادي	ordinary	عادي	abnormal	غير عادي

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
discover (v)	يكشف	-y	تحويل إلى اسم	discovery (n)	اكتشاف
value (n)	قيمة	-able	تحويل إلى صفة	valuable (adj)	ثمين/قيم
wood (n)	خشب	-en		wooden (adj)	خشبي
warm (adj)	دافئ	-ly	تحويل إلى حال	warmly (adv)	بحرارة/بود
agree (v)	يوافق	-ment	تحويل إلى اسم	agreement (n)	اتفاق/تفاهم
tell (v)	يخبر/يحكي	re-	إعادة الفعل	retell (v)	يعيد سرد
thank (v)	يشكر	-ful	تحويل إلى صفة	thankful (adj)	ممتن

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I cannot buy that expensive bag. The antonym of "expensive" is ".....".
a) common b) simple c) cheap d) dead
- The teacher wanted me to retell the story to the class. The prefix "re-" in "retell" means ".....".
a) not b) again c) less d) never
- The fish is still alive in the water. The synonym of "alive" is ".....".
a) strong b) weak c) dead d) living

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 In your opinion, what makes a story exciting?
- 2 Do you prefer stories with happy or sad endings? Why?

 Read the following text. What was the old box made of?

SB page 57

When Salma opened the old wooden box, she was surprised⁽¹⁾. The box itself looked plain⁽²⁾ and normal from the outside, yet in her hands, it already felt strange and precious⁽³⁾. With slow, careful fingers, she lifted out a folded⁽⁴⁾, yellowed letter. The paper was old, and though the ink had faded⁽⁵⁾ with time, the words were still clear enough to read.

Decades⁽⁶⁾ earlier, her grandfather had written this message to her mother, wishing her a life filled with courage⁽⁷⁾, kindness, and strong⁽⁸⁾ hope.

As Salma's eyes moved across the lines, she felt that she was holding far more than paper—she was holding her family's living memory⁽⁹⁾, a piece of its heart.

She pictured⁽¹⁰⁾ her grandfather, quietly sitting at a desk, shaping each word with patience⁽¹¹⁾ and love.

Smiling warmly, Salma realized this treasure⁽¹²⁾ had been kept for generations⁽¹³⁾, and now she, too, was part of its story, ready to carry its light forward.



- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| (1) مندهش/متفاجئ | (2) بسيط/سادة |
| (3) ثمين/غالي | (4) مطوي |
| (5) تلاشى/بهت | (6) عقود |
| (7) الشجاعة | (8) قوى |
| (9) ذكرى حية | (10) تخيلت/تصورت |
| (11) صبر | (12) كنز |
| (13) أجيال | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why do you think Salma felt the letter was more than just paper?
.....
- 2 How might this discovery change the way Salma thinks about her family's past and future?
.....
- 3 If you were in Salma's place, what would you do with such a treasure to keep its meaning alive for the next generations?
.....

Listening Text



Lesson 2

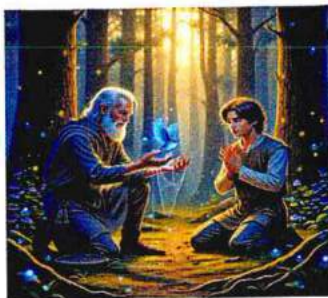
Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What folktales are common in your culture?
- 2 Why do people tell folktales?

Listen and answer the following questions.

SB page 59

Many years ago, a kind, poor farmer was walking through the forest⁽¹⁾ when he found a small bird trapped in a net⁽²⁾. By the time he reached it, the bird had already lost most of its strength⁽³⁾. The farmer gently freed the bird, and after he had helped it, the bird suddenly changed into a young man. He thanked⁽⁴⁾ the farmer with deep gratitude⁽⁵⁾ because the farmer had saved his life.



Tips on a folktale

A folktale is a traditional story passed from one generation to another. It usually teaches a moral or lesson through simple characters like farmers, animals, or children.

The young man made a promise⁽⁶⁾ to stay with the farmer and work on the farm. They planted crops and shared meals happily. However, the young man had one request⁽⁷⁾: the farmer must not ask about his past. The farmer respected⁽⁸⁾ this request before he broke it.

But one day, curiosity⁽⁹⁾ won. After the farmer had asked about the young man's past, the young man sadly left forever, teaching the farmer how important it is to keep your promise.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| (1) غابة/أدغال | (2) محاصر في شبكة |
| (3) قوة | (4) شكر |
| (5) امتنان/شكر | (6) وعد/عهد |
| (7) طلب | (8) احترام |
| (9) فضول | |

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 Why did the young man thank the farmer?

.....

- 2 How did the young man help the farmer?

.....

- 3 What important lesson did the farmer learn?

.....

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

courage	شجاعة/جرأة	strong quality ⁽¹⁾ that helps you face danger ⁽²⁾ or fear	(1) سمة/صفة
curiosity	فضول	a strong desire ⁽³⁾ to know or learn something	(2) يواجه الخطر
decade	عقد (عشر سنوات)	a period of ten years	(3) رغبة/إرادة
faded	بهت/تلاشى	to lose color and brightness ⁽⁴⁾	(4) بريق/لمعان
generation	جيل	people born and living at the same time	(5) اتفاق/تفاهم
gratitude	امتنان/شكر	being thankful for someone's help or kindness	
precious	ثمين/غال	something valuable or expensive	
promise	يعد	a strong agreement ⁽⁵⁾ to do or not to do something	
trust	يثق	to believe in someone and feel safe with them	

1 adj. + enough to + inf.

كاف/بدرجة كافية

.. • The words were still **clear enough** to read.

2 reach

يصل إلى (لا يُستخدم أى حرف جر)

• They **reached** the airport at ten a.m.

3 arrive at

يصل إلى مكان صغير (داخل مدينة)

• They **arrived at** the airport on time.

4 arrive in

يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة/دولة)

• Salma **arrived in** Cairo at 3 p.m.

5 home

بيت (لا يأتي قبلها حرف جر بمعنى إلى)

arrive home يصل إلى البيت / **return home** يعود إلى البيت / **go home** يذهب إلى البيت

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The instructions **تعليمات** were understand.
 a) enough simple b) enough simple to
 c) simple enough to d) simple enough
- After a long journey, we Cairo at noon.
 a) arrived in b) got c) arrived at d) took
- When I finished my music class, I went quickly to watch my favorite cartoon show.
 a) to home b) at home c) home d) in home

LESSON

7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is a good quality that helps you face danger or fear.
 a) A necklace b) A discovery c) Courage d) Kindness
- We can discover interesting facts. Add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "discover".
 a) -ly b) -ion c) -ness d) -y
- The colors in the picture will in the bright sun.
 a) admit b) fade c) wash d) wish
- Hana discovered that the box was filled red apples.
 a) on b) at c) with d) for
- Her instructions were clear and easy to follow. The synonym of "clear" is ".....".
 a) hard b) obvious c) weak d) strong
- This old ring is very that it costs a lot of money.
 a) strange b) plain c) precious d) normal
- Yasser has lived in this white house for a; he stayed for ten years there.
 a) generation b) decade c) discovery d) quality
- Sometimes, you must sorry to your friend if you hurt him.
 a) say b) sit c) tell d) mention
- They built a small wooden house near the lake. The suffix "en" in "wooden" makes it a/an
 a) adverb b) noun c) verb d) adjective
- She admired his honesty; it is a good to have.
 a) hope b) decade c) quality d) excuse

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fade – heart – wooden – treasure – thanked

My grandmother gave me a small box yesterday afternoon. It was a (1)..... box with many old pictures inside it. I opened it carefully to find a silver necklace. She told me it was a real (2)..... from the past. My grandma has a very big (3)..... . She loves to share her things with us. I (4)..... her for her kindness and love. We sat together and looked at the photos happily.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The mouse was inside the cage and couldn't escape.
a) trapped b) relaxed c) comfortable d) hiding
- She gave me a warm smile when I entered the room. We add the suffix "....." to get the adverb of "warm".
a) -tion b) -ily c) -ness d) -ly
- Amal thanked her friend for the gift. We form the adjective of "thank" by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ness c) -ment d) -ly
- His led him to explore the abandoned مهجور building.
a) curiosity b) agreement c) confusion d) weakness
- Sameh made a to help with my homework today.
a) folktale b) trust c) gratitude d) promise
- Spelling mistakes are common for beginners. The synonym of "common" is ".....".
a) weak b) dead c) usual d) expensive
- He is a man of good qualities and never his promise.
a) keeps b) breaks c) turns d) moves
- A/An is a traditional story passed down from one generation to another.
a) report b) folktale c) experience d) experiment
- In the evening, we like to for a long walk.
a) go b) do c) make d) set
- She sent a to the teacher asking for extra time to finish the homework.
a) request b) joke c) warning d) complaint

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trust – moral – characters – folktale – keep

Reading stories is a wonderful way to learn about different people. Every story has a special (1); a lesson that helps us live better lives. Last night, my grandmother told me an old (2) from the past. It was about honesty and how to (3) our promises to our friends. Through these tales, we also learn about new (4), and my classmates and I love talking about them together.

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Grammar story:



Last Saturday, Ali (**had baked/baked**) chocolate cookies before his friends came to play. He (**had painted/painted**) his kite bright blue the day before, and he (**had flown/flew**) it. He was so excited. Just then, it started to rain. The raindrops fell gently, and the kite fell down.

- The **Past Perfect** is used to talk about an action that happened before another past action or time.

يستخدم الماضي التام للحديث عن فعل حدث قبل فعل آخر أو وقت آخر في الماضي.

- I **had eaten** dinner before my friend **arrived**.
 ("Had eaten" happened FIRST, "arrived" happened SECOND.)

Remember the past simple tense:

تذكر زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage: We use the past simple tense to speak about actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتحدث عن أفعال بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

- e.g. • I **visited** my friend yesterday.
 • They **went** to school early.

Negative: النفي

Subject + didn't + inf. الفعل في المصدر

- e.g. • Jana **didn't play** tennis last weekend.
 • They **didn't go** to school early.

Interrogative: الاستفهام

Did + subject + inf. الفعل في المصدر?

- e.g. Did you **visit** your friend yesterday?

Form

التكوين

A) Affirmative: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + had + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. Sama **had left** the house before the rain started.

B) Negative: النفي

Subject الفاعل + hadn't + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. We **hadn't met** him before the party.

Question

السؤال

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بـ «هل»

Had + subject الفاعل + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. A: **Had** Nada **come** before you?

A: Yes, she had.

B: No, she hadn't.

B) Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word أداة استفهام + had + subject الفاعل + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. A: How **had** you **solved** the problem before class?

B: I **had asked** for my teachers' help.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

after / بحلول الوقت / as soon as / بمجرد أن / because / لأن / before / قبل / by the time / بحلول الوقت

when / عندما / by then / بحلول ذلك الوقت / already / بالفعل / never / أبداً



subject فاعل + past perfect ماضٍ تام / حدث أول

subject فاعل + past simple ماضٍ بسيط / حدث ثانٍ

e.g. After I **had finished** my homework, I went to bed.

Subject فاعل + past simple ماضٍ بسيط حدث ثانٍ + **after/ as soon as because** + subject فاعل + past perfect ماضٍ تام حدث أول

e.g. My brother walked to school because he **had missed** the bus.

2
Before/ By the time قبل + subject فاعل + past simple ماضٍ بسيط حدث ثانٍ / subject فاعل + past perfect ماضٍ تام حدث أول

e.g. By the time Ali arrived, his friends **had** already **left**.

Subject فاعل + past perfect ماضٍ تام حدث أول + **before/ by the time** + subject فاعل + past simple ماضٍ بسيط حدث ثانٍ

e.g. The movie **had started** before we sat down.

3
Subject فاعل + past simple (negative) ماضٍ بسيط منفي (حدث ثانٍ) + **until/ till** حتى + subject فاعل + past perfect ماضٍ تام حدث أول

e.g. I didn't play video games until I **had finished** my homework.

لاحظ



1. After بعد	After + (v+ing), + subject + past simple e.g. After finishing my homework, I watched TV.	الجملةتان بفاعل واحد
2. Before قبل	Before + (v+ing), + subject + had + P.P. e.g. Before starting the exam, we had revised all the lessons.	الجملةتان بفاعل واحد
3. When عندما	ماضٍ بسيط + فاعل , ماضٍ تام + فاعل + When ماضٍ تام + فاعل , ماضٍ بسيط + فاعل + When e.g. When they had saved enough money, they bought a new car. When I <u>arrived</u> home, my uncle had already left.	لاحظ أننا نضع الحدث الأقدم في الماضي التام مع جميع الروابط.

Got it?

Rewrite the following sentence using the word(s) between brackets:

- She finished her homework. Then, she watched TV. (After)

- يتم البدء بكلمة (After) ثم كتابة الحدث الأول في صيغة الماضي التام (had finished) وكتابة الحدث

الثاني في الماضي البسيط (watched) مع حذف الكلمات الدالة على ترتيب الأحداث مثل first - then

After she **had finished** her homework, she **watched** TV.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Bassem watched TV after he his homework.
a) did b) does c) had done d) was doing
- When I arrived at school, the school bell, so I was late for class.
a) rings b) rang c) had rung d) was ringing
- My sister her homework before she watched TV.
a) had finished b) finished c) finishes d) was finishing
- After they had eaten dinner, they for a walk.
a) go b) were going c) had gone d) went
- By the time Ali home, his brother had already eaten all the cookies.
a) come b) came c) had come d) was coming

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- She had studied hard. She passed the test. (because) **SB**
.....
- First, Ahmed ate his apple, and then he went outside. (After)
.....
- The teacher explained the lesson, and then students wrote it. (Before)
.....
- First, Judy finished her homework, and then the show started. (By the time)
.....
- Yesterday, I washed the dishes, and then I went to sleep. (Before)
.....
- The hungry dog ate the food, and then it drank water. (As soon as)
.....
- First, Laila cleaned her room. Then, she called her friend. (until)
.....
- We bought the tickets, and then we entered the big cinema. (Before)
.....
- First, Tarek brushed his teeth. Then, he went to bed. (After)
.....
- First, Rahaf cooked dinner, and then the guests arrived at home. (By the time)
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We our bags before the taxi arrived to take us to the airport.
a) pack b) packed c) had packed d) were packing
- When the teacher the room, the students had already opened their books.
a) entered b) had entered c) enters d) was entering
- Before for school, Mariam had brushed her teeth.
a) left b) leaving c) had left d) has left
- My dad the bicycle before I asked him to ride it to the park.
a) fixes b) fixed c) has fixed d) had fixed
- After I my drawing, I showed it to my mom and dad.
a) had finished b) finished c) finish d) finishing

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Rana missed the school bus, so she was late. (because)
.....
- First, the gardener watered the flowers. Then, they grew tall. (After)
.....
- Mazen could not open the door; he lost his key. (because)
.....
- Jana painted a picture. Then, she showed her mom. (Before)
.....
- The movie started. Then, we arrived at the movie theater. (When)
.....
- First, Nour made a cake, and then the family ate it. (until)
.....
- The bird built a nest, and then it laid three eggs. (After)
.....
- Last week, I finished my work, and then I went out. (Before)
.....
- First, Adam saved money, and then he bought a new bike. (As soon as)
.....
- The thief stole the bag, and then the police caught him. (By the time)
.....

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درسين في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





How to write about retelling a story

كيفية الكتابة عن إعادة سرد قصة

1

Beginning (First...)

المقدمة

- Introduce the story.
- Name the main characters.

2

Middle (Then/After that...)

الوسط

- Write the main events in order.
- Use simple sentences.

Retelling a story

إعادة سرد قصة

3

Ending (Finally ...)

النهاية

- How the story ends
- What happens to the characters
- Personal comment: I liked the story because

4

Useful Time Connectors:

روابط زمنية مفيدة

(First - Then - After that - Finally)

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"The story of a little fox"

First, I read a story about a little fox who lived in a big forest. The fox was very curious and loved to explore. Then, one day, the fox saw a lost bird and wanted to help it. The bird was hungry and scared. After that, the fox gave the bird food and water and stayed with it until it felt safe. The bird was very happy and thanked the fox. Finally, the fox and the bird became good friends and played together every day. I liked the story because it was kind and happy, and it teaches us to help others.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hana lost her favorite in the park.
a) doll b) kite c) ball d) book
2. found the lost item near the swings.
a) Hana b) Ahmed c) Ali d) Sarah

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Where did Hana look for the ball?

.....

4. How did Hana feel when she lost the ball?

.....

5. What did they do after finding the ball?

.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The bright colors will if you wash the shirt with chemicals.
a) fade b) confess c) picture d) smile
2. When you make a mistake, you must to do better next time.
a) thank b) trust c) promise d) miss
3. The cat is still alive after the accident. The antonym of "alive" is ".....".
a) weak b) strong c) living d) dead
4. A is a period of ten years.
a) version b) decade c) folktale d) necklace

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

free – trapped – request – gratitude – simple

Many years ago, a poor farmer found a small bird (1)..... in a net in the forest. After he had set it (2)....., the bird changed into a young man who thanked him with deep (3)..... . The young man made a promise to stay and work on the farm, but asked the farmer not to ask about his past. Curiosity won, and after the farmer broke this (4)..... , the young man left forever.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. First, Amira read the book, and then she returned it later. (When)
.....
2. The train left the station, and then we arrived there quickly. (By the time)
.....
3. After Omar had done his homework, he played a game. (Before)
.....
4. The girl lost her doll, so she started to cry loudly. (because)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Huda is telling Rami that she found an old letter in a book.

Huda : I found a yellowed letter in a book.

Rami : What (1)..... it say?

Huda : It says, "Dear Amina, I miss you."

Rami : (2)..... wrote it?

Huda : My grandfather wrote it to my grandmother.

Rami : When did he write it?

Huda : I think when he (3)..... very young.

Rami : I think they (4)..... each other so much.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A story you read"

.....
.....
.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. They left the house. Then, it started to rain. (By the time)
.....
2. He cleaned his room. Then, his mom came in. (before)
.....
3. We bought tickets. Then, the concert began. (After)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

<50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

cruel (adj)	قاسٍ/ظالم	royal (adj)	ملكي
fairy (n)	جنية / ساحرة	servant (n)	خادم/ خادمة
midnight (n)	منتصف الليل	slippers (n)	شبشب/ نعال خفيفة
party (n)	حفلة	stepsister (n)	أخت غير شقيقة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

admire (d) (v)	يعجب بـ	gentle (adj)	لطيف/ رقيق
beloved (adj)	محبوب/ عزيز	imaginary (adj)	خيالي
bride (n)	عروس	kind-hearted (adj)	طيب القلب/ رحيم
carriage (n)	عربة/ مركبة	magic (n/adj)	سحر/ سحري
comfortably (adv)	بشكل مريح	marry (y) (ied) (v)	يتزوج
dazzling (adj)	مبهر/ لامع	mouse/mice (n)	فأر/ فئران
fairy tale (n)	قصة خيالية/ حكاية خرافية	prince (n)	أمير
force (d) (v)	يجبر	pumpkin (n)	يقطين/ قرع عسل
fit (ted) (v)	يناسب/ يلائم	reward (ed) (v/n)	يُكافئ/ مكافأة
golden (adj)	ذهبي	suffer (ed) (v)	يعانى/ يتألم
giant (n) (adj)	عملاق	stepmother (n)	زوجة الأب

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at midnight	فى منتصف الليل	lose her nature	تفقد طبيعتها / شخصيتها
dream of	يحلم بـ	lose patience	يفقد الصبر
go away	يرحل/ يبتعد	Once upon a time	فى ذات يوم
Happily ever after	فى سعادة دائمة	run away	يهرب
leave behind	يترك خلفه/ يخلف وراءه	search for	يبحث عن

Read and complete with a word from the list:

servant – for – of – kind

- 1 A-hearted friend always cares about others.
- 2 Eman searched her cat in the garden.
- 3 The cleans the big room every day.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
lose يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
let يسمح/يدع	let	let
read يقرأ	read	read

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (opposite) عكسها
cruel قاسٍ/ظالم	unkind/heartless غير طيب/قاسٍ	gentle/kind-hearted طيب
suffer يعاني/يتألم	hurt/ache يؤلم/يوجع	rest يستريح
beloved محبوب	darling محبوب	hated مكروه
magical سحري	magnificent رائع	ordinary عادي
excited متحمس	thrilled مبتهج/متحمس	bored لديه ملل
beautiful جميل	wonderful رائع	ugly قبيح

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Prefix /Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
night (n) الليل	mid-	تعني وسط الشيء	midnight (n) منتصف الليل
serve (v) يخدم	-ant	تحول إلى اسم	servant (n) خادم/خادمة
sister (n) أخت	step-	تعني غير شقيق	stepsister (n) أخت غير شقيقة
comfortable (adj) مريح	-y	تحول إلى حال	comfortably (adv) بشكل مريح
gold (n) ذهب	-en	تحول إلى صفة	golden (adj) ذهبي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Saying unkind words can be cruel. The word "....." is an antonym of "cruel".
a) unkind b) hard c) gentle d) hated
- The carried the bags into the house.
a) serving b) served c) server d) servant
- He wrote a poem for his beloved mother. The word "beloved" can be replaced by ".....".
a) ordinary b) darling c) hated d) severe
- It is very quiet in the village at night. Add the prefix "....." to "night" to mean "in the middle of it".
a) dis- b) mid- c) inter- d) en-

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What is your favorite story?
- 2 If you could go to a party, what would you wear and why?

 **Read the following story. What helped the prince to find Cinderella?** SB Page 61

Cinderella is one of the most beloved **fairy**⁽¹⁾ tales in the world. It tells the story of a gentle, **kind-hearted**⁽²⁾ girl who lives unhappily with her cruel **stepmother**⁽³⁾ and two unkind **stepsisters**⁽⁴⁾. After the death of her father, Cinderella works as a **servant**⁽⁵⁾ in her own house, cleaning, cooking, and doing every task while her stepsisters live comfortably. Although she suffers greatly, she never loses her good nature, **patience**⁽⁶⁾, or hope.

One day, the king has a big **royal party**⁽⁷⁾ so that the prince may choose his future bride. Cinderella dreams of going, but her stepmother doesn't let her go. Just when all hope seems lost, her kind fairy appears. She replaced Cinderella's old clothes with a **dazzling dress**⁽⁸⁾, and she is given beautiful glass slippers. A **pumpkin**⁽⁹⁾ becomes a golden carriage, and mice turn into horses.

At the party, the prince admires Cinderella's beauty and kindness. But at midnight, the magic **fades**⁽¹⁰⁾, and she runs away, leaving behind one slipper. The prince searches for her until he finds her, the only one whose foot fits the shoe. They marry, and Cinderella's kindness is finally rewarded with love and happiness.



- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| (1) خيالي/خرافي | (2) طيبة قلب |
| (3) زوجة الأب | (4) أخوات غير شقيقات |
| (5) خادمة | (6) الصبر |
| (7) حفلة ملكية | (8) فستان مبهر |
| (9) يقطين/قرعة | (10) يختفي/يتلاشى |

What Is a Fairy Tale?

A fairy tale is a short story that includes magic, fantasy, and imaginary characters such as fairies, giants, or talking animals. It often begins with the words "Once upon a time" and ends with "Happily ever after". Fairy tales usually teach a moral or lesson.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think Cinderella stayed kind and hopeful even when she was treated unfairly?
- 2 What lesson can we learn from the way the kind fairy helped Cinderella?
- 3 How might the story be different if Cinderella had chosen not to go to the party?

Notes on Reading

1 one of + superlatives + صيغ التفضيل + plural noun

واحد من

- Cinderella is **one of the most beloved** fairy **tales** in the world.

2 forced + to + inf.

مُجبر على

- Cinderella is **forced to work** as a servant in her own house.

3 work as a/an + وظيفة

يعمل كـ

- My father **works as an engineer**.

4 جملة + so that + جملة

لكي/حتى

- The king has a big royal party **so that** the prince may choose his future bride.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My aunt works doctor in a big hospital near our house.
a) like b) as c) as a d) such as
- She saved her money she could buy a new bicycle next month.
a) so as b) so that
c) because d) in order to
- The students were forced their essays because they had many mistakes.
a) rewrite b) to rewrite c) rewriting d) to rewriting
- Pizza is most popular foods children eat all around the world.
a) a b) one c) one of d) one of the

تطبيق الأضواء

محتواك الرقمي مجاناً مع الكتاب:
امسح الكود الشخصي بالغلاف الداخلي في
نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة
الرقمي من تطبيق الأضواء.

انزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



LESSON 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In the story, the helped the prince find the hidden treasure.
 a) fairy b) pumpkin c) slippers d) teacher
- It is cruel to hurt animals for fun. "....." can be an antonym to "cruel".
 a) Lost b) Gentle c) Dazzling d) Royal
- A serve helps with household work. To correct the underlined word, delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
 a) -tion b) -ant c) -ily d) -ness
- She began to patience when the children wouldn't listen.
 a) lose b) enjoy c) laugh d) relax
- I am excited to go to the park today. The antonym of "excited" is ".....".
 a) frightened b) tired c) thrilled d) bored
- We had to our old toys when we moved to a new house.
 a) run away b) find out c) dream of d) leave behind
- The police offered a for any information about the missing child.
 a) party b) punishment c) reward d) pumpkin
- Smoking and unhealthy habits can increase the risk of an early
 a) birth b) death c) success d) life
- She tried on several shoes to see which ones her.
 a) fit b) let c) lose d) force
- The looked beautiful in her wedding dress.
 a) bride b) groom c) neighbor d) guest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fairy – suffered – excited – beauty – dazzling

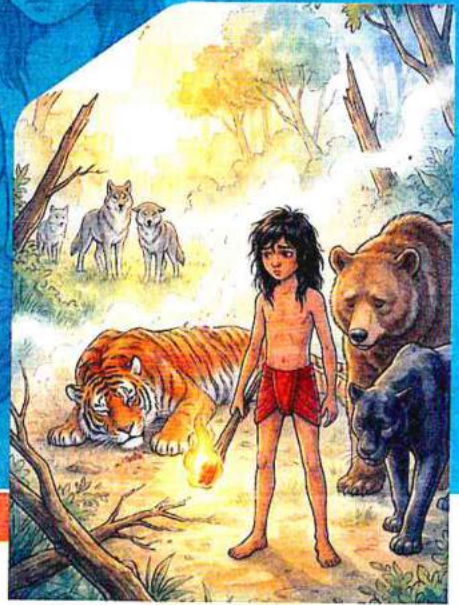
Sami loved reading fairy tales. His favorite was about a poor girl who (1)..... in silence. Her stepsister was cruel to her. One day, a kind (2)..... used magic to help her. A tiny mouse became a white horse, and a pumpkin turned into a carriage. She wore a (3)..... dress and golden slippers to the royal party. Everyone would admire her (4)..... and kindness. But at midnight, the magic would go away.

4

Chapter Four: Mowgli's Final Confrontation

Chapter (4) in points:

الفصل الرابع في نقاط



1 Mowgli faced his final battle with Shere Khan.

واجه ماوكللي معركته الأخيرة مع شيريكخان.

2 Shere Khan tried to kill him by driving cattle toward him.

حاول شيريكخان قتله بدفع الماشية نحوه.

3 Mowgli used fire and his cleverness to stop the plan.

استخدم ماوكللي النار وذكاءه لإفشال الخطة.

4 He led the herd in a way that trapped and crushed Shere Khan.

قاد القطيع بطريقة حاصرت شيريكخان وسحقته.

5 Mowgli won, but he felt both victory and sadness.

انتصر ماوكللي، لكنه شعر بالنصر والحزن معاً.

6 Some wolves rejected him because he was human.

رفضه بعض الذئاب لأنه إنسان.

7 Mowgli left the wolf pack with a heavy heart.

غادر ماوكللي قطيع الذئاب بقلب حزين.

8 This victory marked the end of his childhood and the start of his search for where he belongs.

كان هذا الانتصار نهاية طفولته وبداية بحثه عن المكان الذي ينتمي إليه.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

confrontation (n)	مواجهة/تصادم/نزاع	reject (ed) (v)	يرفض
crushed (adj)	محطم/مسحوق/تحت ضغط	resourceful (adj)	بارع في حل المشاكل / واسع الحيلة
cunning (n) (adj)	دهاء/مكر/ماكر	run away (v)	يهرب/يفر/يجري بعيداً
herd (n)	قطيع	victory (n)	نصر/فوز

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

childhood (n)	طفولة	mark (ed) (v)	يضع علامة/يعلم/يحدد
defeat (ed) (v)	يهزم/يتغلب على	narrow pass (n)	ممر ضيق
fallen enemy (n)	عدو ساقط/هالك	trap (ped) (v)	يحتجز/يوقع في فخ
heavy heart (n)	قلب حزين	truly (adv)	حقاً/بصدق/فعلًا
helpless (adj)	عاجز/مستسلم	wise (adj)	حكيم/ذو حكمة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at a cost	على حساب/ولكن بثمن ما	say good bye to	يودع/يقول وداعاً لـ
belong to	ينتمي إلى/يتبع لـ	set a trap	ينصب فخاً/مكيده
no longer	لم يعد	stand over	يراقب/يقف على

Definitions التعريفات

confrontation	مواجهة/تصادم/نزاع	serious meeting, arguing, or fight	شجار between people
cunning	ماكر/مخادع/دهاء	being clever in a way that is often tricky using smart methods	
victory	نصر/فوز	great success	
rejected	رفض	refused, not accepted	

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think happens when a person must choose between two things?
- 2 What do you expect will happen to Mowgli and Shere Khan?

Read the following text. What happened at the wolf council?

SB page 63

CHAPTER FOUR: Mowgli's Final Confrontation

The final confrontation⁽¹⁾ arrived. Shere Khan set a trap⁽²⁾ to kill Mowgli by driving cattle⁽³⁾ toward him. Yet Mowgli, brave and resourceful⁽⁴⁾, turned the plan against the tiger. With fire and cunning⁽⁵⁾, he forced the herd قطيع to run away, trapping Shere Khan in a narrow pass⁽⁶⁾. The tiger was crushed⁽⁷⁾ and finally defeated.

(1) مواجهة

(2) مصيدة/فخ

(3) ماشية

(4) بارع/ماكر

(5) خداع/مكر

(6) ممر ضيق

(7) محطم

(8) قطيع

(9) وعد

(10) انتصار

(11) طفولة

(12) حكيم

How did Mowgli stop Shere Khan's trap?

Standing over his fallen enemy, Mowgli felt both victory and sadness. He had protected himself and his wolf family, but at a cost. When he returned to the pack⁽⁸⁾, many wolves rejected him, believing that humans could never truly belong to the jungle.

Why did the wolves reject Mowgli after he won?

Mowgli decided to leave the pack. With a heavy heart, he said good bye to the wolves, though he promised⁽⁹⁾ never to forget them. This victory⁽¹⁰⁾ marked the end of his childhood⁽¹¹⁾. He was no longer the helpless man-cub saved by Mother Wolf. He had become a young man, strong and wise⁽¹²⁾, yet still searching for where he truly belonged.

Why was Mowgli sad even though he won?

Story Time Q & A

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. How did Mowgli defeat Shere Khan?

كيف هزم ماوكللي شيرخان؟

- He used fire and cunning to drive the herd into a narrow pass.

2. Why did the wolves reject Mowgli?

لماذا رفض الذئاب ماوكللي؟

- Because they believed humans could never truly belong to the jungle.

3. What did Mowgli promise the wolves before leaving?

ما الذي وعد به ماوكللي الذئاب قبل مغادرته؟

- He promised never to forget them.

4. What did Mowgli decide to do at the end of the chapter?

ماذا قرر ماوكللي أن يفعل في نهاية الفصل؟

- He decided to leave the pack and search for where he truly belongs.

5. How did Mowgli feel after defeating Shere Khan?

كيف شعر ماوكللي بعد هزيمة شيرخان؟

- He felt both victory and sadness.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Mowgli was sad even though he won?

لماذا تعتقد أن ماوكللي كان حزينًا رغم فوزه؟

- Because his victory came at the cost of losing his home and the wolves' acceptance.

2. How did Mowgli change by the end of the chapter?

كيف تغير ماوكللي في نهاية الفصل؟

- He changed from a helpless man-cub into a strong, wise young man.

3. Do you think Mowgli's story shows that belonging is easy? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن قصة ماوكللي تظهر أن الانتماء أمر سهل؟ ولماذا أو لماذا لا؟

- No, it shows that belonging can be difficult, and sometimes you must search to find your place.

4. Do you think the fire was important in Mowgli's plan? Why?

هل تعتقد أن النار كانت مهمة في خطة ماوكللي؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, because it helped him control the cattle and trap Shere Khan.

5. What does Mowgli's decision to leave show about his character?

ماذا يظهر قرار ماوكللي بالمغادرة عن طبيعته؟

- It shows he is brave, honest, and respectful. He didn't stay where he wasn't welcome.

Chapter 4 Exercises

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

1. confrontation
2. cunning
3. victory
4. rejected

B

- a) great success
- b) serious meeting, arguing or fight between people
- c) refused, not accepted
- d) being clever in a way that is often tricky using smart methods

2 Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Shere Khan planned to kill Mowgli by using a herd of cattle. (.....)
2. The wolves all welcomed Mowgli back after the fight. (.....)
3. Bagheera reminded Mowgli that he belonged only to the jungle. (.....)
4. In the end, Mowgli chose to leave the wolf pack. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

1. How did Mowgli turn the tiger's plan against him?

.....

2. What happened to Shere Khan at the pass?

.....

3. How did Mowgli feel after defeating the tiger?

.....

4. What decision did Mowgli make after returning to the pack?

.....

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. Why do you think leaving the pack marks the end of Mowgli's childhood?

.....

2. If you were Mowgli, would you stay in the jungle or go to the village? Why?

.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- To avoid a, the teacher asked the students to calm down.
a) confrontation b) solution c) party d) journey
- Mowgli was very; he used fire to trap the tiger.
a) cunning b) careless c) slow d) weak
- The rocks were into small pieces to make a path.
a) crushed b) cared c) counted d) felt
- After the battle, Mowgli stood over his enemy with mixed feelings.
a) limited b) heavy c) narrow d) fallen
- Many wolves Mowgli because they believed humans didn't belong in the jungle.
a) rescued b) accepted c) completed d) rejected

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Mowgli used his cunning to turn the herd of cattle against Shere Khan. (.....)
- The tiger escaped through the narrow pass and was not hurt. (.....)
- Mowgli promised never to forget the wolves after he left the pack. (.....)
- Mowgli left the wolf pack with a heavy heart but promised never to forget them. (.....)
- The wolves celebrated Mowgli's triumph انتصار and welcomed him. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- What did Shere Khan do to try to kill Mowgli?
.....
- How did Mowgli use the herd and fire to defeat the tiger?
.....
- Why did the wolf pack reject Mowgli after he saved the jungle?
.....
- Why do you think Mowgli promised never to forget the wolves?
.....
- Why do you think this chapter "marks the end of Mowgli's childhood"?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A kind-hearted friend stays with you through hard times. The word "kind-hearted" and the word "gentle" are
a) opposites b) antonyms c) prefixes d) synonyms
2. She sat comfortably on the sofa. The word "comfortably" is a/an
a) noun b) verb c) adverb d) pronoun
3. The movie ended midnight, so we got home very late.
a) in b) to c) at d) on
4. The prince wanted to the girl who left the glass slipper behind.
a) force b) marry c) suffer d) appear

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Laila moved to a new city last year. At school, some children said, "You don't belong here. You're from somewhere else." She felt lost and quiet. But her teacher told her, "Your identity هوية is not limited to one place. You can carry your home in your heart and still make new friends." Laila thought about this. She didn't have to forget her old life to build a new one. One day, she joined the school play. She wore a royal costume and spoke. After the show, many students smiled at her. She realized: belonging isn't about where you're from—it's about who you are.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Laila felt lost at first because
a) she didn't like the teacher b) some children said she didn't belong
c) she forgot her homework d) she was sick
2. What did the teacher mean by "identity is not limited to one place"?
a) You must forget your past.
b) You can belong to more than one place.
c) Only one home is real.
d) Cities are better than villages.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. How did Laila begin to feel accepted at her new school?
.....
4. What kind of costume did Laila wear in the school play?
.....
5. Can someone be kind-hearted and still feel lonely? Why?
.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli felt only joy after defeating Shere Khan. ()
2. The wolf pack celebrated Mowgli as a hero and accepted him fully. ()
3. Mowgli used fire to control the herd and trap Shere Khan in a narrow pass. ()
4. Mowgli left the pack with a heavy heart but promised never to forget them. ()

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Mowgli feel sad after the victory?
6. What does Mowgli's story teach us about identity and belonging?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mowgli defeated Shere Khan. Then, he returned to the wolf pack. (before)
.....
2. The students handed in their tests. The teacher collected them. (After)
.....
3. We arrived at the cinema. The movie started. (until)
.....
4. Nada ate breakfast. Then, she went to school. (Before)
.....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A story of a fairy tale you admire"

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I cleaned my room. Then, my friend came over. (until)
.....
2. The bus left. We got to the station. (by the time)
.....
3. Mazin finished his homework. Then, he played video games. (After)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

beast (n)	وحش/حيوان مفترس	mystery (n)	غموض/لغز
disappointed (adj)	خائب الأمل/محبط	relieved (adj)	مرتاح/مطمئن

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

action (n)	فعل/حركة/حدث	overjoyed (adj)	سعيد جدًا/في غاية الفرح
beauty (n)	جمال/خُسن	row (n)	صف/طابور
bedtime (n)	وقت النوم	sailor (n)	بحار
brighten (ed) (v)	ينير/يضئ/يبهج	shocked (adj)	مصدوم/مذهول
camp (n)	مخيم/معسكر	sports competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة رياضية
dramatic (adj)	درامي/مثير/ملء بالأحداث	summarize (d) (v)	يلخص
frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف/يرعب	winner (n)	فائز
hall (n)	قاعة/ردهة	unexpectedly (adv)	بشكل غير متوقع
hopeful (adj)	مفعم بالأمل/متفائل	wonder (ed) (v)	يتساءل/يتعجب
judge (d) (v/n)	يحكم/يقيم/قاضٍ	voyage (n)	رحلة بحرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

after all	بعد كل شيء/في النهاية	make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراحًا/يقترح
lead to	يؤدي إلى	face dangers	يواجه المخاطر
at sunset	عند غروب الشمس	smile at	يبتسم لـ
in conclusion	في الختام/خلاصة القول	take off	يقلع (للطائرة)/يخلع (الملابس)
in the end	في النهاية/أخيرًا	to their surprise	لدهشتهم

Read and complete with a word from the list:

at – in – beast – overjoyed

- 1 The sky turns orange and pink sunset.
- 2 Sayed felt when he won the prize.
- 3 The lion is a strong

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
agree	يوافق	accept	يقبل	disagree	لا يوافق
overjoyed	سعيد جداً	delighted	مسرور	sad	حزين
relieved	مرتاح/مطمئن	comforted	مطمئن/مرتاح	worried	قلق
surprising	مفاجئ/مدهش	astonishing	مذهل	unsurprising	غير مدهش
hopeful	مفعم بالأمل	optimistic	متفائل	hopeless	يائس

البادئة واللاحقة Prefixes and Suffixes

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة Function	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
act (v)	يفعل/يتصرف	-ion	تحويل إلى اسم	action (n)	فعل/حركة/حدث
suggest (v)	يقترح	-tion		suggestion (n)	اقتراح
compete (v)	يتنافس	-sion		competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
conclude (n)	يختتم	-sion		conclusion (n)	ختام/خاتمة
bright (n)	لامع/منير	-en	تحويل إلى فعل	brighten (v)	ينير/يضئ/يبهج
fright (n)	رعب/خوف	-ize		frighten (v)	يخيف/يرعب
summary (n)	ملخص	-ful		summarize (v)	يلخص
hope (v/n)	يأمل/أمل	-al	تحويل إلى صفة	hopeful (adj)	مفعم بالأمل
magic (n)	سحر	-al		magical (adj)	سحري

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "hopeful" is formed by adding the suffix "-ful" to the word "hope" to get an
 a) verb b) noun c) adverb d) adjective
- We can act to help others. Add the suffix "....." to the verb "act" to form the noun.
 a) -er b) -ion c) -ness d) -al
- The children were overjoyed at the party. The synonym of "overjoyed" is ".....".
 a) helpful b) delighted c) cruel d) worried
- Even in difficult times, he is hopeful. That means he is
 a) hopeless b) optimistic c) relieved d) frightened

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What's your favorite story from childhood? Why do you like it?
- 2 Who is your favorite story character? Why?
- 3 Do you think stories can teach lessons? Give an example.

 Read the following dialog.

Salma Yomna, our teacher asked us to bring a story to class tomorrow. Have you thought about which one you'll tell?

Yomna Yes, I'm thinking about telling the story of "The Lion and the Mouse." It's short but has a strong lesson.

Salma That's a good choice! I believe stories should always have a **moral**⁽¹⁾.

Yomna True. Which story are you **planning**⁽²⁾ to tell?

Salma I want to tell the story of "The Seven Voyages of Sinbad the Sailor"⁽³⁾. It's exciting and full of action.

Yomna Nice! But it's also quite long. How will you manage the time?

Salma I'll just **summarize**⁽⁴⁾ the important parts. The main idea is that courage helps us face dangers and leads to success.

Yomna Makes sense. Maybe we should practice telling our stories to each other first.

Salma Great idea! That way, we won't forget important **details**⁽⁵⁾ in class.



(1) عبرة/مفزي

(2) تخطيط

(3) سندباد البحار والرحلات السبع

(4) يلخص

(5) تفاصيل

Post-reading question:

SB

Complete the missing expressions in the dialog:

A: I we should decide which story to tell in class.

B: That's true. We bring something interesting for our classmates.

A: we practice our stories together?

B: That helpful. What do you tell?

A: I tell a folktale if you prepare a fable.

B:! And we make sure the stories teach a lesson.

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A person who wins a sports competition is called a
 a) thief b) judge c) winner d) beast
- The opposite of "worried" is ".....", which means you feel calm.
 a) shocked b) hopeful c) relieved d) disappointed
- The sun is very bright today. To change the adjective "bright" into a verb, we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -en c) -al d) -ize
- After the team first place, everyone was so happy.
 a) judged b) made c) earned d) won
- She gave a short talk and then said, "..... conclusion, kindness matters."
 a) In b) For c) Up d) To
- The story was full of mystery. It felt truly
 a) hopeful b) magical c) relieved d) boring
- We enjoyed a lot at the last summer
 a) beast b) row c) judge d) camp
- At the end of the story, the writer shared the final part, which is called the ".....".
 a) suggestion b) conclusion c) winner d) magic
- After reading the long story, the teacher asked us to it in three sentences.
 a) wonder b) frighten c) brighten d) summarize

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

overjoyed – mystery – competition – hopeful – winner

Last week, our school had a very big event for all the students. It was a fun sports (1)..... with many running games to play. I felt (2)..... that I could run fast and win a prize. When the race finally finished, my friends started to clap loudly for me. I was the (3)..... of the race. I was (4)..... to get the gold medal in front of my happy family.



Sharing stories

Showing Interest and Giving Encouragement

إظهار الاهتمام وتقديم التشجيع

To show you're listening and support your partner.

- That's a good choice!
- Nice!
- This makes sense.
- How sweet!

Expressing Opinions and Beliefs

التعبير عن الآراء والمعتقدات

To share your opinion politely and connect it to the topic.

- I believe stories should always have a moral.
- True.
- That's true.

Offering Suggestions

تقديم الاقتراحات

To suggest helpful ideas and be open to your partner's suggestions.

- Maybe we should practice telling our stories to each other first.
- Let's read some new fairytales together.
- Great idea!

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Sami is asking Noor about the stories she heard.

Sami: Did you hear stories when you were little?

Noor: Yes, I (1).....

Sami: (2)..... told you the stories?

Noor: My grandfather told me the stories.

Sami: What kind of stories were they?

Noor: They (3)..... about brave animals and magic.

Sami: (4)..... you remember them now?

Noor: Yes, I still remember them clearly.

تطبيق الأضواء

إجابات 100%: راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأضواء من داخل التطبيق.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



How to write a story ending

Writing Tips

Useful Language:

- Describing feelings: relieved, disappointed, overjoyed, shocked
- Showing cause & effect: because of this, therefore, as a result, that's why
- Adding twists: unexpectedly, to their surprise, out of nowhere
- Wrapping up: in conclusion, in the end, finally, at last

1 Beginning – Introduce the character and setting

البداية - تقديم الشخصية والمكان

- It was a cold, rainy afternoon.
- Yara was bored at home because she couldn't go outside.

2 Middle – What problem or unexpected event happened?

الوسط - ما هي المشكلة أو الحدث غير المتوقع الذي حدث؟

- She heard a sound at the window.
- When she looked, a wet little bird was in the rain!

The rainy day surprise مفاجأة اليوم الممطر

3 Ending – How was the problem solved?

النهاية - كيف تم حل المشكلة؟

- She gently brought the bird inside, dried its wings, and gave it seeds.
- When the rain stopped, the bird flew away and came back the next day!

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"The rainy day surprise"

It was a gray, rainy afternoon, and Yara felt bored. She couldn't play outside, so she sat by the window and watched the rain. Suddenly, she heard a small sound. She looked out and saw a tiny bird on the window. Its wings were wet, and it couldn't fly. Yara carefully opened the window and brought the bird inside. She wrapped it in a soft cloth and gave it water and seeds. After an hour, the rain stopped. The bird was happy and flew into the sky. The next morning, it returned and sang outside her window. Yara smiled. She had made a new friend.

Lessons (5 & 6)

- The students stood in a to enter the school hall quietly.
a) trip
c) row
b) camp
d) trouble
- The opposite of "hopeless" is ".....," which means you believe good things will happen.
a) relieved
c) sweet
b) hopeful
d) courageous
- To change the noun "summary" into a verb, we delete "y" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -en
c) -ize
b) -al
d) -ion
- Someone who works in the sea is called a,
a) judge
c) sailor
b) winner
d) beast

magical – bedtime – frighten – row – mystery

I love reading nice books before I go to sleep at night. My mom reads me a new story every night before (1)..... . Yesterday, the story was about a (2)..... forest with talking animals. It was a fun (3)..... about a missing golden key. The bad wolf tried to (4)..... the little rabbits in the dark woods. But in the end, the rabbits were safe and found the key.

1. The rain began. Then, we reached home. (by the time)
2. Samira baked a cake. Then, her guests arrived. (before)
3. I met my friends after going to the club. (As soon as)
4. They fixed the car. After that, they went on a trip. (until)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Salma is asking Hamdy about his grandpa's stories.

Salma : Did your grandpa tell you old stories?

Hamdy : Yes, he (1).....

Salma : (2)..... he live in this city years ago?

Hamdy : No, he lived on a farm with animals.

Salma : (3)..... did he used to go to school?

Hamdy : He used to ride a bike to school.

Salma : You (4)..... write his stories in a book.

Hamdy : I will write them down this weekend.

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A story with a happy ending"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عليه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Before the concert started, we had found our seats. (After)

2. Hatim turned off the lights. Then, he went to sleep. (before)

3. The baby cried. His mom had already prepared the milk. (when)

4. We washed our hands. Then, we ate dinner. (after)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
normal	عادي	worthless	لا قيمة له
impressive	مبهر	cruel	قاس
stunned	مذهول	ugly	قبيح

2 Comprehension strategies:

- How to find the main idea of a paragraph:

كيفية إيجاد الفكرة الرئيسية للفقرة:

Explanation:

The main idea is the most important point the writer wants you to understand. It is often in the first or last sentence.

Steps:

- Read the first sentence — it often tells you the topic.
اقرأ الجملة الأولى — غالباً تخبرك بالموضوع.
- Read the last sentence — it often gives the result or summary.
اقرأ الجملة الأخيرة — غالباً تعطى النتيجة أو الملخص.
- Ignore small details — focus on the big message.
تجاهل التفاصيل الصغيرة — ركز على الرسالة الكبرى.
- Ask: "What is this mostly about?"
اسأل: "عن ماذا تتحدث هذه الفقرة في المجمل؟"

FOR EXAMPLE:

Many students in Giza walk to school every day. They wake up early, carry their books, and never miss class. Even when it rains, they still go. Their hard work shows how much they value education.

The main idea is:

- It rains a lot in Giza.
- Students in Giza are hardworking and value school.
- Walking is good for health.
- Students carry heavy books.

3 Translation:

- A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- The words were still clear enough to read.

☐
☐

- كانت الكلمات واضحة بما يكفي للقراءة.

- كانت الكلمات لا تزال واضحة بما يكفي للقراءة.

- B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- تضطر سندريلا للعمل كخادمة في منزلها.

- Cinderella has to work as a servant in her house.
- Cinderella wants to work as a servant in her house.

Vocabulary

admit (ted)	يُستَرف -
fade (d)	يُبهت/يُتلاشى
courage	شجاعة/جرأة
generation	جيل
decade	عقد (عشر سنوات)
precious	ثمين / غالي
folktale	حكاية شعبية/قصة تراثية
promise (d)	يعد/وعد
gratitude	امتنان/شكر
curiosity	فضول
moral	عبرة / أخلاق
trust (ed)	يثق/ثقمة
cruel	قاسٍ/ظالم
royal	ملكي
fairy	جنية / ساحرة
servant	خادم/خادمة
midnight	منتصف الليل
slippers	شبابش/نعال خفيفة
party	حفلة
stepsister	أخت غير شقيقة
beast	وحش/حيوان مفترس
mystery	غموض/لغز
disappointed	خائب/الأم/محبطة
relieved	مرتاح/مطمئن

Language

The Past Perfect Tense

Form

A) Affirmative:

Subject + **had** + **past participle (P.P.)**

e.g. Nancy **had written** her first poem by the time she was twelve

B) Negative:

Subject + **hadn't** + **past participle (P.P.)**

e.g. They **hadn't met** each other before the party.

Question

A) Yes/No question:

Had + subject + **past participle (P.P.)**

e.g. A: Had you ever visited the museum before?

B: Yes, I had. **B:** No, I hadn't.

B) Wh- question:

Q. Word + **had** + subject + **past participle (P.P.)**

e.g. A: What had they done before I arrived?

B: They had finished their homework.

Keywords

e.g. After my mum had heard the news, she phoned me.

Before the train arrived, we had waited for an hour.

I didn't play video games until I had finished my homework.

Skills

A. Speaking

Showing Interest and Giving Encouragement.

- That's a good choice!
- Nice!
- Makes sense.
- How sweet!

Expressing Opinions and Beliefs.

- I believe stories should always have a moral.
- True.
- That's true.

Offering Suggestions.

- Maybe we should practice telling our stories to each other first.
- Let's read some new fairytales together.
- Great idea!

B. Writing

A nice story you read

Cinderella is a sweet girl who lives with her mean stepmother and two unkind stepsisters. They make her clean the house and do all the hard work. One day, the king invites all the girls to a big party at the palace. Cinderella wants to go, but her stepmother says no. A kind fairy helps her with a pretty dress and glass shoes. At the party, the prince likes her, but she must leave at midnight. She loses her shoe, and the prince uses it to find her. They live happily ever after.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The colors of the old photo have over time.
a) grown b) faded c) brightened d) appeared
- My grandparents have lived in this house for several; more than 40 years.
a) moments b) decades c) weeks d) minutes
- The view of the Pyramids at sunset was truly
a) ordinary b) magical c) boring d) simple
- You can Kareem. He never tells lies.
a) trust b) frighten c) reach d) solve
- My father to buy me a new mobile when I succeeded.
a) promised b) asked c) wondered d) said

B Language

2 Find and correct the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- By the time we arrived, the train leave the station. (.....)
- She had went home before it started to rain. (.....)
- After he had wrote the email, he turned off his computer. (.....)
- We were tired because we had walk for hours. (.....)
- When they reached the airport, the plane had already took off. (.....)

C Writing

3 Write a story ending (90 - 100 words). Choose one.

- You met someone who changed your day completely. Write how the story ends.
- Something unexpected happened at the last moment.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hala finished her homework, and then, she went to bed. (had)

2. After Abdou had eaten lunch, he started his online class. (eating)

3. I didn't recognize Samir. He changed his hairstyle. (because)

4. Before the teacher entered, the students had cleaned the classroom. (as soon as)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Mazen are talking about stories.

Nour : What time do you go to sleep?

Mazen : I go to sleep (1)..... eight o'clock.

Nour : (2)..... you read in bed at night?

Mazen : Yes, I read for ten minutes every night.

Nour : (3)..... reading help you fall asleep faster?

Mazen : Yes, but it makes my eyes feel very tired.

Nour : Maybe we can swap تبادل books next week.

Mazen : That is a (4)..... idea, thank you.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

SB

"You met someone who changed your day completely"

MODULE 5 QUESTION BANK

on Units 9&10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should thank people who help us. The adjective of "thank" is formed by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ing b) -ive c) -ful d) -ous
2. Eman is very and always finds creative solutions to difficult problems.
a) adaptable b) disappointed c) shocked d) tired
3. His dream is to become a mechanical engineer, so he focuses on science and
a) social training b) technical training c) safety d) society
4. Please, your homework before submitting it to avoid mistakes.
a) check b) miss c) ignore d) escape
5. A is a period of ten years, often used to describe historical changes.
a) quality b) ending c) message d) decade
6. "Sweet" can mean kind; it's the antonym of ".....".
a) gentle b) cruel c) simple d) normal
7. Islam made a strong to help his friend whenever needed.
a) version b) promise c) decade d) gift
8. The moral of the story teaches us a lesson about honesty and
a) secret b) gratitude c) trap d) police
9. "Beloved" means deeply loved; its opposite is ".....".
a) admired b) shocked c) hated d) relieved
10. "....." means something which has lost its color.
a) Hopeful b) Satisfied c) Embarrassed d) Faded
11. The word "bravery" is a synonym of ".....".
a) kindness b) courage c) memory d) fear
12. After working hard all day, he felt and needed to rest.
a) found out b) worn out c) plain d) normal
13. If you accidentally break your friend's toy, you should sorry sincerely.
a) say b) sit c) thank d) face
14. "Dangerous" means risky; it's the antonym of ".....".
a) tiring b) safe c) proud d) useful
15. My best friend is very kind. The noun of "kind" is formed by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ment c) -ion d) -ant

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Aida studied very hard, so she got full marks on the test. (because)
.....
2. Yesterday, Adam felt sick because he ate too many sweet cookies. (so)
.....
3. First, Alaa finished her homework, and then she watched TV nicely. (After)
.....
4. Before the game started, the players had warmed up on the field. (By the time)
.....
5. The ice cream fell because the sun was very hot outside. (as a result)
.....
6. Ali lost his new pen, so he was very sad today. (since)
.....
7. Arwa did not go to school because she had a cold. (therefore)
.....
8. First, Akram bought the ticket, and then he entered the cinema. (Before)
.....
9. After the rain had stopped, we went out to buy food. (when)
.....
10. The car broke down; therefore, we were late for the party. (because)
.....
11. She cleaned her room because her friends were coming to visit her. (so)
.....
12. First, the rain stopped, and then the children went outside to play. (After)
.....
13. Amira had practiced a lot before she played the piano concert. (After)
.....
14. The teacher was happy because the students listened to the lesson carefully. (so)
.....
15. Adham forgot his lunch; therefore, he was very hungry at school. (because)
.....

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

motivation – proud – stress – patience – skilled

Learning a new sport can take a lot of time. You need to have (1)..... when you practice every day. My sister Sarah is a (2)..... tennis player now. She wins many big games at the club. Her (3)..... is to become the best player in the city. We are very (4)..... of her hard work and great success this year.

B)

prince – magical – magic – party – midnight

Cinderella is a famous story about a very kind and beautiful girl. One day, the king invited everyone to a big (1)..... at his large castle. A nice fairy used her (2)..... to help Cinderella go there. She danced with the (3)..... all night and was very happy. But she had to leave before (4)..... or the magic would fade. She ran away quickly and lost her glass shoe.

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Sami is asking Hadi about his dream job.

Sami : What's your dream job?

Hadi : I (1)..... to be a pilot.

Sami : (2)..... do you want to be a pilot?

Hadi : I want to fly planes.

Sami : Who inspired you?

Hadi : My (3)..... inspired me.

Sami : What (4)..... do pilots need?

Hadi : They need focus and calmness.

B) Omar found a book which had stories about old trains.

Omar : Look at this old book, Mariam.

Mariam : (1)..... did you find that book?

Omar : It was under the big bed.

Mariam : What is the book about, Omar?

Omar : It has (2)..... about old trains.

Mariam : (3)..... there pictures in the book?

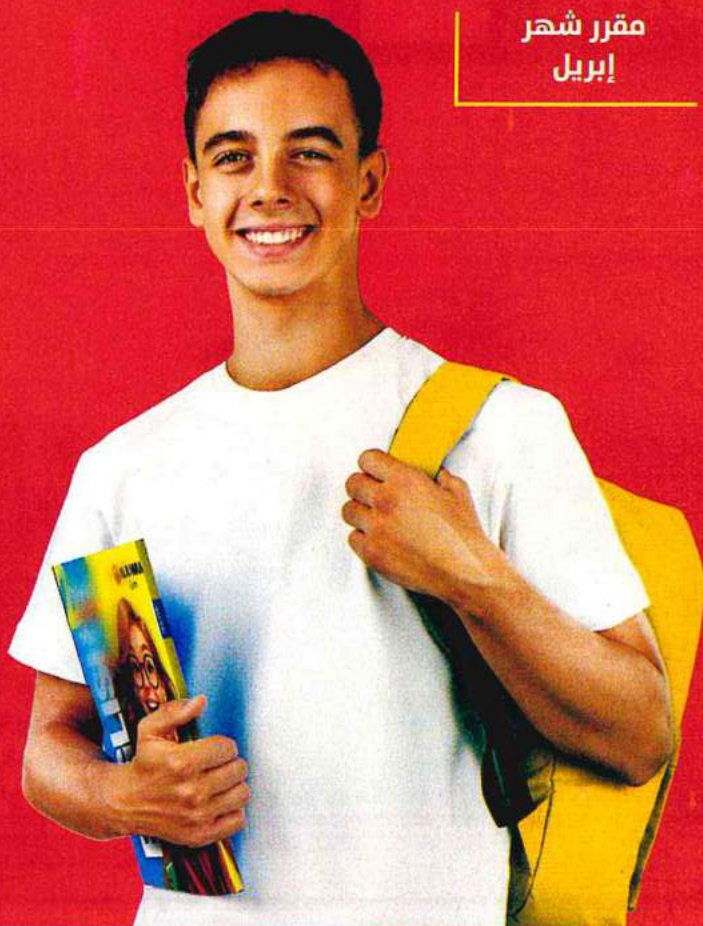
Omar : Yes, the pictures are black and white.

Mariam : Fantastic! I (4)..... reading old funny stories.

6

MODULE

مقرر شهر
إبريل



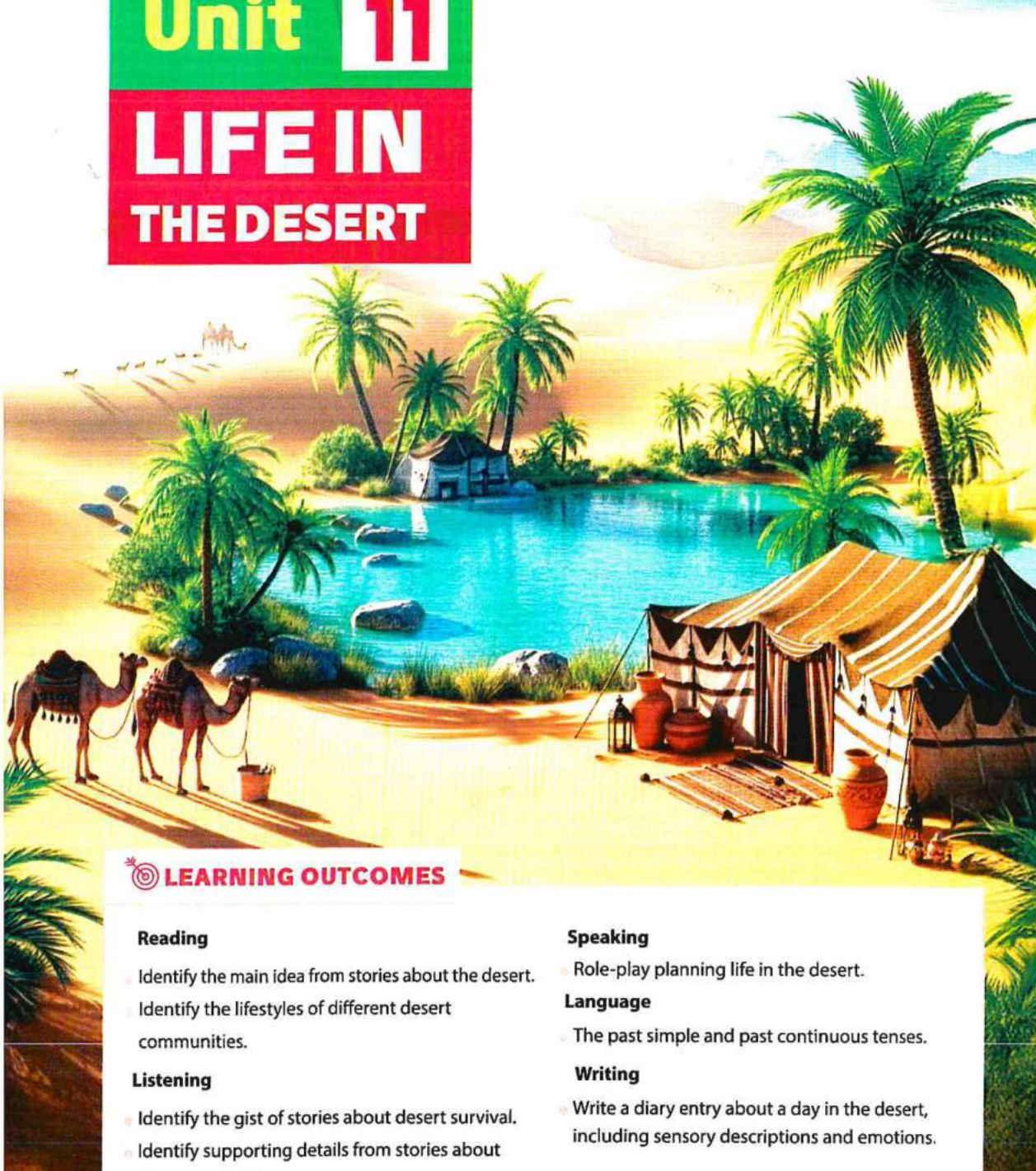
Unit 11 Life in the Desert

Unit 12 Our Incredible Earth

Module 6 Question Bank

Unit 11

LIFE IN THE DESERT



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea from stories about the desert.
- Identify the lifestyles of different desert communities.

Listening

- Identify the gist of stories about desert survival.
- Identify supporting details from stories about desert survival.

Speaking

- Role-play planning life in the desert.

Language

- The past simple and past continuous tenses.

Writing

- Write a diary entry about a day in the desert, including sensory descriptions and emotions.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

adapt (ed) (v)	يتكيف / يتأقلم مع	irrigation (n)	الري
conserve (d) (v)	يحافظ على	nomadic (adj)	بدوي/رُحَّال
grazing land (n)	أرض رعي/مراع	tribe (n)	قبيلة/عشيرة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	rainfall (n)	هطول/كمية الأمطار
beans (n)	فول	rare (adj)	نادر
Bedouin (n/adj)	بدوي/من البدو	region (n)	منطقة/إقليم
burning (adj)	حارق/محترق/مشتعل	resources (n)	موارد
condition (n)	حالة/ظرف/شرط	sand dunes (n)	كثبان رملية
grassland (n)	أرض عشبية	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي	solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية
lifestyle (n)	أسلوب/نمط حياة	source (n)	مصدر
native (n) (adj)	أصلي	squash (n)	قرع/كوسة
power (ed) (v/n)	يشغل/قوة/طاقة	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
protection (n)	حماية/وقاية	tent (n)	خيمة
provide (d) (v)	يوفر/يقدم	underground (adv)	تحت الأرض

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

adapt to	يتكيف مع	famous for	مشهور بـ
during the day	خلال النهار	lower than normal	أقل من المعدل
face challenges	يواجه التحديات	travel across	يسافر عبر

Read and complete with a word from the list:

face – for – with – conserve

- 1 We must challenges with courage.
- 2 Please, turn off the light to energy.
- 3 Italy is famous its delicious pizza and pasta.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

freezing (adj)	شديد البرودة/قارس	shelter (n)	مأوى/ملجأ
gather (ed) (v)	يجمع	signal (ed) (v/n)	إشارة/يرسل إشارة
hike (d) (v)	يتنزه سيرًا (مسافات طويلة)	survival (n)	بقاء/نجاة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

branch (n)	غصن/فرع	mile (n)	ميل (١,٦ كيلومتر)
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	mirror (n)	مرآة
cloth (n)	قمماش	properly (adj)	بشكل مناسب
damage (d) (v/n)	يتلف/يضر/ضرر	reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس
desert guide (n)	دليل صحراوي	researcher (n)	باحث
explorer (n)	مستكشف	salt lake (n)	بحيرة مالحة
flare (n)	مشعل إنقاذ/شعلة	scarf/scarves (n)	وشاح/شال/أوشحة
immediately (adv)	فورًا/حاليًا	shade (n)	ظل
light-colored (adj)	فاتح اللون	Siwa Oasis (n)	واحة سيوة
local (adj)	محلي	suddenly (adv)	فجأة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at sunset	عند غروب الشمس	signal for help	يرسل إشارة طلب مساعدة
make a fire	يشعل نارًا	suitable for	مناسب لـ
create shelter	ينشئ مأوى	take a sip	يأخذ رشفة
get lost	يتيه/يضل الطريق	wait for	ينتظر شخصًا أو شيئًا
set up camp	ينصب/يقيم مخيمًا		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

gather – shade – for – on

- 1 The tree gives us cool on sunny days.
- 2 We will all the books for the teacher.
- 3 That dress is not suitable cold weather.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
deal	يتعامل	dealt	dealt
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
shine	تسطع/تشرق	shone	shone

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
conserve	يحافظ على	save	يحفظ	waste	يهدر/يضيع
damage	يتلف/يضر	harm	يضر/ضرر	repair	يصلح
dry	جاف	waterless	بلا ماء	wet	مبلل
peaceful	مسالم/هادئ	calm/quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب
similar	مشابه/مماثل	alike	متشابه	different	مختلف
survive	ينجو	live	يعيش	die	يموت

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
irrigate (v)	يروي	-ion	تحويل إلى اسم		irrigation (n)	ري/عملية الري
protect (v)	يحمي/يقى				protection (n)	حماية/وقاية
burn (v)	يحرق	-ing	تحويل إلى صفة		burning (adj)	حارق/محترق
peace (n)	سلام	-ful			peaceful (adj)	مسالم/هادئ
explore (n)	يستكشف	-r	تحويل إلى اسم		explorer (n)	مستكشف
survive (v)	ينجو	-al			survival (n)	بقاء/نجاة
bright (adj)	مشرق	-ly	تحويل إلى حال		brightly (adv)	بسطوع/بإشراق

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We should conserve energy. The synonym of "conserve" is ".....".
a) save b) produce c) waste d) survive
- To get the noun form of "protect," we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -al c) -ion d) -ful
- My brothers look although they're not twins.
a) likely b) alike c) different d) like

Reading Text

Lesson 1

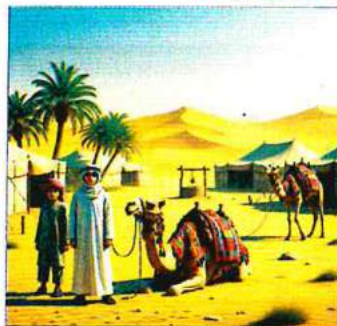
Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think life is like in the desert?
- 2 How do people find water and food in such dry places?

 Read the following text. Guess the meanings of the words in bold. **SB page 70**

Desert communities around the world have learned to **adapt to** difficult **conditions**⁽¹⁾. These amazing people live in some of the driest places on Earth, where **temperatures**⁽²⁾ are much higher during the day or much lower at night than normal.

The **Bedouin**⁽³⁾ people of the Arabian Desert are famous for their **nomadic** lifestyle. They travel across large areas of sand dunes with their camels, searching for water sources and **grazing land** for their animals. Their **traditional**⁽⁴⁾ tents provide them protection from the burning sun and **sandstorms**⁽⁵⁾.



- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| (1) ظروف | (2) درجات الحرارة |
| (3) بدوي | (4) تقليدي |
| (5) عواصف رملية | (6) مناطق صحراوية |
| (7) سقوط الأمطار | (8) بيئة |
| (9) مناظر طبيعية | |

In the American Southwest, Native American **tribes** like the Hopi built communities in **desert regions**⁽⁶⁾. They developed clever **irrigation** systems to grow corn, beans, and squash in the dry soil. These communities learned to store water underground during rare **rainfalls**⁽⁷⁾.

Modern desert towns face similar challenges. People must **conserve** water carefully and use solar energy to power their homes. Despite the difficult life there, many people choose desert life because they love the peaceful **environment**⁽⁸⁾ and beautiful **landscapes**⁽⁹⁾.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How do desert temperatures change during the day?
- 2 How do Bedouin people travel in the desert?
- 3 What crops do the Hopi people grow in the desert towns?
- 4 What do desert communities do during rainfalls?
- 5 Why do some modern people choose to live in the desert?

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening question:

- Name two animals that could survive in the desert.

Listen and answer the following questions.

SB page 72

Story 1 — Sarah (Explorer):

I was **hiking**⁽¹⁾ in the Sahara Desert when I got lost for two days. The most important thing was finding **shade**⁽²⁾ during the day. I used my jacket to create **shelter**⁽³⁾ under a rock. At night, it became freezing cold, so I gathered dry **branches**⁽⁴⁾ to make a small fire. I conserved my water by taking tiny **sips**⁽⁵⁾ every hour.



Story 2 — Ahmed (Desert Guide):

As a guide, I teach tourists about desert safety. Last month, our jeep **broke down**⁽⁶⁾ 50 miles from town. We stayed calm and signaled for help using mirrors to reflect sunlight. We shared our water equally among the group and covered ourselves with light-colored clothing to stay cool.

(1) انزله مشينا

(2) ظل

(3) ملجأ

(4) فروع

(5) رشقات

(6) تعطلت

(7) في الحال

(8) معدات

Story 3 — Mariam (Researcher):

While studying desert plants, a sandstorm suddenly hit our camp. We **immediately**⁽⁷⁾ went inside our tent and waited for six hours until it passed. The sand was everywhere! We used a wet cloth over our faces to breathe correctly and checked our **equipment**⁽⁸⁾ for damage afterward.

Post-listening questions:

SB

1 What did Sarah use to make a small fire?

2 What did Ahmed teach tourists about?

3 What happened while Mariam was studying desert plants?

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

adapt to يتكيف/يتأقلم مع	to change to fit new environment
conserve يحافظ على	to save or protect something, especially nature or resources
grazing land أرض رعي/مراع	area of land, including grasslands and forests, used by animals to eat plants
irrigation رى	bringing water to land or crops محاصيل to help them grow
nomadic بدوي/رخال	moving from place to place, not staying in one home
tribes قبائل/عشائر	groups of people living together with shared culture ثقافة مشتركة

1 adapt to + v+ing/noun

يتأقلم مع

- Desert communities have learned to **adapt to** difficult **conditions**.
- Some animals can **adapt to living** in the desert.

2 despite + v+ing/noun

بالرغم من

- Despite** the difficult **life** there, many people choose desert life.

3 by + v+ing

بواسطة

- We can decrease **pollution** **by** planting more trees.

4 as + a/an + وظيفة

كونه/ ك.....

- As** a guide, I teach tourists about desert safety.

5 Important places

أماكن هامة

the American Southwest

جنوب غرب أمريكا

the Arabian Desert

الصحراء العربية

the Sahara Desert

الصحراء الكبرى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many desert animals survive by to extreme temperatures.
a) adapt b) adapting c) adapted d) adapts
- the difficult life in the desert, some families still build homes there.
a) Despite b) With c) Plus d) As
- People travel across the Sahara on camels.
a) Oasis b) Desert c) River d) Sea

LESSON

7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Bedouin people have a lifestyle because they move from place to place.
a) peaceful b) nomadic c) burning d) modern
- Scientists believe that in the Arabian Desert is low.
a) dryness b) rainfall c) rock d) sand
- Many desert animals survive by staying during the hottest part of the day.
a) above b) noisy c) underground d) calm
- Ancient often lived in small groups and depended on nature.
a) tribes b) pharaohs c) enemies d) children
- Our village is peaceful. The synonym of "peaceful" is ".....".
a) noisy b) rare c) calm d) high
- The old irrigation system was damaged, so the crops became very and brown.
a) dry b) wet c) tall d) new
- When you're camping in the desert, you should conserve water. The opposite of "conserve" is
a) waste b) wet c) similar d) keep
- Be careful not to burn your hand on the hot pan. To form the adjective of the word "burn", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -ing c) -ed d) -er
- It's to see snow in this city because the weather is usually hot.
a) quiet b) usual c) soft d) rare
- means an area of land used by animals to eat grass and plants.
a) Sandstorm b) Grazing land c) Solar energy d) Lifestyle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

landscape – adapt – waste – conserve – during

Deserts are extreme places with very hot and cold weather. Animals and people must (1) to living in these hard conditions. The temperature is very high (2) the day but drops at night. Sometimes dust blows hard everywhere in the air. People there must (3) water because rain is very rare in these dry regions. Living there can be difficult, but the (4) is also very beautiful to see.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is the state of continuing to live, especially in difficult or dangerous conditions.
a) Journey b) Survival c) Signal d) Degree
2. Some people prefer living in the city where it's noisy, but I prefer the countryside.
a) calm b) heavy c) peace d) strong
3. Water freezes in the fridge. We form the adjective of "freeze" by deleting "e" and adding the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -al c) -ing d) -ly
4. If you are lost in the desert, you should for help using a flare or mirror.
a) sign b) signal c) hike d) gather
5. Some animals survive in the desert. The synonym of "survive" is
a) live b) keep c) harm d) die
6. They went to the forest to wood for the fire.
a) gather b) burn c) throw d) waste
7. A skilled helped the group travel safely through the Sahara Desert.
a) tourist b) researcher c) desert guide d) inventor
8. They had to gather dry wood and leaves to a fire before sunset.
a) breathe b) rest c) reflect d) make
9. It is important to stay in the during midday to avoid the strong sunlight.
a) flare b) shade c) mirror d) scarf
10. After running, he stopped to take from his water bottle.
a) a walk b) a sip c) a seat d) a break

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gather – shelter – built – suddenly – freezing

Last week, my class went on a long trip to the empty desert. The sun was very hot, but the weather changed (1)..... in the late afternoon. It became (2)..... cold, so we needed to stay very warm. We helped our teacher (3)..... dry wood to make a big fire. Then, we (4)..... a strong shelter to sleep inside for the night. We were very happy when the sun came up the next morning.

The Past Simple and Past Continuous الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Yesterday, Hana (was/were) walking to the park. She (saw/see) a small puppy near the gate. The puppy (was/were) shaking because it (was/is) cold. While Hana (was/were) talking to the puppy, it (ran/run) happily around her. She (picked/pick) it up and (was/were) looking for its owner.

1

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the past simple tense to express:

1. Actions that started and ended in the past

e.g. We **watched** TV last night.

2. Sequences of events

e.g. He **got up**, **opened** the door, and **left**.

يستخدم الماضي البسيط ليعبر عن:

أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي

تسلسل الأحداث

Affirmative

الإثبات

Subject فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

- الأفعال المنتظمة (regular) يضاف (ed أو d أو ied).

e.g. • The small boy **climbed** the tree yesterday.

• My grandparents **lived** in the countryside years ago.

- التصريف الثاني للأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular) يحفظ كما هو.

e.g. I **ran** to school yesterday because I **was** late.

Negative

النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. My mom **didn't cook** yesterday because she was sick.

صفة/اسم/حرف جر + wasn't/weren't + Subject فاعل

e.g. • Ali **wasn't** at school last week.

• The girls **weren't** happy yesterday.

Keywords

الكلمات الدالة

yesterday أمس /last + (وقت) الماضي/المدة + ago منذ /in + أولاً /first سنة ماضية +

then ثم /after that /when بعد ذلك

Usage

الاستخدام

We use the past continuous tense to express:

يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن:

1. Actions in progress and background situations.

١- الأحداث التي كانت مستمرة، في وقت محدد في الماضي.

We **were playing** football yesterday evening.

2. An action that was ongoing in the past when it was interrupted by another event in the past. (Here we use the simple past with it.)

٢- حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر في الماضي. (وهنا نستخدم الماضي البسيط معه).

While I **was sleeping**, my uncle visited us.

3. Two actions that continued at the same time in the past.

٣- حدثين استمرّا في الوقت نفسه في الماضي.

While she **was cooking** dinner, her kids **were watching** TV.

Form
التكوين

Affirmative الإثبات

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **was** + (inf. + ing)

e.g. Kareem **was playing** football all day yesterday.

We, You, They, اسم جمع + **were** + (inf. + ing)

e.g. Dina and Hossam **were playing** tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Negative النفي

I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **wasn't** + (inf. + ing)

e.g. I **wasn't sleeping** last Friday evening.

We, You, They, اسم جمع + **weren't** + (inf. + ing)

e.g. My parents **weren't watching** the film.

Question
السؤالYes/No question
السؤال بمعنى هل

Was + (he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + (inf. + ing)?

e.g. A: **Was** Aya **sleeping** yesterday afternoon?

B: Yes, she was. / B: No, she wasn't.

Were + (we, you, they, اسم جمع) + (inf. + ing)?

e.g. A: **Were** you **watching** TV?

B: Yes, I was. / B: No, I wasn't.

Wh- question
السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + **was** + (he, she, it, اسم مفرد) + (inf. + ing)?

e.g. Where **was** Ali **going** yesterday evening?

Q. Word + **were** + (we, you, they, اسم جمع) + (inf. + ing)?

e.g. What **were** they **doing** at 5:00 p.m. yesterday?

Conjunctions

يمكن الربط بين الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر باستخدام الروابط التالية:

عندما - When - بينما/أثناء While/As

1. **While/As + past continuous , past simple**
e.g. • While I was reading a book, the phone rang.
2. **Past simple + while/as + past continuous**
e.g. • Grandfather arrived while Mum was cooking.
3. **When + past simple , past continuous**
e.g. • When it rained, I was cycling to school.
4. **Past continuous + when + past simple**
e.g. • My father was watching TV when the light went out.

لاحظ

١- إذا لم يتبع While فاعل فيأتي الفعل بعدها (inf. + ing) بشرط أن يكون الفاعل واحدًا في الجملتين.

1. **While + inf. + ing , past simple**
e.g. • While returning home, I met my old friend, Rami.

٢- للتعبير عن حدثين مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي دون أن يقطع أحدهما الآخر (لم يؤثر أحدهما على الآخر)

2. **While/As + past continuous , past continuous**
e.g. • While/As my mum was cooking, I was cleaning the house.

Got it ?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Sarah was reading a funny story when her mother called her. (While)
- يتم البدء بكلمة (While) ثم كتابة جملة الماضي المستمر وبعدها جملة الماضي البسيط مع حذف (when).
- While Sarah was reading a funny story, her mother called her.
- 2 While Mariam was walking to school, she saw a little cat. (when)
- يتم البدء بجملة الماضي المستمر وبعدها نكتب كلمة (when) ثم كتابة جملة الماضي البسيط مع حذف (While).
- Mariam was walking to school when she saw a little cat.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- While I my homework last night, the lights went out.
a) did b) am doing c) do d) was doing
- Samir his bike to school yesterday.
a) rides b) was riding c) rode d) has ridden
- My sister TV when I called her at 8 p.m.
a) watches b) watched c) was watching d) is watching
- They the museum in 2022 during their summer trip.
a) visit b) visited c) were visiting d) have visited
- While the children were playing outside, it suddenly to rain.
a) started b) was starting c) starts d) started

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- They played football in the park last Saturday. (at 4 p.m. yesterday)
.....
- I saw a plane. I was looking at the sky. (While)
.....
- The lights went out. We were having dinner. (When)
.....
- Nada cleaned her room last Sunday. (yesterday evening)
.....
- My sister called me. I was taking a shower. (when)
.....
- The car stopped suddenly. We were driving to Tanta. (while)
.....
- My cousin traveled to Cairo. I was working in Alexandria. (when)
.....
- The smoke appeared. They were gathering wood. (while)
.....
- They waited for the rescue team فريق الإنقاذ. (all yesterday morning)
.....
- Omar was reading a magazine when his father came. (while)
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- you reading a book when the phone rang last night?
a) Did b) Were c) Do d) Was
- I my keys on the table two hours ago.
a) leave b) left c) was leaving d) have left
- As we across the desert, we saw a rare bird.
a) walk b) walked c) are walking d) were walking
- When the teacher entered, the students loudly.
a) talk b) were talking c) was walking d) are talking
- Nada didn't hear the phone because she at that time.
a) sleeps b) slept c) was sleeping d) has slept

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Huda read a book last night. (from 7 to 9 p.m.)
.....
- We visited Luxor in 2023. (ago)
.....
- The children played outside. It started to rain. (when)
.....
- The hikers got lost. They were walking in the mountains. (while)
.....
- The light went out. We were sleeping. (While)
.....
- While Seif was riding his bike, he dropped his pen. (When)
.....
- We were waiting for the bus when we saw an accident. (While)
.....
- My uncle visited us. We were having dinner. (when)
.....
- My brother watched a movie. I cooked dinner. (while)
.....
- Hamza repaired his tent last night. (at 9 p.m.)
.....

لحل المزيد من التدرّيات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Imagining moving to the desert تخيل الانتقال إلى الصحراء



online



If you had to live in the desert, would you choose the Bedouin, Hopi, or modern lifestyle? لو اضطررت للعيش في الصحراء، هل ستختار أسلوب حياة البدو أم الهوبي أم الحياة العصرية؟

I'd choose the Hopi lifestyle.

سأختار أسلوب حياة الهوبي.



Why did you choose this lifestyle?

لماذا اخترت هذا الأسلوب من الحياة؟

Because I love growing food and storing water underground.

لأنني أحب زراعة الطعام وتخزين الماء تحت الأرض.



What will you do every day?

ماذا ستفعل كل يوم؟

I will watch the sunrise and explore the desert.

سأراقب شروق الشمس وأستكشف الصحراء.



How will you survive the heat, cold, or sandstorms?

كيف ستتجو من الحرارة أو البرد أو العواصف الرملية؟

I will wear the right clothes and stay inside during storms.

سأرتدي الملابس المناسبة، وأبقى بالداخل أثناء العواصف.



What will you enjoy most?

ما الذي ستستمتع به أكثر من غيره؟

I'll enjoy the quiet, the stars, and simple, happy days.

سأستمتع بالهدوء، والنجوم، والأيام البسيطة السعيدة.



Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Adam is asking Sarah about living in the desert.

Adam : Do you think living in the desert is fun?

Sarah : Yes, I (1)..... it would be very exciting there.

Adam : What (2)..... of animals would we see in the desert?

Sarah : We might see camels.

Adam : (3)..... it very hot in the desert?

Sarah : Yes, it is hot in the day but cold at night.

Adam : I want to sleep in a big (4)..... outside.

Sarah : That sounds like a great adventure.



How to write about "Desert life"

كيفية الكتابة عن «الحياة الصحراوية»

1

Survival

الصمود/البقاء

- In order to survive, desert animals save water.
- They look for food at night when it is cool.

2

Adaptations

التكيف/التأقلم

- They adapt by having special bodies.
- Some animals have long legs or thick skin.

3

Dealing with heat

التعامل مع الحرارة

- One way to deal with the heat is to stay in the shade.
- Many animals hide under rocks or sand.

Desert life

الحياة الصحراوية

4

Environment

البيئة

- Unlike other environments, the desert is very dry.
- There is little rain and very hot days.

5

Examples

أمثلة

- A good example is the camel.
- Camels store fat in their humps and drink little water.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Desert life"

Desert life is difficult because the land is dry and the sun is very hot. In order to survive, animals and plants must save water. Unlike other environments, the desert gets very little rain. Many animals have adapted by changing their bodies. Some have long legs, and others have thick skin to protect them from the heat. One way to deal with the heat is to move at night when the air is cooler. A good example is the camel, which can live for many days without water. These special adaptations help desert life continue.



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hassan lives in a in the desert.
a) house b) village c) hotel d) flat
- He drinks for breakfast.
a) tea b) juice c) milk d) water

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What animals does Hassan's family have?
.....
- Where do they get their water from?
.....
- What is the weather like at night?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Be careful, the stove can burn you. Add the suffix "....." to "burn" to change it into an adjective.
a) -ly b) -ion c) -ness d) -ing
- The garden was so peaceful that I could hear birds singing. "....." is a synonym for peaceful.
a) Quiet b) Noisy c) Dry d) Survive
- The Bedouins are a tribe that moves across the Arabian Desert.
a) modern b) local c) peaceful d) nomadic
- Scientists data to learn how plants conserve water in dry places.
a) gather b) survive c) power d) provide

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

crops – sandstorm – irrigation – peaceful – soil

Some people can grow good food in dry places. The Hopi people are farmers. They live in the American Southwest. They use a special (1) system to bring water to their dry plants. They grow (2) like corn and beans for their families to eat. The (3) is very dry, but they know how to make plants grow well there. They are (4) people who respect the land and its resources.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Adel wrote a letter to his friend last night. (at 8 p.m. last night)
.....
2. The wind blew strongly. We were setting up the tent. (while)
.....
3. I saw a camel. I was walking near the dunes. (when)
.....
4. Salma missed the bus. She was talking to her friend. (when)
.....

5 Complete the following dialog:

Samira is asking Yusuf about plants in the desert.

Samira : Do plants grow in the desert?

Yusuf : Yes, there (1)..... some grasses

Samira : (2)..... do these plants get water?

Yusuf : They get water from rain.

Samira : (3)..... flowers grow in the sand?

Yusuf : Yes, they do. After rain, they grow.

Samira : Can people use desert plants?

Yusuf : Yes, they (4)..... them for food, shade, and medicine.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Life in the desert"

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Last night, it rained heavily while we were sleeping in bed. (when)
.....
2. Salma was eating snacks. Her sister was playing computer games. (While)
.....
3. He fell asleep during the movie. (while)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

adaptation (n)	تكيف/تأقلم	ecosystem (n)	نظام بيئي
amazing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	harsh (adj)	قاسٍ/شديد
balance (d) (v/n)	يوازن/توازن	unique (adj)	فريد/مميز

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

aloe vera (n)	صبار الأنوفيرا	heat (n)	حرارة
behavior (n)	سلوك/تصرف	hump (n)	سنام الجمل
cactus (n)	صبار	leaves (n)	أوراق الأشجار
creative (adj)	مبدع	lizard (n)	سحلية
date palm (n)	نخلة	release (d) (v)	يطلق/يحرر
dryness (n)	جفاف	root (n)	جذر
equal (adj)	متساوٍ	situation (n)	موقف
extreme (adj)	شديد/قاسٍ	stem (n)	ساق/جذع
fair (adj)	عادل/منصف	thick (adj)	سميك / كثيف
fat (n)	دهون	waxy (adj)	شمعي
fennec fox (n)	ثعلب الفنك	wildlife (n)	حياة برية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

dry up	يجف/ينشف	keep cool	يحافظ على برودته
give shade	يمنح/يوفر الظل	provide ... for	يوفر ... لـ
store water	يخزن الماء	stop from	يمنع من/يوقف عن

Read and complete with a word from the list:

keep – creative – stop – harsh

- 1 My sister is very and loves to draw.
- 2 The desert sun can be very in the afternoon.
- 3 Drink water to cool on a hot day.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
hide يخفي/يختبئ	hid	hidden
give يعطي	gave	given

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
amazing	مذهل	surprising/wonderful	مدهش/رائع	unamazing	غير مذهل
harsh	قاسٍ/شديد	difficult/tough	صعب/قاسٍ	gentle	لطيف
unique	فريد/مميز	special	مميز/خاص	common/familiar	شائع/مألوف
dark	ظلام/داكن	dim	معتم	bright/light	لامع/فاتح
empty	فارغ/خاوٍ	blank	فارغ	full	ممتلئ
equal	متساوٍ	fair	عادل	unequal	غير متساوٍ
thick	سميك/كثيف	dense	سميك	thin	رفيع

Prefixes and Suffixes

البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefixes/Suffixes	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
adapt (v)	يتكيف/يتأقلم	-ation	تحويل إلى اسم	adaptation (n)	تكيف/تأقلم
dry (adj)	جاف	-ness		dryness (n)	جفاف
create (v)	يبدع	-ive	تحويل إلى صفة	creative (adj)	مبدع
wax (n)	شمع	-y		waxy (adj)	شمعي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When the sun went down, everything became very dark and
a) fair b) dim c) bright d) light
- She opened the box, but it was completely empty. It wasn't
a) full b) empty c) blank d) equal
- Each person has a personality that makes them special.
a) boring b) unique c) similar d) usual
- Artists use different materials to create beautiful works of art. To turn the verb "create" into an adjective, we delete 'e' and add the suffix ".....".
a) -ation b) -ness c) -ive d) -y

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think animals need to survive in very cold places?
- 2 Can you name an animal that lives in the snow or ice? How does it stay warm?

 Read the following text. What animals do you think can live in very hot and dry deserts?

SB Page 75

Deserts may look empty, but they are full of amazing life. Animals and plants here **survive**⁽¹⁾ in extreme heat and **dryness**⁽²⁾. Each creature has special **adaptations**⁽³⁾ to help it live where water is rare and the sun is strong. Desert wildlife shows how nature can be both **tough**⁽⁴⁾ and beautiful.

Many desert animals are active only at night. The fennec fox, with its large ears, keeps cool while hunting in the dark because its large ears release heat from the fox's body. Camels store fat in their humps for long journeys, while lizards hide under rocks during the day. These **unique behaviors**⁽⁵⁾ help them survive in **harsh conditions**⁽⁶⁾.

Plants in the desert have special ways to live with little water. Some, like the cactus and aloe vera, have **thick stems**⁽⁷⁾ that store water. Others, like the date palm, have deep **roots**⁽⁸⁾ or small waxy leaves to stop water from drying up in the hot sun.

Plants and animals also work together in the desert. Some birds eat insects that harm plants, and some plants give animals food or shade. Every living thing plays an important role in this **ecosystem**⁽⁹⁾. Desert wildlife teaches us to be strong, creative, and to live in balance with nature.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How do desert animals survive in the heat?
- 2 Why are adaptations important for desert life?
- 3 What do plants and animals provide for each other?
- 4 What can we learn from desert wildlife?



(1) يَصُوم/يَبْقَى

(2) جفاف

(3) التكيف/التأقلم

(4) شديد/قاس

(5) سلوكيات فريدة

(6) ظروف قاسية

(7) سيقان كثيفة

(8) جذور

(9) نظام بيئي

Notes on Reading

Definitions التعريفات

adaptation	تكيف/تأقلم	changes that help living things survive
amazing	مذهل/مدهش	very surprising ⁽¹⁾ or wonderful
balance	توازن	an equal or fair situation
harsh	قاسٍ/شديد	difficult and tough ⁽²⁾
unique	فريد/مميز	one of a kind; special ⁽³⁾

(1) مدهش

(2) صعب

(3) خاص

1 look + adj.

يبدو

- Deserts may **look empty**, but they are full of amazing life.

2 help + inf./ to + inf.

يساعد

- Each creature has special adaptations to **help it live/to live**.

3 with

ذو/لديه

- The fennec fox, **with** its large ears, keeps cool while hunting.

4 way to + inf.

طريقة لكي

- Plants in the desert have special **ways to live** with little water.

5 teach + object + to + inf.

يُعلم

- Desert wildlife **teaches us to be** strong and creative.

6 cactus صبار (واحد) مفرد cacti عدة نباتات صبار (جمع)

- The garden has one tall **cactus**.
- There are many types of **cacti** in the garden.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Scientists study desert plants to find new ways food in dry areas.
a) grows b) growing c) to grow d) grow
- We have a large house a big garden.
a) in b) on c) with d) at
- The fennec fox's large ears help it cool in the hot desert.
a) stay b) staying c) stayed d) to stayed
- Good teachers always teach their students the truth.
a) tell b) to tell c) telling d) told



How living things adapt to desert life كيف تتكيف الكائنات الحية مع الحياة الصحراوية



online



How do animals survive in the desert?

كيف تتجو الحيوانات في الصحراء؟

They hide in the shade and sleep during the day.

تختبئ في الظل، وتنام نهاراً.



What special features do plants have to live in the desert?

ما السمات الخاصة التي تمتلكها النباتات للعيش في الصحراء؟

They store water, have deep roots, and small leaves.

تخزن الماء، ولها جذور عميقة، وأوراق صغيرة.



How do people adapt to desert conditions?

كيف يتكيف الناس مع ظروف الصحراء؟

They wear light clothes and drink lots of water.

يرتدون ملابس خفيفة، ويشربون الكثير من الماء.



What modern technologies help humans live more comfortably in deserts today?

ما التقنيات الحديثة التي تساعد البشر على العيش بشكل أكثر راحة في الصحراء اليوم؟

New irrigation systems.

أنظمة الري الجديدة.



Do you think it's possible to make deserts more suitable for living in the future? How?

هل تعتقد أنه من الممكن جعل الصحراء أكثر ملاءمة للعيش في المستقبل؟ كيف؟

Yes, by using solar energy and saving water.

نعم، باستخدام الطاقة الشمسية، وتوفير الماء.



Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Adam wants to know how camels adapt to the desert.

Adam : Do you know how camels live in the hot desert?

Aida : Yes, camels (1)..... fat Wrong information.

Adam : (2)..... do they walk on sand?

Aida : They have big feet to walk on sand.

Adam : How (3)..... their feet useful?

Aida : Their feet stop them from sinking into the sand.

Adam : How long can they stay without drinking water?

Aida : They can stay (4)..... 14 days.

How to write about "Adaptations to the desert"

كيفية الكتابة عن «التكيف مع الصحراء»

1 Weather الطقس

- The desert is very hot in the day.
- It is very cold at night.
- There is very little rain.

2 Plants النباتات

- Cactus has spines, not leaves.
- Spines الشوك protect the plant from animals.
- Deep roots find water underground.

Adaptations to the desert

التكيف مع الصحراء

3 Animals الحيوانات

- The camel stores fat in its hump.
- The camel can go many days without water.
- The fennec fox has big ears to stay cool.
- Some animals sleep during the day and come out at night.

4 People الناس

- They wear light, loose clothes.
- They drink plenty of water.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Adaptations to the desert"

The desert is a very hot and dry place, so living things need special adaptations to survive. Many plants, like the cactus, store water in their thick stems and use sharp spines for protection. Their long roots help them find water deep in the ground. Animals also have helpful adaptations. Camels can live for many days without water because they keep fat in their humps. The fennec fox has big ears that help it stay cool in the heat. People who live in the desert wear light clothes and drink a lot of water. These adaptations help everything survive.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The desert may seem hard, but it has an amazing full of unique creatures.
a) stem b) hump c) ecosystem d) insect
- The date palm has a skin to reduce water loss in extreme heat.
a) shiny b) waxy c) light d) bright
- The fennec fox uses its large ears to cool during the hot desert days.
a) give b) keep c) stop d) provide
- Changes that help living things survive mean ".....".
a) condition b) balance c) unique d) adaptation
- The synonym of "harsh" in the sentence "Desert conditions are harsh" is ".....".
a) fair b) equal c) creative d) tough
- Many animals try to adapt to the hard life. To form the noun from "adapt," we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ive b) -y c) -tion d) -ation
- Please, throw this bottle away; it's completely empty. The antonym of "empty" is ".....".
a) thick b) full c) deep d) dark
- The police will the suspect المشتبه فيه after questioning him.
a) harm b) release c) balance d) hide
- The word "unique" means something that is very special and not
a) amazing b) creative c) common d) harsh
- The lizard under a rock to escape the midday sun.
a) provided b) hid c) showed d) flew

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

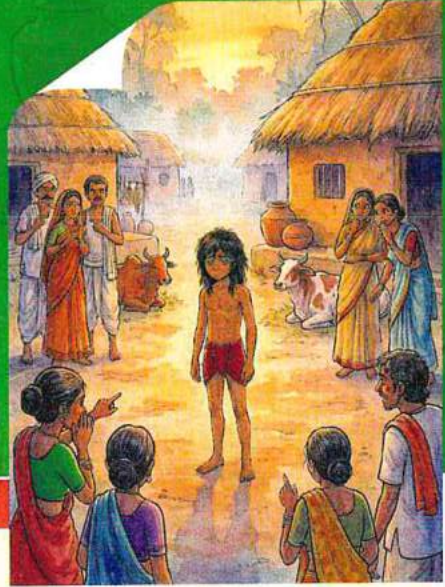
survive – thick – heat – ecosystem – fox

The desert is a very hot place for many animals. They need special ways to live in the extreme (1) The small fennec (2) lives in the sand dunes. It has very large ears to help it stay cool. It has (3) fur to keep it warm during cold nights. The fennec fox eats plants and insects to (4) They live happily in their sandy homes.

5

Chapter Five:

Mowgli in the Human Village



Chapter (5) in points:

الفصل الخامس في نقاط

1 Mowgli entered a human village for the first time.

دخل ماوكللي قرية البشر لأول مرة.

2 The villagers were surprised by his wild appearance.

تفاجأ أهل القرية من مظهره الذي يشبه الحيوانات.

3 They gave him food, clothes, and a place to stay.

أعطوه الطعام والملابس ومكانا للعيش.

4 Mowgli tried to learn human language and customs.

حاول ماوكللي تعلم لغة البشر وعاداتهم.

5 Some villagers feared him and thought he was dangerous.

خاف منه بعض الناس وظنوا أنه خطير.

6 Others tried to control him, which made him feel trapped.

حاول آخرون السيطرة عليه، مما جعله يشعر بأنه مقيد.

7 He cared for the cattle and learned about fire and tools.

اعتنى بالماشية وتعلم عن النار والأدوات.

8 He felt lonely and missed the jungle and his animal friends.

شعر بالوحدة واشتاق للغابة وأصدقائه الحيوانات.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

accustomed (adj)	معتاد/مألوف	isolated (adj)	معزول/منفصل
cursed (adj)	مسحور/مطروود	long (for) (ed) (v)	يتوق إلى/يشتاق لـ
doubt (ed) (v)	يشك في	predator (n)	حيوان مفترس
identity (n)	هوية	trapped (adj)	محاصر/عالق

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

cattle (n)	ماشية/أنعام	honesty (n)	أمانة/صدق
challenge (n)	تحذ/مواجهة	hunt (ed) (v)	يصطاد
clothing (n)	ملابس	rejection (n)	رفض/نبذ
completely (adv)	تماما/كلياً	shape (d) (v)	يشكل/يكوّن
control (ed) (v)	يسيطر على/يتحكم في	strange (adj)	غريب
custom (n)	عادة عامة	treat (ed) (v)	يعامل/يعالج
enchanted (adj)	مسحور/مفتون	truly (adv)	حقاً/فعلاً
freedom (n)	حرية	villagers (n)	القرويون/أهالي القرية
half wild (adj)	شبه برى/نصف برى	whisper (ed) (v)	يهمس

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the end	في النهاية/في الختام	once more	مرة أخرى/من جديد
caught between	عالق بين/محاصر بين	protect ... from	يحمي ... من
different from	مختلف عن	surprised by	متفاجئ من
for a time	لفترة/لوقت ما	take care of	يعتني/يهتم بـ

Definitions

التعريفات

accustomed	معتاد/مألوف	being used to something
cursed	مسحور/مطروود	being enchanted ⁽¹⁾
doubted	لا يثق/يفقد الثقة	feel uncertain ⁽²⁾ about
predators	حيوانات مفترسة	animals that hunt, kill, and eat other animals
trapped	عالق/محاصر	being unable to escape

(1) مسحور

(2) غير متأكد

Pre-reading question

- How do you think Mowgli will feel when he lives as a human after growing up in the village?

 Read the following text. What kind of identity problem is Mowgli facing?

SB page 77

Chapter Five: Mowgli in the Human Village

Mowgli entered the nearby human village. At first, the people were surprised by the strange boy who seemed **half wild**⁽¹⁾. They gave him food, clothing, and a place to stay. For a time, he tried to live as they did, learning their speech and **customs**⁽²⁾.

What did the villagers give Mowgli when he first arrived?

Yet Mowgli found life among humans difficult. Many villagers doubted him, **whispering**⁽³⁾ that he was dangerous or cursed. Others tried to control him, telling him what to do and where to go. **Accustomed to**⁽⁴⁾ the freedom of the jungle, Mowgli felt **trapped**⁽⁵⁾.

Why did Mowgli feel trapped in the village?

Still, he discovered some **values**⁽⁶⁾ in human life. He cared for the village's cattle, protecting them from predators. He also learned more about fire and tools, seeing how humans used them to shape their environment. Yet in his **heart**⁽⁷⁾, he longed for the open **forest**⁽⁸⁾, the voices of Baloo and Bagheera, and the simple **honesty**⁽⁹⁾ of the law of the **jungle**⁽¹⁰⁾.

What good things did Mowgli learn from the villagers, and what did he still miss?

Caught between **doubt**⁽¹¹⁾ from men and **rejection**⁽¹²⁾ from wolves, Mowgli felt isolated once more. His greatest challenge was no longer Shere Khan.

What big question did Mowgli ask himself at the end of this chapter?

(1) نصف بری

(2) عادات

(3) همس

(4) معتاد علی

(5) عالق/محاصر

(6) قيم

(7) قلب

(8) غابة

(9) أمانة

(10) غايه/أدغال

(11) شك

(12) رفض

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

- 1. Where did Mowgli go after leaving the jungle?** أين ذهب ماوكلى بعد أن غادر الغابة؟
 • He went to a human village.
- 2. What did the villagers give Mowgli at first?** ماذا أعطاه أهل القرية فى البداية؟
 • They gave him food, clothes, and a place to sleep.
- 3. Did Mowgli like being told what to do?** هل أعجب ماوكلى أن يُقال له ما يفعل؟
 • No, he did not like it. He was used to the freedom of the jungle.
- 4. What did Mowgli do to help the villagers?** ماذا فعل ماوكلى لمساعدة أهل القرية؟
 • He protected their cows and goats from wild animals.
- 5. What did Mowgli miss most about the jungle?** ما الذى فقده ماوكلى أكثر من الغابة؟
 • He missed Baloo, Bagheera, and the freedom of the forest.

Critical thinking questions:

- 1. Why did some villagers think Mowgli was dangerous?** لماذا ظن بعض أهل القرية أن ماوكلى خطير؟
 • Because he looked wild and didn't know their rules. They were afraid of what they didn't understand.
- 2. Was it fair for the villagers to control Mowgli? Why?** هل كان من العدل أن يسيطر أهل القرية على ماوكلى؟ لماذا؟
 • No, it wasn't fair. He just came from a different life. He needed kindness, not control.
- 3. Why did Mowgli feel lonely even when people gave him food and clothes?** لماذا شعر ماوكلى بالوحدة حتى عندما أعطوه طعاماً وملابس؟
 • Because he didn't feel loved or understood. He missed his animal friends and the jungle's rules.
- 4. Do you think Mowgli is a boy of the jungle or a boy of the village? Why?** هل تعتقد أن ماوكلى فتى الغابة أم فتى القرية؟ لماذا؟
 • He is a boy of the jungle. His heart belongs there, even if he lives in the village.
- 5. If you were Mowgli, would you stay in the village or go back to the jungle? Why?** إذا كنت ماوكلى، هل ستبقى فى القرية أم تعود إلى الغابة؟ لماذا؟
 • I would go back to the jungle. I would miss my friends Baloo and Bagheera, and I would feel free there.

Chapter 5 Exercises

1 Read and match the words to their meanings:

A

1. doubted
2. cursed
3. accustomed
4. predators
5. trapped

B

- a) being used to something
- b) animals that hunt, kill, and eat other animals
- c) feel uncertain about
- d) being enchanted
- e) being unable to escape

2 Read and put (T) True or (F) False:

1. The villagers welcomed Mowgli at first. (.....)
2. Everyone in the village trusted and respected Mowgli. (.....)
3. Mowgli worked by taking care of the village's cattle. (.....)
4. Mowgli was completely happy living among the humans. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What new things did Mowgli learn from the humans?
.....
2. How did some villagers treat Mowgli?
.....
3. What question did Mowgli begin to ask himself at the end?
.....
4. Why did some villagers think Mowgli was cursed?
.....
5. Why did Mowgli feel trapped?
.....

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. How can people live peacefully even when they are different from others?
.....
2. Why do you think Mowgli felt isolated?
.....

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mowgli entered the village, but the villagers were surprised by his appearance.
a) peaceful b) half-wild c) cool d) honest
- For a time, Mowgli tried to take care of the cattle and human customs.
a) doubt b) enter c) respect d) hunt
- Many villagers whispered that Mowgli was dangerous or even
a) trapped b) cursed c) accustomed d) creative
- Used to jungle freedom, Mowgli felt in the village with its walls and rules.
a) trapped b) welcomed c) quiet d) praised
- He longed for the open forest and the of the law of the jungle.
a) challenge b) honesty c) predator d) injustice

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Mowgli was accustomed to human life and quickly felt at home in the village. (.....)
- Some villagers tried to control Mowgli and tell him what to do. (.....)
- Mowgli protected the cattle from predators. (.....)
- The villagers welcomed him forever and treated him like one of their own. (.....)
- Mowgli felt caught between the world of humans and the world of animals. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why did Mowgli feel trapped in the human village?
.....
- How did Mowgli try to protect the village and fit in **يتأقلم**?
.....
- What did Mowgli long for while living among humans?
.....
- Why was Mowgli isolated even though he lived among people?
.....
- Why do you think the villagers doubted Mowgli and whispered about him?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The synonym of "amazing" in the sentence "It's an amazing sight" is ".....".
a) fair b) wonderful c) gentle d) thin
2. The date palm provides shade and food many desert creatures.
a) with b) to c) from d) for
3. The desert is very dry and receives very little rain. We add the suffix "....." to "dry" to change it into a noun.
a) -ness b) -ation c) -y d) -ive
4. The ecosystem stays healthy only when all parts are in
a) harm b) stem c) balance d) heat

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The desert is a very hot and dry place. Many animals live there. They have special ways to survive the heat. The camel is called the ship of the desert. It has a big hump on its back. The hump stores fat for the camel. This fat helps the camel when there is no food. Another animal is the fennec fox. It has very large ears. These ears help it lose heat to stay cool. The fox hides in burrows during the sunny day. At night, it comes out to hunt. Some snakes and lizards live in the sand. They hide under rocks to stay safe. Life in the desert is hard, but these animals are amazing. They know how to live in the sand.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The text is mainly about
a) rainy forests b) desert animals
c) cold places d) big cities
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
a) camel b) snake c) lizard d) fennec fox

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Why does the fennec fox have big ears?

.....

4. Where do desert snakes hide?

.....

5. Do you think the desert is a safe place for people? Why?

.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli was accustomed to human speech and customs from the beginning. (.....)
2. Mowgli tried to shape his life to match the villagers' environment. (.....)
3. The villagers treated him kindly and never feared his half wild nature. (.....)
4. Mowgli felt caught between two worlds and struggled with his identity. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did human life differ from jungle life for Mowgli?
.....
6. Why do you think Mowgli respected the law of the jungle more than human rules?
.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ali drove to Alexandria yesterday. (all yesterday morning)
.....
2. The tourists took photos. They were visiting the Pyramids. (While)
.....
3. My friend sent me a message. I was studying. (when)
.....
4. I felt cold. I was standing outside. (while)
.....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Desert life"

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We were playing chess. It rained. (while)
.....
2. I returned home late. My parents were watching TV. (when)
.....
3. He stayed near the salt lake yesterday. (all yesterday afternoon)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advantage (n)	ميزة	incredible (adj)	مذهل/لا يصدق
campfire (n)	نار المخيم	resident (n)	مقيم/ساكن
desert ruins (n)	آثار صحراوية	pollution (n)	تلوث

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

absolutely (adv)	تماماً/بشكل مطلق	intense (adj)	شديد/قوى
argue (d) (v)	يجادل	nearby (adj/adv)	قريب/بالقرب
carpet (n)	سجادة	neighbor (n)	جار
consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر/يفكر في	option (n)	خيار
definitely (adv)	بالأكيد/حتمًا	practical (adj)	عملي/واقعي
desert camping trip (n)	رحلة تخيم صحراوية	retire (d) (v)	يتقاعد
desert research station (n)	محطة أبحاث صحراوية	silence (n)	صمت/سكوت
drop (ped) (v)	يقل/يسقط/يوقع	sound (n)	صوت
dusty (adj)	مغبر/ملاء بالغبار	supplies (n)	مؤن/لوازم
entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسليّة	traffic noise (n)	ضوضاء المرور
footsteps (n)	خطوات القدم	windy (adj)	عاصف

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

by noon	بحلول الظهر	for the first time	لأول مرة
for a vacation	لقضاء إجازة	surrounded by	محاط بـ / يحيط به

Read and complete with a word from the list:

with – by – neighbor – intense

- 1 We helped our carry heavy bags.
- 2 The island is surrounded clear blue water.
- 3 The sun was very during the summer day.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
incredible	مذهل/لا يصدق	amazing	مذهل	ordinary	عادي
intense	شديد/قوى	harsh	شديد	light	خفيف
nearby	قريب/بالقرب	close	قريب	far	بعيد

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefixes/Suffixes	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
credible (adj)	معقول	in-	تعطى عكس المعنى		incredible (adj)	مذهل/لا يصدق
entertain (v)	يسلى	-ment	تحويل إلى اسم		entertainment (n)	ترفيه/تسليّة
pollute (v)	يلوث	-ion			pollution (n)	تلوث
dust (n)	غبار				dusty (adj)	مغبر/ملئى بالغبار
wind (n)	رياح	-y	تحويل إلى صفة		windy (adj)	عاصف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The magician used amazing tricks to entertain the audience. To form the noun of "entertain", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -y c) -ion d) -ment
- It was an incredible sight. The synonym of "incredible" is ".....".
a) ordinary b) harsh c) amazing d) far
- The opposite of "nearby" is ".....", which means a long distance away.
a) close b) old c) far d) light
- The suffix "-ion" changes "pollute" into a/an which means dirty air or water.
a) verb b) adverb c) adjective d) noun

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think life is like for people who live in the desert?

 Practice the model dialog, then create your own dialog discussing desert vs. city life.

Lesson 5

SB Page 79

Nora Hi Soha! I just read about people who left the city to live in the desert. Would you ever do that?

Soha That sounds interesting, but I'm not sure. What are the **advantages**⁽¹⁾ of desert life?

Nora Well, it's much quieter than city life. There's no traffic noise or pollution. People say the air is cleaner and you can see amazing stars at night.

Soha That sounds peaceful, but isn't it **lonely**⁽²⁾? In the city, I have many friends nearby and there are lots of **entertainment**⁽³⁾ options.

Nora True, but desert **communities**⁽⁴⁾ are often very close. Neighbors help each other more than in big cities. Plus, you're surrounded by **incredible**⁽⁵⁾ nature.

Soha I see your point, but what about **practical**⁽⁶⁾ things? Cities have better hospitals, schools, and job opportunities.

Nora You're right about that. Desert life is definitely more challenging. You need to plan everything carefully, **especially**⁽⁷⁾ water and supplies.

Soha I think I prefer city life because I like comfort and being around many people. But I'd love to visit the desert for a **vacation**⁽⁸⁾!

Nora That's great! Maybe we could plan a desert camping trip together.



Desert Life	City Life
	
quiet hot/dry few people	noisy varies many people
(1) مميزات	(2) وحيداً
(3) تسلية	(4) مجتمعات
(5) لا يصدق	(6) عملي/واقعي
(7) خصوصاً	(8) إجازة

Post-reading question:

SB

Complete the missing parts in the following conversation:

Fadi : Have you ever thought about living in the desert?

Rami : Not really (1).....

Fadi : You are right. Desert life is quite difficult. (2).....?

Rami : City life is easier than desert life.

Fadi : What is the most challenging problem in desert life?

Rami : I think (3).....

Pre-reading question:

- What do you know about Bedouin families and how they live?

 Read this diary entry and identify the different sections.

Lesson 6

SB Page 81

Dear Diary,

Today was my first day living with a **Bedouin**⁽¹⁾ family in the Sahara Desert, and it was absolutely amazing! I woke up at 5:30 a.m. when the sun was just rising over the golden **sand dunes**⁽²⁾. The air was surprisingly cool and fresh.

After a breakfast of dates and camel milk, we packed our bags and started walking across the desert. The sand felt warm under my feet, and the silence was incredible – I could only hear the soft sound of the wind and our **camels' footsteps**⁽³⁾. By noon, the heat became intense, so we rested in the shade of our tent.

In the evening, we watched the most beautiful sunset I've ever seen. The sky turned orange, pink, and purple while the temperature dropped quickly. We sat around a **campfire**⁽⁴⁾, eating traditional bread and listening to folk songs. The stars were so bright without city **lights**⁽⁵⁾!

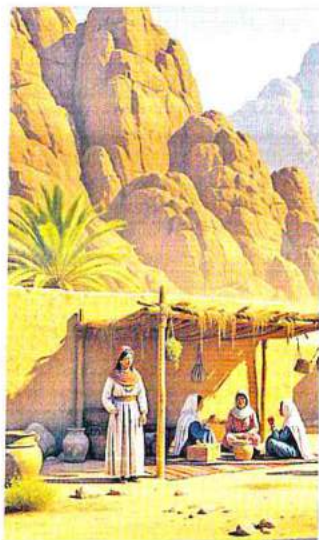
I felt tired but happy when I went to sleep on a soft **carpet**⁽⁶⁾ inside the tent. Tomorrow, we'll reach the **oasis**⁽⁷⁾. I can't wait to see what **adventures**⁽⁸⁾ are waiting for me.

Good night!

Post-reading questions:

1 What time did the writer wake up and what did they see?

2 What did the writer eat for breakfast?



- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| (1) بدوية | (2) كثبان رملية |
| (3) خطوات الجمال | (4) نار المعسكر |
| (5) أضواء | (6) سجادة |
| (7) واحة | (8) مغامرات |

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My friend told me an incredible story. The antonym of "incredible" is ".....".
 a) light b) ordinary c) amazing d) harsh
- After cleaning the old room, my hands were covered in dust. To get the adjective of "dust", we add the suffix ".....".
 a) -y b) -ly c) -ion d) -ment
- Most workers at the age of 60 and stop working.
 a) argue b) retire c) consider d) prefer
- You have many You should choose carefully.
 a) options b) neighbors c) people d) campfires
- City life has more than village life. The air isn't clean.
 a) supplies b) silence c) pollution d) advantages
- She heard behind her as she walked down the quiet hallway.
 a) footsteps b) residents c) silence d) ruins
- Our of food are few. We need to buy some more.
 a) advantages b) vacations c) supplies d) carpets
- Our house is surrounded tall trees all around it.
 a) by b) in c) at d) from
- The hotel used soft, colored to make the rooms feel comfortable.
 a) options b) campfires c) carpets d) footsteps
- To is to think carefully of something.
 a) retire b) surround c) consider d) prefer

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

silence – pollution – soft – camping – campfire

My family went on a fun vacation last week. We drove our big car to go on a desert (1) trip far away from the city. The yellow sand felt very (2) under my feet. At night, we sat around a warm (3) and looked at the bright stars above. I really loved the (4) because there were no loud cars there. We ate good food and slept in a big tent.



Preferring city life or desert life

تفضيل الحياة في المدينة أو الحياة الصحراوية

Expressing preferences

التعبير عن التفضيلات

• I prefer ... because ...

• I'd rather live in ... than ...

• I think ... is better because ...

• In my opinion, ...

أفضل ... لأن ...

أفضل العيش في ... بدلاً من ...

أعتقد أن ... أفضل لأن ...

في رأيي, ...

Giving reasons

تقديم الأسباب

• The main advantage is ...

• One problem with ... is ...

• The best thing about ... is ...

• I don't like ... because ...

الميزة الرئيسية هي ...

إحدى المشاكل في ... هي ...

أفضل شيء في ... هو ...

لا أحب ... لأن ...

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

▶ Adam and Sara are arguing about living in the city or the desert.

Adam : Do you like the city or the desert?

Sara : I like the (1)..... because it has many lights.

Adam : (2)..... the city noisy at night?

Sara : Yes, cars make loud noises all the time.

Adam : The desert is very (3)..... and peaceful.

Sara : (4)..... we see animals in the desert?

Adam : Yes, you can see camels walking on sand.

Sara : I think I prefer the busy city life.

تطبيق الأضواء

نماذج الاختبارات الشهرية: بقدر تستعد
لاختبارات الشهور مع الأضواء من خلال تحميل
ملف الاختبارات من خانة المراجعات.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com





How to write about a day in the desert

كيفية الكتابة عن يوم في الصحراء



اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A day in the desert"

Today was a wonderful day in the desert. I woke up at 5:00 a.m. and watched the sun rise over the golden sand dunes. The air was cool and fresh. For breakfast, I ate dates and drank camel milk. During the day, I walked on the warm sand and saw camels and birds. By noon, the heat was strong, so I rested under the shade of a tent. In the evening, I watched a beautiful sunset. I ate traditional bread and listened to songs by the campfire. I felt happy and tired. I can't wait for tomorrow's adventure!

d) interested

4. While Hagar was shopping, she bought a nice gift for Mom. (when)

4 Complete the following dialog:

Omar wants to live in a big city.

Laila : Where do you want to live, Omar?

Omar : I want to live in a big (1).....

Laila : (2)..... do you like the city so much?

Omar : Because there are many shops and fun parks there.

Laila : I think the desert is better for (3).....

Omar : Camping is fun, but I need good internet.

Laila : (4)..... you like the traffic in the city?

Omar : No, but I like being near my friends.

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A nice day you spent in the desert"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. While Judy was playing with her doll, her brother took it. (when)

2. While Basma was drawing a picture, her pencil broke. (When)

3. She dropped her sunglasses. She was walking in the street. (While)

4. While Anas was riding his bike, he fell off. (When)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
preserve	يحفظ	distinct	مختلف
free	يحرر	shallow	ضحل
quarrel	يتشاجر	forbid	يمنع

2 Comprehension strategies:

How to understand reference pronouns:

كيفية معرفة المشار إليه في القطعة:

Explanation:

Reference words (like *he, she, it, they, this, those*) refer to something mentioned before.

كلمات الإشارة تشير إلى اسم أو فكرة ذكرت سابقاً في النص.

Steps:

1. Find the pronoun in the passage. - ابحث عن الضمير في القطعة.
2. Read the sentence written before the pronoun. - اقرأ الجملة المكتوبة قبل الضمير.
3. Decide which word or person it refers to. - حدد الكلمة أو الشخص الذي يشير إليه الضمير.

FOR EXAMPLE:

In the American Southwest, Native American tribes like the Hopi built communities in desert regions. They developed clever irrigation systems to grow corn, beans, and squash in the dry soil. These communities learned to store water underground during rare rainfalls.

What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

It refers to

- a) Americans b) tribes c) communities d) rainfalls

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- People must conserve water carefully.

- يجب على الناس الحفاظ على المياه بعناية.
- يجب على الناس استهلاك المياه بكثرة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- العديد من الحيوانات الصحراوية تنشط فقط في الليل.

- ☐ Many desert animals are active only at night.
- ☐ Many desert animals sleep all night.

adapt (ed) to	يتكيف / يتأقلم مع
irrigation	الري
conserve (d)	يحافظ على
nomadic	بدوي/ زحل
grazing land	أرض رعي/ مراعي
tribe	قبيلة/ عشيرة
freezing	شديد البرودة/ قارس
shelter	مأوى/ ملجأ
gather (ed)	يجتمع
signal (ed)	إشارة/ يرسل إشارة
hike (d)	يتنزه سيراً
survival	بقاء/ نجاة
adaptation	تكيف/ تأقلم
ecosystem	نظام بيئي
amazing	مذهل/ مذهش
harsh	قاس/ شديد
balance (d)	يوازن/ توازن
unique	فريد/ مميز
advantage	ميزة
incredible	مذهل/ لا يصدق
campfire	نار المخيم
resident	مقيم/ ساكن
desert ruins	آثار صحراوية
pollution	تلوث

1) The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative:

Subject + الفعل + الفاعل

e.g. The small boy **climbed** the tree yesterday.

I **ran** to school yesterday because I **was** late.

Negative:

Subject + **didn't** + inf. الفعل

e.g. My mom **didn't** cook yesterday because she **was** sick.

e.g. Ali **wasn't** at school last week.

2) The Past Continuous Tense

Affirmative:

Subject + **was/were** + inf. الفعل + ing

e.g. Kareem **was** playing football all day yesterday.

e.g. Dina and Hossam **were** playing tennis at 10:30 yesterday.

Negative:

Subject + **wasn't/weren't** + inf. الفعل + ing

e.g. I **wasn't** sleeping last Friday evening.
My parents **weren't** watching the movie.

While/As + الفعل + **بينما / أثناء** - **When** **عند**

e.g. **While** I **was** reading a book, the phone rang.

e.g. **When** it rained, I **was** cycling to school.

A. Speaking

Imagining moving to the desert

- If you had to live in the desert, would you choose the Bedouin, Hopi, or modern lifestyle?

I'd choose the Hopi lifestyle.

- Why did you choose this lifestyle? Because I love growing food and storing water underground.

- What will you do every day? I will watch the sunrise and explore the desert.

- How will you survive the heat, cold, or sandstorms?

I will wear the right clothes and stay inside during storms.

B. Writing

"Desert life"

Desert life is difficult because the land is dry and the sun is very hot. In order to survive, animals and plants must save water. Unlike other environments, the desert gets very little rain. Many animals have adapted by changing their bodies. Some have long legs, and others have thick skin to protect them from the heat. One way to deal with the heat is to move at night when the air is cooler. A good example is the camel, which can live for many days without water. These special adaptations help desert life continue.

A Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In ancient times, small lived in the desert and moved from place to place in search of food and water.
a) tribes b) nations c) villages d) farmers
- People who move from place to place in the desert are called
a) farmers b) nomadic c) builders d) travelers
- Animals eat grass on
a) sand dunes b) grazing land c) rocky hills d) riversides
- Farmers use systems to bring water to their crops during dry periods.
a) transportation b) decoration c) purification d) irrigation
- The cattle were in the open fields, eating grass and resting in the shade.
a) running b) sleeping c) grazing d) playing

B Language

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I dinner when the phone suddenly rang.
a) cooked b) was cooking c) cook d) have cooked
- While we to school, it started to rain heavily.
a) walk b) have walked c) walked d) were walking
- She her keys yesterday, so she couldn't open the door.
a) loses b) was losing c) lost d) has lost
- While Omar the plants, his brother was cleaning his room.
a) was watering b) watered c) water d) is watering
- He to the store, bought some milk, and went back home.
a) was going b) goes c) went d) going

C Writing

3 Write your own diary entry (90–100 words) about achieving something you worked hard for. Include:

- Your goal and why it was important to you
- The steps you took to reach it
- The emotions you felt before, during, and after your success
- Any difficulties or failures you faced
- Past tense verbs

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Cairo is a city.
a) quiet b) small c) busy d) dark
- Tarek wants to go to the
a) sea b) desert c) park d) school

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What is everywhere in the city?
.....
- What does the desert have?
.....
- Why does Tarek want to sit on the sand?
.....

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The synonym of "conserve" in the sentence "We must conserve water" is ".....".
a) waste b) build c) survive d) save
- The grass is wet in the morning. The antonym of "wet" is ".....".
a) rare b) dry c) tall d) noisy
- Music is a great form of entertain. To correct the underlined word, add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -ion c) -ment d) -ness
- During the day, animals cool by resting in shade.
a) retire b) provide c) make d) keep

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

date palm – freezing – oasis – sand dunes – irrigation

Siwa is a beautiful place located in the Western Desert of Egypt. It is a famous (1)..... full of green trees and fresh water springs. Farmers there use water for (2)..... to help their food grow well. You can see many tall (3)..... trees everywhere you look. Tourists also like to climb the high (4)..... to see the sunset. It is a peaceful place to visit.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

People live in many different places. Some people live in the big city. The city is very busy and noisy. There are many tall buildings and cars. You can find shops and schools easily. It is exciting. Other people live in the quiet desert. The desert is calm and peaceful. You can see the stars at night. It is very hot and sunny in the day. Life there is simple. Which place is better? It depends on what you like. Ahmed likes the city because he loves football clubs. Mona likes the desert because she loves nature. Both places are special in their own way. We should respect where everyone lives. Living in different places makes the world very fun and interesting for us all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is
a) how to build a house b) comparing the city and the desert
c) playing football in a club d) driving cars in the street
- The underlined word "there" refers to the
a) city b) shop c) school d) desert

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why does Ahmed like living in the city?
- What can you see in the desert sky at night?
- Which place do you think is better for a family, the city or the desert? Why?



The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Mowgli entered the village hoping to find peace and belonging. (.....)
- The villagers were surprised by his strange looks and wild behavior. (.....)
- Mowgli hunted with the villagers and forgot the jungle. (.....)
- Mowgli longed for Baloo and Bagheera because of their honesty and love. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why couldn't Mowgli feel truly free in the human village?
.....

- Was the villagers' suspicion متشكك of Mowgli fair or unfair? Why?
.....



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The baby laughed. We were taking pictures. (While)

.....

2. He wore sunglasses all day. (yesterday morning)

.....

3. The wind started blowing. We were eating lunch. (When)

.....

4. I met Sami while going to school. (was going)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Jana and Mazen are talking about city life or desert life.

Jana : Mazen, is the city or desert more fun?

Mazen : The city is more fun. (1)..... about you?

Jana : I think the (2)..... is beautiful and open.

Mazen : It is too empty for me to live there.

Jana : You can play in the sand all day long.

Mazen : I (3)..... playing video games in my room.

Jana : (4)..... you like the loud sounds of the city?

Mazen : Yes, I like hearing the city wake up.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A day in the desert"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

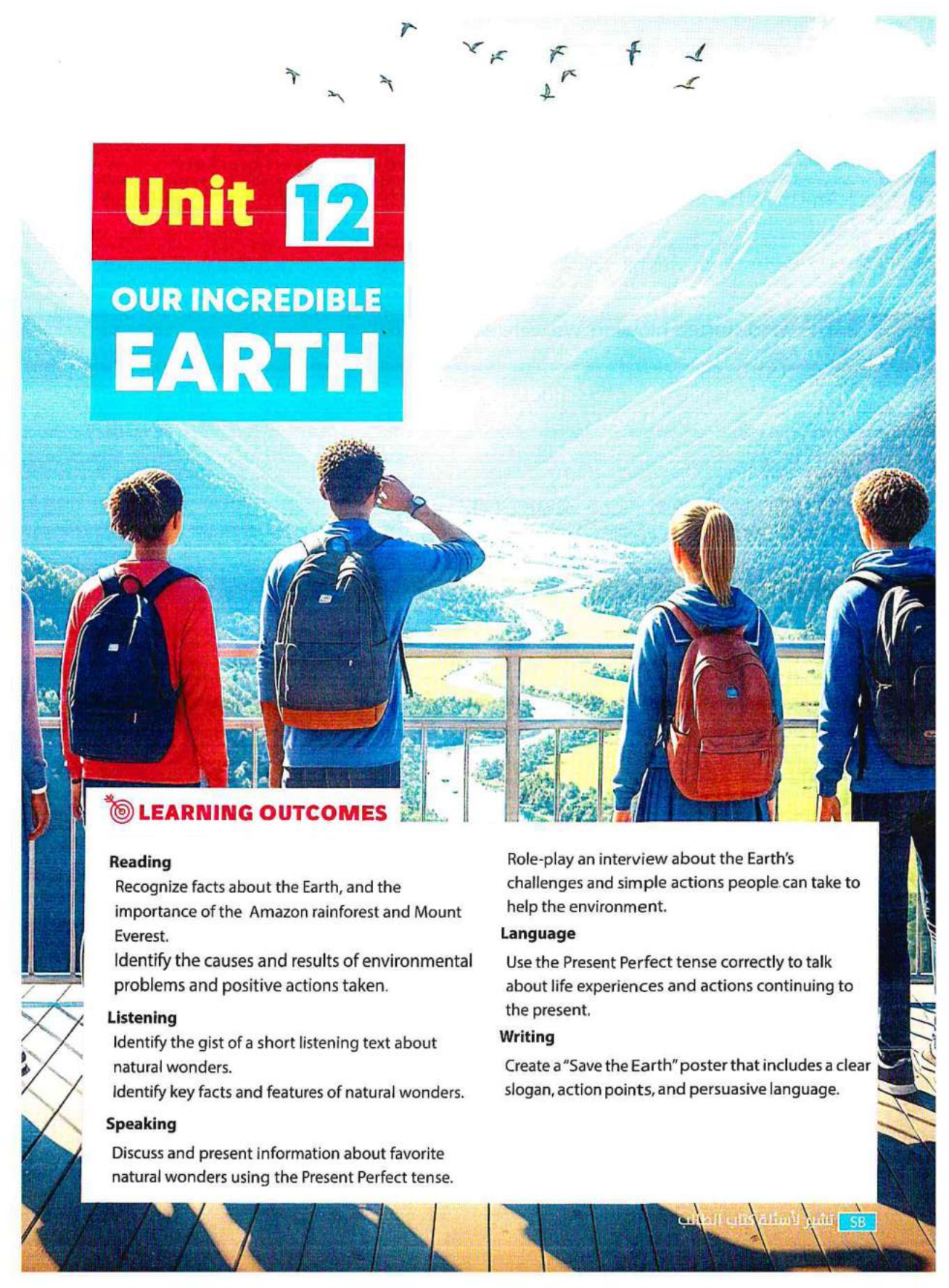
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 12

OUR INCREDIBLE EARTH

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Recognize facts about the Earth, and the importance of the Amazon rainforest and Mount Everest.

Identify the causes and results of environmental problems and positive actions taken.

Listening

Identify the gist of a short listening text about natural wonders.

Identify key facts and features of natural wonders.

Speaking

Discuss and present information about favorite natural wonders using the Present Perfect tense.

Role-play an interview about the Earth's challenges and simple actions people can take to help the environment.

Language

Use the Present Perfect tense correctly to talk about life experiences and actions continuing to the present.

Writing

Create a "Save the Earth" poster that includes a clear slogan, action points, and persuasive language.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

gravity (n)	الجاذبية الأرضية	mountain (n)	جبل/مرتفع
incredible (adj)	لا يصدق/مذهل/رائع	radiation (n)	إشعاع
landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

actually (adv)	في الحقيقة/فعلياً	Mount Everest (n)	جبل إيفرست
amount (n)	كمية/مقدار	mysterious (adj)	غامض
atmosphere (n)	الغلاف الجوي	ocean (n)	محيط
astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	particles (n)	جسيمات/ذرات/جزيئات
Blue Planet (n)	الكوكب الأزرق (كوكب الأرض)	remain (ed) (v)	يبقى/يظل
climber (n)	متسلق	rest (n)	بقية
force (n)	قوة	steep (adj)	حاد/منحدر
frozen (adj)	مجمد/متجمد	unimaginable (adj)	لا يمكن تخيله/لا يصدق
heavy rain (n)	أمطار غزيرة	wonders (n)	عجائب/روائع
lung (n)	رئة		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

along the way	على طول الطريق	on the other side of	على الجانب الآخر من
face challenges	يواجه تحديات	protects ... from	يحمي ... من
for life	مدى الحياة	pull ... downwards	يسحب ... إلى الأسفل
harmful to	ضار لـ	reach a top	يصل إلى القمة
hold the atmosphere in place	يحافظ على الغلاف الجوي في مكانه	rise above	يرتفع فوق
hold the record as	يحمل الرقم القياسي كـ	travel in	ينتقل في

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – to – remain – radiation

- Please, in your seat until the bus stops.
- Loud noise is harmful young children.
- Too much from the sun can be dangerous for people.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adventure (n)	مغامرة	researchers (n)	باحثون
beauty (n)	جمال	volcanoes (n)	براكين
iceberg (n)	جبل جليدي	waterfall (n)	شلال

Important Landmarks معالم هامة

the Grand Canyon	الوادي العظيم	the Himalayas	جبال الهمالايا
the Amazon Rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	the Pacific Ocean	المحيط الهادئ
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	Son Doong Cave	كهف سون دونج

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

amaze (d) (v)	يذهل/يدهش	glowing (adj)	متوهج/لامع
bioluminescent (adj)	مضيء بيولوجيًا	identical (adj)	متطابق/متماثل
breathhtaking (adj)	يخطف الأنفاس/مذهل	photographer (n)	مصور
countless (adj)	لا يحصى/لا يعد	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
danger (n)	خطر	shape (d) (v)	يشكل
deserve (d) (v)	يستحق	sights (n)	مناظر/مشاهد
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقي	species (n)	أنواع/فصائل
extraordinary (adj)	استثنائي/غير عادي	traveler (n)	مسافر/رحالة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

capture wonders	يلتقط/يوثق العجائب	over time	مع مرور/بمرور الوقت
care for	يعتني بـ/يرعى	underwater	تحت الماء
kind of	نوع من	full of	مملوء بـ

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – to – breathtaking – volcanoes

- The view from the mountain was
- Parents care their children every day.
- Some are active, while others are extinct.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
brave	شجاع	courageous	شجاع	afraid	خائف
huge	ضخم	large	كبير الحجم	tiny/small	ضئيل/صغير
identical	متطابق/متماثل	similar	مشابه	different	مختلف
incredible/extraordinary	لا يصدق/رائع	surprising/amazing	مذهل	ordinary/common	عادي/شائع
mysterious	غامض	strange/unexplainable	غريب	clear/obvious	واضح
remain	يبقى/يظل	stay	يبقى	leave	يفادر
unusual	غير عادي	strange	غريب	usual	عادي

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
radiate (v)	يشع	-ion	تحويل إلى اسم		radiation (n)	إشعاع
climb (v)	يتسلق	-er			climber (n)	متسلق
travel (v)	يسافر				traveler (n)	مسافر/ركالة
imaginable (adj)	يمكن تخيله	un-	تعطى عكس المعنى		unimaginable (adj)	لا يمكن تخيله
count (v)	يعد	-less			countless (adj)	لا يعد (كثير جدًا)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She was very brave to climb the tall mountain alone. The word "brave" has the same meaning as the word ".....".
a) afraid b) different c) courageous d) usual
- The team achieved unimaginable success after working hard for many years. To form the opposite of "imaginable", add the prefix ".....".
a) -ous b) un- c) -less d) -ion
- Archaeologists discovered Incredible tombs. The word "incredible" can be replaced with ".....".
a) ordinary b) common c) amazing d) usual
- The noun for a person of "travel" is formed by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -less b) -er c) un- d) -ous

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What is the most amazing place on Earth you know about?
- 2 Why do people call Earth the "Blue Planet"?

 Read the following text. Guess the meanings of the words in bold. **SB page 85**

Our planet Earth is full of **wonders**⁽¹⁾, and some of them are truly **incredible**! Do you know that Earth is around 4.5 billion years old? That's an unimaginable amount of time for life and **landscapes** to develop.

The **Sahara Desert**⁽²⁾ is so huge that **astronauts**⁽³⁾ can actually see it from space! On the other side of the world, the Amazon **rainforest** is often called the "**lungs of the Earth**⁽⁴⁾" because it produces a huge amount of the oxygen we breathe every day.

When it comes to **mountains**, **Mount Everest**⁽⁵⁾ holds the record as the highest on Earth. Many brave **climbers**⁽⁶⁾ have reached its frozen top, facing incredible challenges along the way.

Earth's **gravity** is strong enough to hold its **atmosphere**⁽⁷⁾ in place. This atmosphere protects us from harmful **radiation** and keeps the planet warm enough to support life. Without gravity, Earth would lose the air we breathe.

And here's a fact that shows how little we know: humans have explored only about 5% of the **oceans**⁽⁸⁾. The rest remains a deep, **mysterious**⁽⁹⁾ world waiting to be discovered.



- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| (1) عجائب | (2) الصحراء الكبرى |
| (3) رواد الفضاء | (4) رئة كوكب الأرض |
| (5) جبل إيفرست | (6) متسلقون |
| (7) غلاف جوي | (8) محيطات |
| (9) غامض | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Gravity is important for the Earth. Explain.
- 2 What makes our planet Earth special and full of wonders?
- 3 Why is it important to protect Earth and its environment?
- 4 Why do you think radiation is harmful to life on Earth?

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

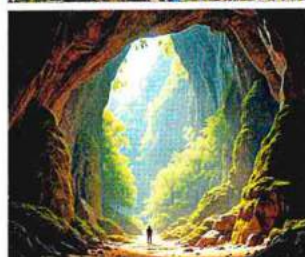
- 1 What natural wonders would you like to see (mountains, waterfalls, rivers...)?
- 2 Why are people interested in natural wonders?

Listen to the audio. What is the guest talking about?

Our planet is full of natural wonders that have amazed people for thousands of years. Scientists and explorers have discovered incredible places that show the true power and beauty of nature. For example, travelers have visited the Grand Canyon⁽¹⁾ in the U.S.A, the Amazon Rainforest⁽²⁾ in South America, and the Sahara Desert in North Africa, and each place has offered a different kind of adventure. Over time, researchers⁽³⁾ have found unusual plants and animals living in deep oceans like the Pacific Ocean⁽⁴⁾, high mountains such as the Himalayas⁽⁵⁾ in Asia, and hidden caves like those in Vietnam's Son Doong Cave⁽⁶⁾.

Nature has also created breathtaking⁽⁷⁾ sights such as bioluminescent⁽⁸⁾ glowing beaches in the Maldives, active volcanoes in Iceland, and giant icebergs⁽⁹⁾ in Antarctica that have shaped the way people understand the world. Many photographers have captured these wonders to share their beauty with others. These natural wonders remind us that Earth is full of secrets⁽¹⁰⁾, and humans have only seen a small part of its magic⁽¹¹⁾. They also encourage us to protect our environment, because nature has given us extraordinary places that deserve⁽¹²⁾ to be cared for.

SB page 88



(1) الوادي العظيم

(2) غابات الأمازون المطيرة

(3) باحثون

(4) المحيط الهادئ

(5) جبال الهيمالايا

(6) كهف سون دونج

(7) مذهش

(8) مضئ بيولوجيا

(9) جبال جليدية

(10) أسرار

(11) سحر

(12) يستحق

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 Where is the Grand Canyon located?
- 2 What have researchers found in deep oceans?
- 3 Why have many photographers captured these wonders?

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	natural force that pulls objects downwards
incredible	مذهل/لا يصدق	extremely surprising, or amazing
landscapes	مناظر طبيعية	the view of the land around us including trees, mountains, rivers, or fields
mountain	جبل	a very high and steep land that rises above the land around it
radiation	إشعاع	energy that travels in waves or tiny particles
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	a place with many trees and heavy rain

1 so + adj. + that

جداً لدرجة أن

The Sahara Desert is **so huge that** astronauts can actually see it from space.

2 adj. + enough to + inf.

بدرجة كافية لكي

Earth's gravity is **strong enough to hold** its atmosphere in place.

3 is located

تقع (جغرافياً)

Where **is** the Grand Canyon **located**?

4 explore / discover / invent

explore (يكتشف (مكاناً موجوداً من قبل) / يستكشف (مكاناً معروفاً بفرض الدراسة) / **discover** (يكتشف (مكاناً موجوداً من قبل) / يستكشف (مكاناً معروفاً بفرض الدراسة) / **invent** (يخترع (شيئاً لأول مرة)

Astronauts **explore** outer space. Columbus **discovered** America.

The telephone was **invented** by Alexander Graham Bell.

5 Important places

أماكن هامة

the U.S.A الولايات المتحدة	North Africa شمال إفريقيا	Antarctica القارة القطبية الجنوبية	Iceland آيسلندا
South America جنوب أمريكا	Vietnam فيتنام	the Maldives جزر المالديف	Asia آسيا

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The view of trees, rivers, and mountains is called
a) gravity b) rainforest c) landscape d) radiation
- The Himalayas are high that climbers need oxygen to reach the top.
a) too b) enough c) so d) such
- The rainforest is huge enough millions of unknown insect species.
a) containing b) contain c) to containing d) to contain
- What pulls everything toward the center of the Earth is called
a) radiation b) gravity c) wonder d) landscape

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mount Everest is the highest in the world, covered in snow.
a) mountain b) well c) radiation d) astronaut
- Nour tried counting the stars, but they were too many. To form the opposite of "count", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ion b) -less c) -er d) -ous
- To change the verb "climb" into a noun that means "a person who climbs mountains," add the suffix ".....".
a) -ion b) -ous c) -er d) un-
- Earth's gravity helps to hold the atmosphere
a) along the way b) for life c) in place d) on the other side
- The Amazon is the world's largest with heavy rain and tall trees.
a) mountain b) rainforest c) astronaut d) ocean
- Nature has given us extraordinary places that to be cared for.
a) observe b) deserve c) think d) make
- The Earth from space is incredible. The word "incredible" gives the antonym of ".....".
a) ordinary b) harmful c) unimaginable d) countless
- Solar includes tiny waves and particles that travel from the sun to the Earth.
a) liquids b) gas c) radiation d) pollution
- is the natural force that pulls objects towards the Earth's center.
a) Radiation b) Gravity c) Ocean d) View
- Desert and forest are two types of natural that tourists love to photograph.
a) landscapes b) particles c) energy d) facts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gravity – radio – incredible – air – radiation

The brave astronaut flying in a big rocket ship looked at the beautiful Earth from far away. Space is an (1) place. There is no (2) outside, so the astronaut needed his tank of oxygen to breathe well. He felt very light inside the ship because there was no (3) to pull him down. His white suit stops the dangerous (4) from hurting his skin.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a huge mass of ice that floats in the cold Southern Ocean near Antarctica.
a) waterfall b) documentary c) volcano d) iceberg
2. The word "extraordinary" means the same as "....." when we describe something amazing.
a) usual b) identical c) incredible d) different
3. To form the adjective that means "too many to count," we add "-less" to the verb ".....".
a) travel b) remove c) count d) shape
4. Professional photographers often travel around the world to natural wonders.
a) care b) capture c) deserve d) offer
5. The view of the Grand Canyon is so that it leaves visitors amazed every time.
a) identical b) breathtaking c) glowing d) usual
6. Some deep-sea creatures are which means they produce their own soft light underwater.
a) dangerous b) bioluminescent c) identical d) breathtaking
7. Her performance was so that everyone in the room stood up to clap loudly.
a) identical b) usual c) extraordinary d) normal
8. We should always the environment by not leaving trash in natural places.
a) arrive in b) travel in c) care for d) look for
9. The explained how ancient civilizations built their pyramids.
a) bike b) documentary c) song d) game
10. A/An is a person who explores new places and often writes about their experiences.
a) photographer b) traveler c) inventor d) actor

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

capture – species – Ocean – volcano – bioluminescent

The world is full of amazing places that everyone should visit one day. You can swim deep in the Pacific (1) to see strange and colorful fish. Some animals are (2) and look like bright lights in the dark sea. It is fun to (3) photos of the glowing water at night with friends. There are many different (4) of fish swimming together. We must keep the water clean for them to live safely.

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Grammar story:



Read and circle the correct answer:

Lina (has/have) finished her homework early today. She has (cleans/cleaned) her room and (has/have) packed her school bag. Now she feels proud because she (has/have) done all her tasks by herself. Her brother Sami has (helped/helping) her a little, and together they (has/have) made their mom very happy.

Usage

الاستخدام

- We use it to talk about experiences in life (without saying exactly when).

- نستخدم المضارع التام للتحدث عن تجارب في الحياة (دون تحديد متى على وجه التحديد).

e.g. I have visited the Grand Canyon. Salma has tried Italian food.

- Actions that started in the past and continue until now.

- أفعال بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

e.g. Egyptians have depended on the Nile for thousands of years.
Anas has studied English since 2014.

- Recently completed actions (often used with: just/already/yet/recently/late).

- أفعال اكتملت مؤخرًا.

e.g. I have just finished my homework. He has eaten breakfast already.

Affirmative

الاثبات

I/You/They/We/ اسم جمع + have + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. The students have answered the questions.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + has + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. The boy has lost his pencil.

Negative

النفي

I/You/They/We/ اسم جمع + haven't + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. I haven't finished my homework.

He/She/It/ اسم مفرد + hasn't + P.P. (التصريف الثالث للفعل)

e.g. My brother hasn't cleaned his room today.

Question

السؤال

Have + I/you/they/we/ اسم جمع + P.P. + ...?

e.g. Have you visited your grandparents this week?

Has + he/she/it/ اسم مفرد + P.P. + ...?

e.g. Has it rained this morning?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

يستخدم الزمن مع هذه الكلمات:

for – since – ever – never – just – already – yet – (this + time)

for + a period of time

(مدة الحدث)

for two ... (hours/ days/ weeks/ months/ years/ centuries)

for the last ... (week/ month/ May/ year)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

for a while /for ages لمدة طويلة /للمدة

for long /for more than لمدة أكثر من

for a long time /for all of his life طوال حياته /لمدة طويلة

since + a point in time

(بداية الحدث)

since ... (two o'clock/ Sunday/May/ 2010/ morning .../ winter ...)

since last ... (Sunday/ week/ month/ May/ year)

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- since the age of منذ سن /since then منذ ذلك الحين

لاحظ أن



إذا جاء بعد (since) جملة، تكون في زمن الماضي البسيط (past simple).

e.g. I haven't seen Yara since I was in primary two.

e.g. I have spoken English for 26 years.

e.g. I have spoken English since 2000.

(just) حالاً/توَّأ

- تأتي just بين have/has والتصريف الثالث من الفعل

e.g. I have just eaten my food.

e.g. He has just finished his homework.

(already) بالفعل

- تستخدم في الجملة المثبتة بعد have, has وقبل التصريف الثالث.

e.g. I have already met Nadia.

- تستخدم في نهاية الجملة للتأكيد:

e.g. I have booked the tickets already.

- ومن الممكن استخدامها أيضاً للتعبير عن الدهشة في نهاية السؤال.

e.g. Have you finished cooking already? I'm surprised.

حتى الآن (yet)

- تستخدم في الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية.

e.g. Has Ali bought a cellphone yet?

Ali hasn't finished his homework yet.

(ever) (من قبل)

- تستخدم في الإثبات والاستفهام.

e.g. Have you ever been to Paris?

It's the most interesting match I have ever watched. - في الجمل التي بها صفات التفضيل.

(never) أبداً

- الجملة المثبتة بعد have, has وقبل التصريف الثالث وتفيد معنى النفي.

e.g. I have never traveled abroad.

We have never lived in Giza.

لاحظ أن

هناك فرق في المعنى بين:

Subject + has/have been to + (مكان place) ...

e.g. My father has been to Paris. (He is in Cairo now.) ذهب إلى/ زار مكاناً وعاد منه.

Subject + has/have gone to + (مكان place) ...

e.g. My father has gone to France. (He is still there.) ذهب إلى/ زار مكاناً ولم يعد منه.

Got it?

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1 Salma finished her homework a very short time ago. (just)

- يتم تحويل فعل الجملة (finished) إلى مضارع تام (has finished) وكتابة (just) قبل التصريف الثالث مع حذف a very short time ago.

Salma has just finished her homework.

2 My uncle moved to a house in Cairo in 2015. (since)

- يتم تحويل فعل الجملة (moved) إلى مضارع تام (has moved) وكتابة (since) قبل السنة (2015) مع حذف in.

My uncle has moved to a house in Cairo since 2015.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I my homework already.

SB

a) finish

b) finished

c) have finished

d) finishes

2. She the Grand Egyptian Museum twice this year.

SB

a) visit

b) visited

c) has visited

d) visits

3. They in Alexandria for ten years.

SB

a) live

b) lived

c) have lived

d) are living

4. My father a new car this week.

SB

a) buys

b) buy

c) bought

d) buying

5. I never the Pyramids at night.

SB

a) have/seen

b) has/saw

c) had/seen

d) have/see

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The small white cat drank the milk a moment ago.

(just)

2. My brother bought a new red bike last week.

(lately)

3. Hatem started living in this big house ten years ago.

(for)

4. The busy doctor went to the hospital and is still there.

(gone)

5. The teacher wrote the lesson a short time ago.

(just)

6. My friend Ali has not visited the zoo before.

(never)

7. The green tree in the garden grew very tall last week.

(this week)

8. We went to the beach in the summer.

(gone)

9. Basmala bought a nice dress for the party last night.

(already)

10. Tarek started playing football when he was five years old.

(since)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Abdullah has his homework already.
a) finish b) finishing c) finished d) finishes
- The cat all the milk in the small bowl already.
a) drink b) drinks c) drinking d) has drunk
- Lately, my friends football in the club.
a) have played b) playing c) played d) plays
- Aida has painted a beautiful picture of the sea and sky.
a) yet b) since c) just d) for
- The boys have their lunch boxes in the classroom today.
a) forget b) forgets c) forgotten d) forgetting

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- My sister started reading this long book last month. (for)
.....
- The blue bird flew into the sky a moment ago. (just)
.....
- In the morning, Mother cooked a very delicious meal. (already)
.....
- They traveled to the city and are not back yet. (gone)
.....
- Jana painted a beautiful picture a very short time ago. (just)
.....
- The boy has played with his toys for 3 hours. It's now 6 o'clock. (since)
.....
- I will take the science exam tomorrow. (yet)
.....
- It is the first time I see a big elephant. (never)
.....
- Omar washed his hands a very short time ago. (already)
.....
- The red car stopped working a moment ago. (just)
.....

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





Asking and answering about natural wonders

السؤال والإجابة عن العجائب الطبيعية



online



What's the most amazing natural wonder you have visited?

ما أروع العجائب الطبيعية التي زرتها؟

The Great Barrier Reef. It's like a magical underwater city.

الحاجز المرجاني العظيم. إنه مثل مدينة سحرية تحت الماء.



What do you think makes a place amazing?

ما الذي تعتقد أنه يجعل المكان رائعاً؟

A place is amazing when it is very big, beautiful, or full of interesting animals.

المكان يكون رائعاً عندما يكون كبيراً جداً أو جميلاً أو مليئاً بالحيوانات المثيرة للاهتمام.



Which natural wonder do you find the most amazing? Why?

أي عجائب طبيعية تجدها الأكثر روعة؟ ولماذا؟

I find the Grand Canyon the most amazing because it is very big and colorful.

أجد جراند كانيون الأكثر روعة؛ لأنه كبير جداً وملون.



Why do you like visiting it?

لماذا تحب زيارته؟

I like visiting it because I can see many animals and beautiful views.

أحب زيارته لأنني أستطيع رؤية العديد من الحيوانات والمناظر الجميلة.



What have you learned about it?

ماذا تعلمت عنه؟

I learned that it is very old and that nature works slowly to make it beautiful.

تعلمت أنه قديم جداً، وأن الطبيعة تعمل ببطء لجعله جميلاً.



Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating



Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Sarah are talking about mountains.

Ahmed : Do you like looking at big mountains?

Sarah : Yes, I (1)..... Mountains are very beautiful.

Ahmed : (2)..... is the highest mountain in the world?

Sarah : I think Everest is the highest one.

Ahmed : Is there snow on top of it?

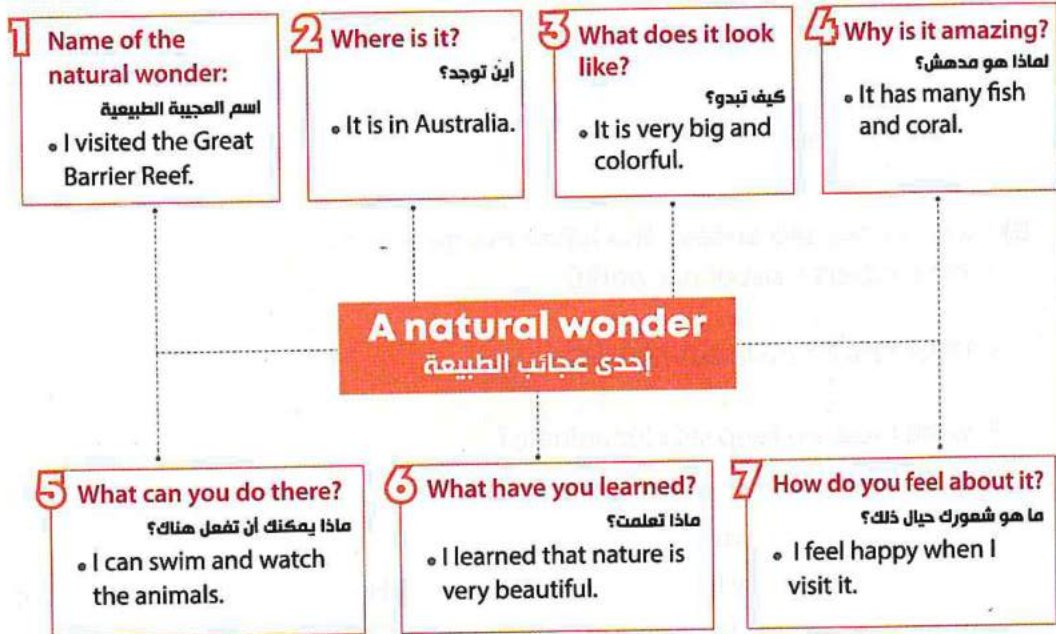
Sarah : Yes, it (3)..... very cold up there.

Ahmed : (4)..... we climb a mountain one day?

Sarah : Of course. We need to be strong to climb.

How to write about a natural wonder

كيف تكتب عن واحدة من عجائب الطبيعة



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"The Great Barrier Reef"

I visited the Great Barrier Reef. It's an incredible place in Australia. It is very big and colorful. The water is blue, and there are many fish and coral. I can swim and watch the animals. The reef is wonderful because it is full of life. I like visiting it because I feel happy and calm. I learned that nature is very beautiful and important for animals and people. I want to visit it again one day. The Great Barrier Reef is one of the most amazing natural wonders in the world. It is like a magical underwater city.

Lessons (1 & 2)

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

d) sky

5. What must we keep safe for animals?

d) push

waterfall – photographer – Antarctica – danger – iceberg

My uncle travels to very cold places to take nice pictures. Last year, he went to (1) to see the white snow. He is a famous (2) who loves nature very much. He saw a huge (3) floating in the cold water. There was no (4) because he was on a big safe boat. He likes to watch the penguins play on the ice. He wants to go back there again next summer.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. They have lived in this small house since 2010. (for)
2. He last saw his friend when they were at school. (since)
3. The boys played a game and they are tired now. (already)
4. We went to the park with our friends last Friday, and we didn't go again. (since)

5 Complete the following dialog:

Laila is asking Omar about the River Nile.

Laila : Have you seen the River Nile before?

Omar : (1)....., I see it every day.

Laila : Is the Nile a very long river?

Omar : Yes, it (2)..... It is the longest river in the world.

Laila : (3)..... you been on a boat on the River Nile?

Omar : Yes, I have.

Laila : (4)..... was it?

Omar : It was breathtaking.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A wonder you have visited"

Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We ate our lunch and we are not hungry now. (already)
2. You did not finish your homework until this moment. (yet)
3. My uncle visited Rome last month. He returned here yesterday. (been)
4. I last met my friends when I was in Alexandria last summer. (since)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر	recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير
extreme (adj)	شديد/قصوى	species (n)	أنواع/فصائل

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	human actions (n)	أفعال البشر
clean energy (n)	طاقة نظيفة	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم/يعرض
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	nuclear (adj)	نووي
destroy (ed) (v)	يهدم/يحطم	organization (n)	منظمة/مؤسسة
disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي/يتلاشى	plastic waste (n)	نفايات بلاستيكية
drought (n)	جفاف	produce (d) (v)	ينتج/يصنع
environmental (adj)	بيئي	sea turtle (n)	سلحفاة بحرية
establish (ed) (v)	يؤسس/ينشئ	solar panels (n)	ألواح شمسية
flood (n)	فيضان/طوفان		

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

achieve goals	يحقق/ينجز الأهداف	lose homes	يفقد المنازل/يخسر المساكن
at risk	في خطر	make changes	يجري/يحدث تغييرات
cut down	يقطع/يخفض	take action	يتخذ إجراء/يتصرف
depend on	يعتمد على	walk through	يمشي عبر/يتجول عبر
grow in number	يزداد عددهم		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

extreme – disappear – in – grow

- The ice will in the hot sun.
- The heat of the desert is very in summer.
- The birds began to in numbers in the park.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
cut يقطع	cut	cut
lose يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym (meaning) مرادفها	Antonym (opposite) عكسها
endangered معرض للخطر	threatened مهدد	protected محمي
destroy يدمر/يحطم	ruin/damage يدمر/يتلف	fix/ establish يصلح/يؤسس
serious جاد/خطير	important/dangerous هام/خطير	unimportant/safe غير مهم/آمن

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
endanger (v) يعرض للخطر	-ed	تحويل إلى صفة	endangered (adj) معرض للخطر
environment (n) بيئة	-al		environmental (adj) بيئي
electric (adj) كهربائي	-ity		electricity (n) كهرباء
organize (v) ينظم	-ation	تحويل إلى اسم	organization (n) منظمة/مؤسسة
appear (v) يظهر	dis-	تعطي عكس الكلمة	disappear (ed) (v) يختفي/يتلاشى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Scientists work hard to protect endangered animals. The synonym of "endangered" is ".....".
a) positive b) threatened c) protected d) serious
- My teacher wants to establish a new science club. The antonym of "establish" is ".....".
a) ruin b) set up c) drop d) cut
- The magician made the rabbit appear in front of the whole class. To form the opposite of "appear", we add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) in- c) dis- d) im-
- Strong winds can destroy houses. The synonym of the word "destroy" is ".....".
a) important b) establish c) organize d) damage

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What environmental problems can you see in your city or country?
- 2 How can people help protect the Earth?

 Read the following text. Do you think technology can help solve environmental problems? How?

SB Page 91

In the last 50 years, **humans**⁽¹⁾ have cut down millions of trees and destroyed large areas of forest. As a result, many animals have lost their natural homes, and some species have become endangered. Scientists around the world have warned that **air pollution**⁽²⁾, plastic waste, and **climate change**⁽³⁾ have increased very quickly. Temperatures in many countries have risen, and the weather has become more extreme, with **floods**⁽⁴⁾, storms عواصف, and **droughts**⁽⁵⁾.



- | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| (1) البشر | (2) تلوث الهواء |
| (3) تغير المناخ | (4) فيضانات |
| (5) جفاف | (6) طاقته نظيفة |
| (7) منظمات | (8) حيوانات البائدة |
| (9) تغييرات | (10) تعتمد على |

However, there is also good news. People around the world have started to take action. Many countries have introduced recycling programs, and more families have used solar panels for **clean energy**⁽⁶⁾. In addition, **organizations**⁽⁷⁾ have protected endangered animals, such as **pandas**⁽⁸⁾, sea turtles السلاحف البحرية, and elephants. Although the problems are serious, humans have made positive **changes**⁽⁹⁾ to protect the planet. And if we use modern technology wisely to protect our environment, we will achieve our goals and make the Earth a better place to live in. The future **depends on**⁽¹⁰⁾ what we do today.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What problems have many animals faced because of human actions?
.....
- 2 What kind of weather problems are mentioned in the text?
.....
- 3 What endangered animals have organizations protected?
.....
- 4 What have many countries used to help the environment?
.....

Notes on Reading

Definitions التعريفات

extreme	شديد/قصوى	very strong, serious, or unusual
species	أنواع/فصائل	a group of animals or plants that are the same
recycling	إعادة التدوير	using old materials again to make new things
endangered	معرض للخطر	animals or plants that are at risk and may disappear from the world soon

Connectors

الروابط

كنتيجة لذلك

1 As a result, + (تبيين النتيجة) جملة كاملة

- The boy dropped his ice cream cone. **As a result**, it melted quickly on the ground.

كنتيجة لـ

2 as a result of + (n/v = ing) تبيين السبب

- The ice cream cone melted quickly on the ground **as a result of** dropping it.

لأن

3 because + (تبيين السبب) جملة كاملة

- Our team lost the match **because** they didn't train well.

ومع ذلك

4 However, + (تبيين التناقض) جملة كاملة

- The puppy was small. **However**, it was very brave when meeting the big dog.

مع أن

5 although + (تبيين التناقض) جملة كاملة

- Although** it was cold outside, the children played happily in the garden.

بالإضافة لذلك

6 in addition + (للإضافة) جملة كاملة

- I put on my warm coat. **In addition**, I wore my favorite wool hat.

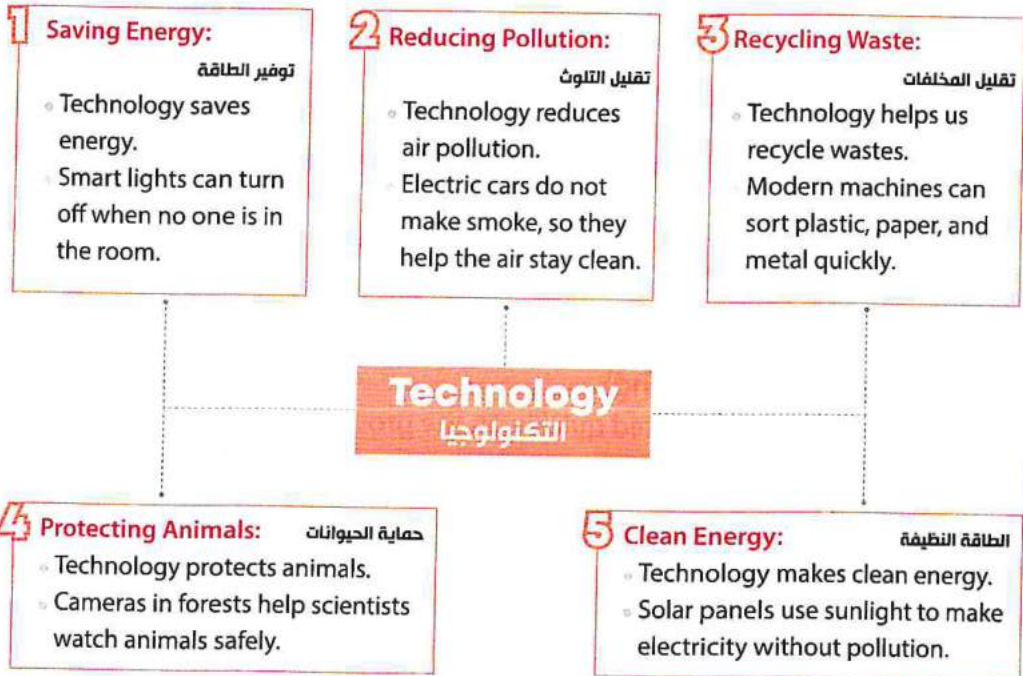
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- He didn't study hard., he got a low score on the test.
a) As a result of b) However c) In addition d) As a result
- She loves cats., she is allergic to them.
a) In addition b) As a result c) However d) Because
- it was dark, he wasn't scared.
a) In addition b) As a result c) However d) Although



How to write about technology and solving environmental problems

كيفية الكتابة عن التكنولوجيا وحل المشاكل البيئية



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Technology"

Technology can help solve many environmental problems around the world. For example, smart devices can save energy by turning off lights and machines when we do not need them. Technology also helps reduce pollution because electric cars make no smoke. Modern recycling machines can sort waste, so we can recycle more plastic and paper. Scientists use cameras and tracking tools to protect animals in danger. Clean energy, like solar panels and wind turbines, gives us electricity without harming the air. With these ideas, technology can make our world cleaner, safer, and better for all living things.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A sea turtle is endangered. It's because of water pollution.
a) protected b) threatened c) extreme d) positive
2. They destroyed the old forest last year. The antonym of "destroy" is
a) disappear b) warn c) establish d) cut
3. By deleting "e" and adding the suffix "....." to the verb "organize," we get the noun.
a) -al b) -ion c) -ity d) -ation
4. After the flood, many families had nowhere to sleep. They their homes.
a) took b) depended c) lost d) walked
5. My city uses solar on rooftops to make clean electricity.
a) droughts b) floods c) panels d) waste
6. Too much air from cars and factories makes it hard for us to breathe.
a) change b) pollution c) energy d) population
7. People should action to save nature.
a) produce b) take c) grow d) make
8. Endangered, like pandas and sea turtles, need our care.
a) panels b) storms c) materials d) species
9. The charity a new program to teach kids about recycling.
a) introduced b) lost c) warned d) disappeared
10. Many animals depend clean rivers, so we must stop throwing plastic waste.
a) through b) on c) at d) in

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

drought – floods – extreme – changes – species

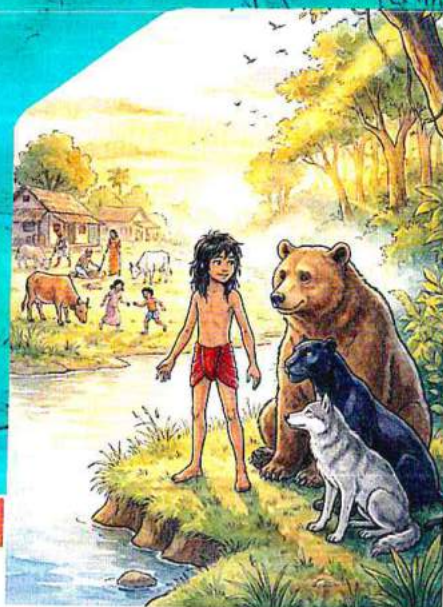
Climate change is a very big and serious problem for our planet today. The weather is becoming (1)..... in many different places around the world. Some hot countries have a long (2)..... because there is no rain for many months. Other wet places have (3)..... that cover the land with deep water. We must make small (4)..... in our lives to stop this extreme weather.

6

Chapter Six: Mowgli's Life Balance

Chapter (6) in points:

الفصل السادس في نقاط



1 Mowgli lived between the jungle and the village.

عاش ماوكلى بين الغابة والقرية.

2 He was loved and welcomed by Baloo, Bagheera, and the wolves.

أحبه بالو وباجيرى والذئاب ورحبوا به.

3 He helped the villagers protect their animals and crops.

ساعد أهل القرية في حماية حيواناتهم ومحاصيلهم.

4 Mowgli became a bridge between humans and nature.

أصبح ماوكلى جسراً بين البشر والطبيعة.

5 He protected the jungle from hunters who harmed animals.

حمى الغابة من الصيادين الذين يؤذون الحيوانات.

6 He also defended villagers during wild animal attacks.

ودافع عن أهل القرية أثناء هجمات الحيوانات المتوحشة.

7 Mowgli carried both the Law of the Jungle and human knowledge.

جمع ماوكلى بين قانون الغابة ومعرفة البشر.

8 He found peace by accepting both worlds.

وجد السلام عندما قبل العيش في العالمين.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

crop (n)	محصول/حصاد	sign (n)	علامة/إشارة/لافتة
peace (n)	سلام/هدوء	welcome (d) (v)	يرحب

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

accept (ed) (v)	يقبل/يوافق	defend (ed) (v)	يدافع عن/يحمي
alone (adj)	وحيد/منفرد	hunter (n)	صياد
balance (n)	توازن	knowledge (n)	معرفة
belonging (n)	انتماء	needlessly (adv)	بلا داعٍ/بدون سبب
blood (n)	دم	return (ed) (v)	يعود/يرجع
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى	unite (d) (v)	يوحد/يجمع

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

against	ضد/مقابل	create harmony	يخلق تناغمًا/يحقق انسجامًا
belong to	ينتمي إلى/يخص	end with	ينتهي/يختتم بـ
build relationship	يبنى/يقيم علاقة	keep connection with	يحافظ على التواصل مع
carry within	يحمل بداخله/في قلبه	keep ties with	يحافظ على الروابط مع
choose ... over	يختار/يفضل ... على	when necessary	عند الضرورة/عند الحاجة

Definitions التعريفات

crops	محاصيل	plants that farmers grow for food or other uses	متوحش (1)
beasts	حيوانات شرسة	wild ⁽¹⁾ or dangerous animals	
peace	سلام	state of calm, safety, and harmony ⁽²⁾	تجانس (2)
welcoming	حسن الاستقبال	behaving in a polite or friendly way	

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What qualities help people live in peace?
- 2 How can people build a good relationship between them and animals?

 Read the following text. What did Mowgli do to keep his connection with the jungle?

SB page 93

Chapter Six: Mowgli's Life Balance

Over time, Mowgli accepted that he belonged to both worlds. He returned often to the jungle, visiting Baloo, Bagheera, and his wolf brothers. They welcomed him as family, reminding⁽¹⁾ him that courage and loyalty were stronger than blood. At the same time, he kept ties with the village, helping humans⁽²⁾ protect their cattle⁽³⁾ and crops.

Who did Mowgli visit when he returned to the jungle?

Mowgli became a bridge between man and nature. He defended the jungle against hunters⁽⁴⁾ who killed needlessly, and he defended the villagers⁽⁵⁾ against wild animals when necessary. Through this balance, he found a new kind of peace.

How did Mowgli protect both the jungle and the villagers?

Mowgli carried within him the order of the Law of the Jungle⁽⁶⁾ and the knowledge⁽⁷⁾ of people. By uniting⁽⁸⁾ them, he discovered strength greater than either alone.

What two kinds of knowledge did Mowgli have?

The Jungle Book ends not with Mowgli choosing one world over the other, but with him welcoming⁽⁹⁾ both. His story remains a sign of courage, belonging, and balance between human and nature⁽¹⁰⁾.

Did Mowgli choose only one world or both?

(1) يذكر

(2) البشر

(3) قطيع

(4) صيادون

(5) قرويون

(6) قانون الغابة

(7) معرفة

(8) اتحاد/وحدة

(9) يرحب

(10) الطبيعة

Story Time **Q & A**

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Who did Mowgli visit when he returned to the jungle?

من الذي زاره ماوكلبي عندما عاد إلى الغابة؟

- He visited Baloo, Bagheera, and his wolf brothers.

2. What did Mowgli help the villagers protect?

ماذا ساعد ماوكلبي أهل القرية على حمايته؟

- He helped them protect their cattle and crops.

3. Who did Mowgli defend the jungle from?

ممن دافع ماوكلبي عن الغابة؟

- He defended the jungle from hunters.

4. What two kinds of knowledge did Mowgli carry?

ما نوعا المعرفة اللذان حملهما ماوكلبي؟

- He carried the Law of the Jungle and the knowledge of people.

5. Did Mowgli choose only one world at the end? Why?

هل اختار ماوكلبي عالماً واحداً في النهاية؟

- No, he welcomed both worlds. He found peace by accepting both worlds.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Mowgli felt close to both worlds?

برأيك، لماذا شعر ماوكلبي بالقرب من العالمين؟

- Because he had a family in the jungle and responsibilities in the village.

2. Why is it important that Mowgli defended both humans and animals?

لماذا من المهم أن يدافع ماوكلبي عن البشر والحيوانات؟

- Because it shows he cared about both sides and wanted peace.

3. How do you think Mowgli felt when he balanced both worlds?

كيف تعتقد أن ماوكلبي شعر عندما حقق التوازن بين العالمين؟

- He probably felt peaceful and proud.

4. What can we learn from Mowgli's courage and loyalty?

ماذا يمكن أن نتعلم من شجاعة ماوكلبي وولائه؟

- We learn to be brave and loyal to the people we love.

5. Why is accepting both sides of his life a strong choice for Mowgli?

لماذا يُعد قبول ماوكلبي للعالمين قراراً قوياً؟

- Because it helped him become stronger and wiser.

Chapter 6 Exercises

1 Match the words from column (A) with their meanings from column (B):

A

1. crops
2. beasts
3. peace
4. welcoming

B

- a) wild or dangerous animals
- b) state of calm, safety, and harmony
- c) plants that farmers grow for food or other uses
- d) behaving in a polite or friendly way

2 Read and put (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli never returned to the jungle after living with humans. (.....)
2. Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and crops. (.....)
3. Mowgli fought only for humans and never for the jungle. (.....)
4. Mowgli found peace by accepting both sides of himself. (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Baloo and Bagheera welcomed Mowgli as
a) student b) family c) enemy d) leader
2. Mowgli defended villagers against wild
a) birds b) hunters c) farmers d) animals
3. Mowgli's story became a sign of courage and
a) danger b) balance c) sadness d) hopeless

4 Answer the following questions:

1. How did the animals welcome Mowgli when he visited the jungle?
2. What two groups did Mowgli protect?
3. What is the lesson we learn from Mowgli's story?
4. How did Mowgli's story end?

5 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

1. How can people today create harmony between life and the environment?
2. What does Mowgli's story teach us about balancing different parts of our lives (family, culture, nature, and responsibility)?
3. What makes Mowgli a true hero: his strength, his courage, or his wisdom?

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mowgli visited the jungle often because he felt a strong tie to his family.
a) human b) wolf c) city d) royal
- The wolves welcomed him and reminded him that was stronger than blood.
a) fear b) loyalty c) danger d) food
- Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and
a) roads b) crops c) toys d) ships
- He defended the jungle from hunters who killed
a) proudly b) quickly c) needlessly d) slowly
- Mowgli found peace by balancing the jungle and the
a) sea b) mountains c) forest d) village

2 Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Mowgli stopped visiting the jungle because the animals no longer trusted him. (.....)
- He protected both the villagers and the jungle when danger came. (.....)
- Mowgli carried only human knowledge and forgot the Law of the Jungle. (.....)
- At the end of the story, he chose only the village and left the jungle forever. (.....)
- Mowgli found new peace by accepting both worlds as part of his life. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why did Mowgli return often to the jungle?
.....
- How did Mowgli help the villagers in their daily lives?
.....
- What two kinds of knowledge did Mowgli carry inside him?
.....
- Why do you think Mowgli defended the jungle from hunters?
.....
- Why do you think Mowgli didn't choose only one world at the end of the story?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To form the adjective from the verb "endanger", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ed b) -al c) -tion d) -ment
2. It's a serious topic that needs to be discussed. The antonym of "serious" is ".....".
a) unimportant b) dangerous c) risk d) active
3. Pandas are starting to in numbers.
a) take b) grow c) lose d) raise
4. "....." is the act of using old things to make new things instead of throwing them away.
a) Cutting b) Recycling c) Destroying d) Producing

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Our beautiful planet Earth has many big problems today. Pollution is very bad for the air and water. We need to help the environment now. Technology is a very useful tool for us. Scientists write environment reports on computers to show us facts. These important reports tell us where the pollution is. Drones are small flying machines that can see trash in the ocean. They take pictures so we can clean it up. Satellites in space watch our green forests. They show us if trees are cut down. We can use this new technology to solve hard problems. If we read the reports, we will know how to save nature. We must work together to keep the Earth happy, clean, and safe for everyone.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
a) how to fly a drone b) swimming in the ocean
c) using technology to help Earth d) writing on paper
2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the
a) computers b) drones c) reports d) scientists

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What do the satellites in space watch?

.....

4. Why are environment reports important?

.....

5. How do you think drones help us clean the oceans?

.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli understood both the Law of the Jungle and human customs. (.....)
2. He protected the villagers from wild animals when necessary. (.....)
3. The hunters killed animals needlessly, and Mowgli ignored it. (.....)
4. Mowgli welcomed both worlds instead of choosing only one. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How was life in the village different from life in the jungle for Mowgli?

6. Why do you think Mowgli was stronger when he united both kinds of knowledge?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mariam has studied English for five years. (since)

2. The train left the station a very short time ago. (just)

3. My father bought a new black car. (this year)

4. I actually solved the problem. (already)

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Solving environmental problems"



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ziad did not visit the Pyramids at any time. (never)

2. The students answered all the questions on the test. (already)

3. They visited the museum and they are back home now. (been to)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

environment (n)	بيئة	reporter (n)	صحفي/مراسل
issues (n)	قضايا/مشاكل	topic (n)	موضوع/عنوان

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	likely (adj/adv)	محتمل/من المحتمل
besides (adv)	بالإضافة إلى/إلى جانب	ordinary (adj)	عادي
cloth bag (n)	حقيبة قماشية	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
conserve (d) (v)	يحافظ على/يصون	reuse (d) (v)	يعيد الاستخدام
cycle (d) (v)	يركب الدراجة	simple (adj)	بسيط/سهل
environmental expert (n)	خبير بيئي	solution (n)	حل
future generations (n)	الأجيال القادمة/المستقبلية	waste (d) (n/v)	نفايات/يهدر

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

besides	بالإضافة إلى/إلى جانب	reduce pollution	يقلل التلوث
create change for	يحدث تغيير لـ	save energy	يوفر/يحفظ الطاقة
do actions	يقوم بإجراءات/ينفذ أفعال	suffer from	يعاني/يتألم من
Earth's future	مستقبل الأرض	throw away	يرمي بعيداً/يتخلص من
make a difference	يحدث فرقاً	turn off lights	يطفئ الأنوار
on the ground	على الأرض		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

save – cycle – issues – in – away

- I bought a new bike, so I to school every day.
- Pollution is one of the biggest in the world.
- Don't throw your old books.
- People energy by turning off lights.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
tell	يخبر	told	told
make	يصنع	made	made

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
positive	إيجابي	hopeful	مفعم بالأمل	negative	سلبي
likely	محتمل	probable	محتمل	unlikely	غير محتمل
reduce	يقلل	cut down/lower	يقلل	increase	يزيد
conserve	يصون	save/preserve	يحافظ على	waste	يهدر/يضيع

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
report (v)	يبلغ	-er			reporter (n)	صحفي/مراسل
responsible (adj)	مسئول	-ity		تحويل إلى اسم	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
differ (v)	يختلف	-ence			difference (n)	اختلاف
use (v)	يستخدم	re-		تعطى الإعادة	reuse (v)	يعيد الاستخدام

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We need to add the suffix "....." to the verb "differ" to change it into a noun.
a) -er b) -ity c) re- d) -ence
- It's likely that it will rain tomorrow, but it's that we'll go to school.
a) probable b) unlikely c) ordinary d) reused
- Scientists always try to conserve natural resources. They try to them.
a) waste b) reduce c) suffer d) save
- We should reduce our plastic use to save the environment. The synonym of "reduce" is ".....".
a) increase b) cut down c) keep d) improve

Reading Text

Pre-reading question: - What can we do to help the environment?

Lesson 5

 **Read the following dialog.**

SB Page 95

Reporter Our planet seems to be facing many challenges. Could you tell us what the biggest problems are?

Environmental Expert Yes, Earth is suffering from **pollution**⁽¹⁾, cutting down **forests**⁽²⁾, and **climate change**⁽³⁾. These are serious **issues**⁽⁴⁾ that affect all living things.

Reporter What simple actions can ordinary people take to help?

Environmental Expert People can reduce waste, reuse materials, and recycle old things. Even small actions can make a big difference when many people do them.

Reporter Energy use is also a big topic. What can we do to save energy?

Environmental Expert Turning off lights when they are not needed, using less water, and choosing to walk or **cycle**⁽⁵⁾ instead of driving are all great ways to reduce pollution.

Reporter Trees seem very important for the Earth. Why is that?

Environmental Expert Trees clean the air, give us oxygen, and provide homes for animals and birds.

Reporter Finally, do you think it is important for people to learn about the **environment**⁽⁶⁾?

Environmental Expert Sure. When people learn about the environment, they are more likely to protect it. Small actions, if done by millions, can create a huge positive change for the Earth's future.



(1) تلوث

(2) غابات

(3) تغير المناخ

(4) قضايا

(5) يركب دراجة

(6) البيئة

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What problems is the Earth facing today?
- 2 How can recycling help the planet?
- 3 Why is planting trees important?
- 4 How can we save energy?
- 5 What happens when people learn more about the environment?

Pre-reading question:

- How can we help our planet?

 Read the following poster.

Lesson 6

SB Page 97

SAVE THE EARTH!

"Small actions make a big difference"

Why Should We Save the Earth?

- Because our planet gives us air, water, and life.
- Pollution and wastes are harming animals and people.
- We must protect it for future generations.

What can we do?

- Recycle plastic, paper, and glass.
- Reduce waste—don't throw rubbish on the ground.
- Reduce using plastic bags and plastic bottles.
- Plant trees and save energy.
- Protect animals and clean your area.
- Join your school "Green Team".
- Let's work together to keep our planet clean and green!



Writing a Poster

1. Choose a catchy title:

اختر عنواناً جذاباً.

- Make it short and clear.

e.g. Save Our Planet!

2. Use short sentences and action words.

استخدم جملًا قصيرة وكلمات فعلية.

3. Use colors, pictures, and clear spacing.

استخدم الألوان والصور والمسافات الواضحة.

4. Add a slogan or call to action.

أضف شعاراً أو دعوة للعمل.

e.g. Act today for a better tomorrow!

Post-reading question:

SB

- Can you make a fantastic poster to encourage your classmates to reduce waste at your school?

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

أدخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدم تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

نزل التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء:
www.aladwaa.com



LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If we don't act now, future generations will from our environmental mistakes.
a) affect b) suffer c) cycle d) reuse
- The environmental expert gave a clear solution to reduce waste and energy.
a) throw b) turn c) do d) save
- Adding the prefix "....." to the verb "use" changes the meaning to be "to use again".
a) en- b) im- c) re- d) dis-
- Plastic bags harm nature, so it's better to carry a bag when shopping.
a) cloth b) future c) useless d) harmful
- "Probable" is the synonym of the word ".....", which means expected.
a) ordinary b) simple c) likely d) conserve
- We must pollution by turning off lights and using less water at home.
a) make b) suffer c) reduce d) do
- The opposite of "reduce" is "....." which means to become greater in size or amount.
a) limit b) waste c) increase d) allow
- Everyone has a to protect the environment for Earth's future.
a) waste b) reporter c) responsibility d) difference
- You can changes for Earth's future by reusing old items.
a) create b) conserve c) reduce d) do
- Don't just throw things Try to recycle them.
a) down b) out c) along d) away

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

lights – reuse – save – waste – simple

We want to keep our planet clean and safe for everyone. It is a (1) job to help the Earth every day. We must not (2) water when we brush our teeth in the morning. Always turn off the (3) before you leave your bedroom or the kitchen. We can also (4) old jars to keep pencils or small toys inside them. Small actions make a big change.



How to write about saving the Earth

كيفية الكتابة عن إنقاذ الأرض

1 Why is Earth Important?

لماذا الأرض مهمة؟

- The Earth is our home.
- It gives us clean air to breathe.
- It gives us fresh water to drink.
- It gives us food to eat.

2 What are the Problems?

ما هي المشاكل؟

- There is too much pollution.
- The air and water are dirty.
- People cut down too many trees.
- There is too much trash everywhere.

Saving our planet

إنقاذ كوكبنا

3 What can we do? (Solutions)

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟ (الحلول)

- **Reduce:** Use less plastic and water.
- **Reuse:** Use bags and bottles again.
- **Recycle:** Put plastic, paper, and glass in the recycling bin.
- **Protect:** Plant trees and save energy.
- **Keep Clean:** Do not throw trash on the ground.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Saving our planet"

Our Earth is very important because it is our home. It gives us clean air, water, and food. But our planet has many problems. There is a lot of pollution and trash. To help, we can do many simple things. We can reduce the use of plastic. We can reuse bags and bottles. We can also recycle paper and plastic. Planting trees is another good idea because trees clean the air. We must not throw rubbish on the ground. If we all work together, our small actions can make a big difference. Let's protect our beautiful planet for the future.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Someone who studies climate problems is called an environmental
a) expert b) topic c) solution d) cloth
- The doctor told him to reduce the amount of sugar he eats. The synonym of "reduce" is ".....".
a) affect b) cut down c) keep d) remove
- If we delete "e" and add the suffix "....." to "responsible", we get the noun that means duty.
a) -tion b) -ness c) -ity d) -ly
- a small difference can help the environment.
a) Making b) Taking c) Throwing d) Suffering

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

cycle – clean – environment – increase – reduce

Many people want to stop the pollution in our cities today. We need to protect the (1)..... from all the bad smoke and trash. It is good to (2)..... to school instead of taking a car. You can (3)..... the use of plastic by carrying a strong cloth bag for your shopping. These ideas help the air stay fresh and (4)..... for all the children.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Rania made a delicious cake a very short time ago. (just)
.....
- The little girl lost her doll in the park yesterday. She can't find it yet. (since yesterday)
.....
- Last summer, we traveled to the sea for our holiday. (recently)
.....
- He ate a sandwich 2 hours ago. (already)
.....

4 Complete the following dialog:

Aya and Nour are talking about environmental problems.

Aya : What problems is our Earth facing today?

Nour : I think pollution and (1)..... down trees are the most important.

Aya : Yes, that's true. Why is (2)..... dangerous?

Nour : Because it makes the air and water dirty. Besides, it can harm animals.

Aya : Also, we should recycle materials to help our (3)..... stay clean.

Nour : Let's also walk to school instead of using cars.

Aya : Together, we can make a big (4).....

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"How to help the environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My mother went to the market and didn't come back yet. (has gone)

.....

2. A moment ago, the phone rang in the living room. (just)

.....

3. Kareem last bought a new pen for school a week ago. (since)

.....

4. Samir went to his village and he is still there. (gone)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
sight	منظر	countable	يُعد
fade	يتلاشى	unthreatened	غير مهدد
way out	مخرج	intense	مكثف

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract information:

استخراج المعلومات

عليك قراءة السؤال جيدًا والتركيز على أداة الاستفهام لمعرفة المطلوب جيدًا ثم العودة للنص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

In the last 50 years, humans have cut down millions of trees and destroyed large areas of forest. As a result, many animals have lost their natural homes, and some species have become endangered. Scientists around the world have warned that air pollution, plastic waste, and climate change have increased very quickly.

1. Why have many animals lost their natural homes?
2. What have scientists warned about in recent years?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- We should recycle materials to help our environment stay clean.

- ☐ - يجب علينا إعادة تدوير المواد لمساعدة بيئتنا على البقاء نظيفة.
- ☐ - يجب علينا إعادة تدوير المواد للحفاظ على نظافة كوكبنا.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- لقد استخدمت العديد من العائلات الألواح الشمسية للحصول على الطاقة النظيفة.

- ☐ Many families have used solar panels to get clean energy.
- ☐ Many families used solar panels to get cheap energy.

gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية
mountain	جبل/مرتفع
incredible	لا يصدق/مذهل/رائع
radiation	إشعاع
landscape	منظر طبيعي
rainforest	غابة مطيرة
adventure	مغامرة
researchers	باحثون
beauty	جمال
iceberg	جبل جليدي
volcanoes	براكين
waterfall	شلل
endangered	معرض للخطر
recycling	إعادة التدوير
extreme	شديد/قصوى
species	أنواع/فصائل
environment	بيئة
reporter	صحفي/مراسل
issues	قضايا/مشاكل
topic	موضوع/عنوان
mysterious	غامض
deserve (d)	يستحق
species	أنواع/فصائل

The Present Perfect Tense

1. Affirmative:

Subject + has/have + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. I have watched the match.

Mona has eaten lunch since 2 o'clock.

2. Negative:

Subject + hasn't/haven't + (P.P) التصريف الثالث للفعل

e.g. I haven't watched the match.

Mona hasn't eaten lunch yet.

3. Keywords:

(just)

e.g. I have just eaten my food.

(already)

e.g. I have already met Nadia.

I have booked the tickets already.

(yet)

e.g. Has Ali bought a cellphone yet?

(ever)

e.g. Have you ever been to Paris?

(never)

e.g. I have never traveled abroad.

We have never lived in Giza.

(for)

e.g. I have spoken English for 26 years.

(since)

e.g. I have spoken English since 2000.

A. Speaking

Asking and answering about natural wonders

1. What's the most amazing natural wonder you have visited?

The Great Barrier Reef. It's like a magical underwater city.

2. What do you think makes a place amazing?

A place is amazing when it is very big, beautiful, or full of interesting animals.

3. Which natural wonder do you find the most amazing? Why?

I find the Grand Canyon the most amazing because it is very big and colorful.

4. What have you learned about it?

I learned that it is very old and that nature works slowly to make it beautiful.

B. Writing

Helping the environment

People can help the environment in many easy ways. First, we should save energy by turning off lights and electronics when we do not need them. We can also use less water by taking shorter showers and fixing leaks. Recycling paper, plastic, and glass helps reduce waste. Planting trees is another great way to protect nature because trees clean the air. It is also helpful to use reusable bags and bottles instead of single-use plastic. When everyone works together, the environment becomes cleaner and healthier for all living things.

A Vocabulary**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The Nile Valley has one of the most beautiful in the world.
a) landscapes b) beaches c) lakes d) shores
2. Scientists study solar to understand its effect on Earth.
a) pollution b) reflection c) radiation d) rotation
3. The Amazon is a large tropical full of rare plants and animals.
a) desert b) rainforest c) mountain d) ocean
4. Cutting down too many trees can many animal species.
a) delay b) harm c) improve d) train
5. helps protect the environment and reduces waste.
a) Traveling b) Building c) Recycling d) Cooking

B Language**2 Use the correct form of the verb in the Present Perfect tense:**

1. She has already (saw) that movie.
2. They (not/eat) breakfast yet.
3. I (just/wrote) my report.
4. He (finish) his homework already.
5. We (not/visit) the museum yet.

C Writing**3 Design a poster of (90–100 words) about:**

"Saving Energy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hassan and Jana have a project about
a) space b) Mars c) Earth d) school
- The Earth spins on its axis one time every
a) hour b) week c) year d) day

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What does Jana like?

.....

- What does the spinning give us?

.....

- What do they want to make?

.....

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We shouldn't destroy something new. The antonym of "destroy" is ".....".
a) disappear b) establish c) warn d) lose
- The adjective "electric" becomes a noun when we add the suffix ".....".
a) -tion b) -al c) -ity d) -ation
- Many families homes when a big flood covers their village.
a) take b) lose c) grow d) depend
- A "....." is a group of the same animals or plants, like all lions or roses.
a) species b) carpet c) material d) drought

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

waterfall – river – sights – breathtaking – Canyon

My family went on a long trip to see beautiful mountains. First, we visited the Grand (1)..... which is very big and red. The view from the top was truly (2)..... and very special. We walked for a long time to see a huge (3)..... dropping from a river down. We saw many nice (4)..... during our long walk. Nature can offer us happy times when we are outside playing with our friends.



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I did not finish doing my homework. (yet)

.....

2. Adam fixed his old bike a very short time ago. (just)

.....

3. The bright sun shone in the sky all morning long. (this morning)

.....

4. Yesterday, my father traveled to Tokyo. (already)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Youssef and Hana are talking about saving water.

Youssef : Do not leave the water running, Hana.

Hana : (1)..... should I turn it off?

Youssef : Because we need to save water every day.

Hana : Is water (2)..... for the Earth?

Youssef : Yes, all animals and plants need it.

Hana : I will turn off the tap now.

Youssef : Thank you (3)..... helping the planet.

Hana : You're (4).....

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"How to help our planet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- have a traditional lifestyle that depends on nomadic movement.
a) Explorers b) Tourists c) Bedouins d) Researchers
- To form the noun of "survive," we delete "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ion c) -ly d) -al
- The synonym of "rare" is a word that means something not commonly found, like ".....".
a) common b) ordinary c) similar d) unusual
- In the desert, many animals find shade to escape the burning heat during the day.
a) across b) underground c) over d) through
- The is a tree that provides food and shade in the harsh desert.
a) mirror b) date palm c) branch d) iceberg
- The temperature drops to levels in the desert at night, making it very cold.
a) peaceful b) simple c) freezing d) bright
- A good desert guide knows how to water, create shelter, and build a fire safely.
a) store b) gather c) power d) damage
- If you unwell in the desert, try to stay calm, rest, and take a sip of water.
a) feel b) get c) stay d) go
- We add the prefix "....." to "appear" to form the opposite.
a) un- b) dis- c) im- d) in-
- Many homes use to get clean energy from the sun.
a) heavy rains b) solar panels
c) ocean water d) climate change
- Adding the suffix "....." to the noun "peace" creates the adjective meaning quiet.
a) -ive b) -less c) -ous d) -ful
- The antonym of "damage" is a word that means to fix something, like ".....".
a) harm b) waste c) remove d) repair
- helps reduce plastic waste and protects the environment.
a) Gravity b) Recycling c) Radiation d) Cycling

14. When a car breaks in the desert, it's important to wait for help.

a) down

b) for

c) at

d) out

15. Environmental warn that climate change may cause more droughts and floods.

a) species

b) experts

c) travelers

d) photographers

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Nour didn't finish her science homework. (yet)

2. Ali watched a funny movie with his family last night. (at 9 last night)

3. Malak cooked a very big lunch for us a moment ago. (just)

4. The happy students have learned a lot of new words. (yesterday)

5. Hanaa has had her red car since 2021. (for)

6. Youssef walked to his school yesterday. (yesterday morning)

7. Hoda read an interesting book about wild animals last week. (this week)

8. My sister was sleeping when I came into the room. (While)

9. Seif has lived in Cairo for ten years. (since)

10. Nehal painted her room a week ago. (last)

11. They were eating their dinner when the doorbell rang suddenly. (while)

12. Tarek cleaned his dirty bedroom two hours ago. (lately)

13. Rania bought some fresh fruit from the market. (already)

14. The teacher explained the new lesson yesterday. (at 10 a.m. yesterday)

15. Shams has known her best friend for three years. (since)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) species – sandstorm – rainforest – endangered – recycling

Our planet has many beautiful places like the green forests. The (1)..... is home to many amazing animals and plants. Sadly, some of these (2)..... are in danger because people cut down the trees. Many animals are now (3)..... and might disappear from the world soon. We must help by cleaning up trash and using (4)..... to save nature. We can make the world a better place for everyone.

B) steep – climber – view – ocean – mountain

My uncle loves to go on long trips in nature. Last summer, he went up a very high (1)..... covered in cold white snow. He is a strong (2)..... who walks for many hours every day. The rocky path was very (3)..... and hard to walk on safely. When he finally got to the very top, the (4)..... of the green valley below was truly incredible to see.

4 Complete the following dialogs:

A) Tarek and Hoda are talking about the desert.

Tarek : Do you like desert life or city life, Hoda?

Hoda : I like the soft sand of the (1).....

Tarek : (2)..... can you do in the desert?

Hoda : I can ride a camel and sleep in a tent. What (3)..... you?

Tarek : I like the city because I can ride the bus.

Hoda : The city has too much smoke for me.

Tarek : (4)..... you miss using your cell phone in the desert?

Hoda : No, I wouldn't. I love nature more.

B) Mostafa is telling Salma about recycling.

Mostafa: Do not throw that paper away.

Salma : I (1)..... need it anymore.

Mostafa: You can use the other side.

Salma : (2)..... do we need to do that?

Mostafa: Because that saves paper and trees.

Salma : (3)..... if I finish both sides?

Mostafa: Then we put it in the recycling bin.

Salma : (4)..... is like magic for trash.

Review 4

LESSON

1



1 Listen to the audio, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We can help the Earth by trees.
 - planting
 - cutting
 - burning
 - ignoring
- Walking or cycling instead of driving can help reduce
 - energy
 - pollution
 - recycling
 - trees

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What are two ways things we can do to protect the Earth in our daily life?
.....
- Why is it important for everyone to work together to protect the environment?
.....

2 Complete the following dialog:

Tom and James are talking about fairy tales.

Tom : I like reading fairy tales. They are fun!

James : Me too! I like the magical places and exciting stories.

Tom : (1).....

James : Yes! The characters, like heroes and princesses, are interesting.

Tom : (2).....

James : Right! They teach us important values in a fun way.

Tom : (3).....?

James : I like "Cinderella" because it shows that being kind can bring happiness.

Tom : (4).....?

James : Yes! I think fairy tales are always special because they make people imagine and dream.

3 Fill in the spaces with words from the box:

irrigation – precious – radiation – slippers – harsh

1. The desert has a very climate with little rain.
2. Sunscreen can protect your skin from
3. Water is a resource that we should not waste.
4. She wore comfortable around the house.
5. Farmers use systems to supply water to their crops.

4 Write a paragraph of (90-100) words about "Healthy Habits".

.....

.....

.....

.....

LESSON

2

1 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The desert is a dry and hot place with very little water. People and animals living there must adapt to survive. Camels, for example, can go a long time without water, and many desert animals are active at night when it is cooler. People in the desert often wear light clothing to stay cool and use special methods to find and save water. Life in the desert can be difficult, but it is also unique and full of interesting plants and animals.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People and animals living in the desert must to survive.
a) adapt b) stay c) plant d) water
2. Many desert animals are active at when it is cooler.
a) night b) morning c) noon d) evening
3. People in the desert wear clothing to stay cool.
a) heavy b) dark c) light d) warm

B) Answer the following questions:

4. How do camels and other desert animals survive without much water?
.....
5. Why is life in the desert difficult, but also interesting?
.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Objects fall to the ground because of
a) wind b) friction c) gravity d) electricity
2. Many animals have special to survive in their environment.
a) attraction b) invention c) decoration d) adaptation
3. We took many photos of the beautiful during our trip to the mountains.
a) landscape b) classroom c) vehicle d) building
4. A decade is a period of years.
a) one b) five c) ten d) twenty
5. Many different live in the Amazon rainforest, each with its own culture and traditions.
a) mountains b) cities c) schools d) tribes
6. She already finished her homework.
a) have b) is c) has d) was
7. She TV when her friend called.
a) watched b) watches c) is watching d) was watching
8. By the time we arrived, the movie already started.
a) is b) has c) had d) was
9. I my homework yesterday.
a) do b) did c) doing d) does
10. I TV when my friend called me last night.
a) watched b) was watching c) watch d) am watching

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. She was reading a book when the phone rang. (While)

.....

2. They have studied English since 2012. (for)

.....

3. The train had left before I arrived at the station. (After)

.....

The Story

4 A) Answer the following questions:

1. How did Mowgli feel after defeating Shere Khan, and why was it a mix of victory and sadness?
.....
2. Why did Mowgli decide to leave the wolf pack and join the human village?
.....
3. How did Mowgli balance life between the jungle and the human village, and what lesson does this teach?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. Mowgli learned to care for the village's, protecting them from predators.
a) houses b) crops c) cattle d) roads
5. After the battle, many wolves Mowgli, believing humans could not belong in the jungle.
a) welcomed b) rejected c) followed d) ignored
6. By uniting the jungle and humans, Mowgli discovered that was greater than either alone.
a) courage b) strength c) fire d) water

5 Write a paragraph of about (90-100) words on the following:

"Saving Energy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening Texts

Unit 7 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Youssef's typical morning starts at 6:40. He washes his face and eats cheese and eggs for breakfast. He packs his blue backpack. He always checks if his science homework is inside. He catches the bus at 7:25. On the bus, he sometimes talks to his classmate Sami. His school day includes math, English, and art. During class time, he always pays attention to the teacher. After school, he gets home, rests, has lunch and does homework.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 7

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

My sister, Lina, plans her week on Sunday, and she writes everything in order. Her period for science is at 10 a.m., so she always checks her lab book the night before. She says being disorganized makes her busy and stressed. When the art fair came, she prepared for it for two weeks. She produced beautiful drawings and got the best result. She says if you manage your time effectively, life runs smoothly.

Unit 8 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

I am Ahmed. I used to think only books could help me learn. But my cousin invited me to try a brain training game. I was afraid I'd be too slow. But the game was interesting. My memory improved. My teacher says I speak more clearly. I believe games can make you smarter. I don't play for fun only. I play to grow.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 8

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

I'm Mariam. I don't like textbooks. But I love song lyrics. I write down the words and read them aloud. The rhythm helps me remember the meaning. Last week, I turned the definition

of "feedback" into a little poem. I record myself saying the words. I play them while I walk to school. "My ears work better than my eyes." If you speak it, you own it.

Unit 9 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

My name is Salma. My dream job is to help patients and give them treatment. My job requires me to communicate clearly, and take responsibility. I'm studying hard to get a university degree. My teacher says I must act like a professional. I want to inspire other young people to choose this career. I believe medicine is important for society.

AI-Adwaa Test on Unit 9

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

My cousin, Karim, is a mechanical engineer. He must design a machine, test equipment, and fix problems. He doesn't have a university degree yet, but he completed technical training and got a certificate. His employer says his talent is amazing. Karim says teamwork and communication are very important. His dream job is to build a bridge for his town.

Review 3

Listen to the audio, then choose the correct answer:

Many people enjoy playing games on their phones, computers, or consoles. But do in games make you smarter? Some studies have shown that certain games can improve memory, problem-solving skills, and concentration. Puzzle games, strategy games, and brain-training apps help players think carefully and make quick decisions. However, it is important to play in moderation. Spending too much time on games can badly affect schoolwork, sleep, and health. When used wisely, games can be fun and also help your brain work better.

Unit 10 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Hana lost her favorite red ball in the big park yesterday. She looked under the green trees and behind the wooden benches. She felt very sad and wanted to cry. Suddenly, her friend Ahmed shouted loudly. He found the ball near the yellow swings! Hana was so happy. She thanked Ahmed and they played football together until the sun went down. It was a great day.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Goha is a famous character in many funny old stories. One day, Goha wanted to sell his donkey at the market. He walked with his son and the donkey. People laughed and said they should ride it. Goha and his son both rode the donkey. Then people said the poor animal was tired. Goha learned he cannot make everyone happy.

Unit 11 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Hassan lives in a small village in the desert. It is very hot there in the summer. They have three camels and some goats. They drink water from a deep well. At night, it becomes cold. Hassan likes to look at the bright stars. He eats dates and drinks milk every morning for breakfast.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Tarek lives in Cairo. It is a very busy city. There are tall buildings everywhere. He hears loud noise all day. He wants to go to the desert for a holiday. The desert has no tall buildings. It has soft sand and small plants. Tarek wants to relax there. He wants to sit on the sand and listen to nothing. He needs a break from the noise.

Unit 12 Test yourself Lessons (1 & 2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

The Earth is the special planet where we all live together. People call it the Blue Planet because it has so much water. The big oceans cover most of our world. There is also land where we build our houses and cities. The Earth goes around the hot sun one time every year. We must keep our planet clean and safe for animals.

Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Hassan and Jana have a school project about the Earth. Hassan says the Earth is very old and big. Jana likes the animals that live on land and in the sea. They learned that the Earth spins around one time every day. This spinning gives us day and night. They want to make a poster to show how to protect nature.

Review 4

Listen to the audio, then answer the questions:

Our planet is important, and we all need to take care of it. Pollution, deforestation, and climate change are harming the environment. We can help by recycling, saving energy, and planting trees. Using less plastic and walking or cycling instead of driving can also make a difference. Everyone can do small things to protect the Earth. If we all work together, we can make the planet cleaner and healthier for future generations.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 7

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Don't run near the swimming pool.
2. You should help your neighbor carry the heavy bags.
3. Never speak loudly in the library.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Don't be late for your doctor's appointment.
2. You should read English books every evening.
3. You should wear a helmet when cycling.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Always check your timetable.
2. You shouldn't tell lies.
3. You should practice speaking English.
4. Never eat unhealthy food.

Unit 8

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Mazen didn't practice the piano. However, he played very well at the concert.
2. I enjoy swimming in the pool, but I am afraid of the sea.
3. My sister loves drawing, while I prefer listening to music.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. They bought ice cream. However, it melted before they ate it.
2. I like playing football, while my best friend likes chess.
3. She didn't study for the quiz, but she got full marks.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Some people like coffee, while others prefer tea.
2. She studied hard for the test. However, she found the questions difficult.
3. She wanted to go swimming, but it was raining outside.

Unit 9

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Nabil was ill, so he didn't come to school.
2. Since you're here early, we can start the meeting.
3. Basmala passed the exam because she studied hard.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. It was raining; as a result, we stayed at home.
2. The phone rang loudly; therefore, I answered it.
3. Since Hamza missed the bus, he was late for school.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Hazem wins since he plays football well.
2. Fatma felt ill, so she went to the doctor.
3. It's sunny today; therefore, Hesham is wearing his hat.
4. The teacher is explaining, so the students are quiet.

Unit 10

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Lessons 1 & 2

1. By the time it started to rain, they had left the house.
2. He had cleaned his room before his mom came in.
3. After we had bought tickets, the concert began.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. My friend didn't come over until I had cleaned my room.
2. We had got to the station by the time the bus left.
3. After Mazin had finished his homework, he played video games.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. After we had found our seats, the concert started.
2. Hatim had turned off the lights before he went to sleep.
3. The mom had already prepared the milk when the baby cried.
4. We ate dinner after we had washed our hands.

Unit 11

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Lessons 1 & 2

1. We were sleeping in bed when it rained heavily.
2. While Salma was eating snacks, her sister was playing computer games.
3. He fell asleep while he was watching the movie.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. It rained while we were playing chess.
2. My parents were watching TV when I returned home.
3. He was staying near the salt lake all yesterday afternoon.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Judy was playing with her doll when her brother took it.
2. When Basma's pencil broke, she was drawing a picture.
3. While she was walking in the street, she dropped her sunglasses.
4. When Anas fell off, he was riding his bike.

Unit 12

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

Lessons 1 & 2

1. We have already eaten our lunch.
2. You haven't finished your homework yet.
3. My uncle has been to Rome.
4. I haven't met my friends since I was in Alexandria.

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Ziad has never visited the Pyramids.
2. The students have already answered all the questions on the test.
3. They have been to the museum.

Lessons 5 & 6

1. My mother has gone to the market.
2. The phone has just rung in the living room.
3. Kareem has had a new pen for school since last week.
4. Samir has gone to his village.

Group 1:

All three forms are the same

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
bet	يراهن	bet	bet
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
hurt	يصيب/يؤذي	hurt	hurt
let	يسمح/يدع	let	let
put	يضع	put	put
put out	يطفئ	put out	put out
read	يقرأ	read	read
rid	يزيل	rid	rid
set	يعد/يجهز	set	set
shut	يغلق	shut	shut
split	يفصل	split	split
sweat	يعرق	sweat	sweat

Group 2:

The 2nd and 3rd forms are the same

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
bleed	ينزف	bled	bled
bring	يحضّر	brought	brought
build	يبني	built	built
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يمسك/يلحق/يصطاد	caught	caught
feel	يحس/يشعر	felt	felt
fight	يحارب	fought	fought
find	يجد	found	found
get	يحصل	got	got

have	يملك	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hold	يمسك	held	held
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
leave	يترك/يفادر	left	left
lend	يسلف	lent	lent
light	يشعل	lit	lit
lose	يخسر/يفقد	lost	lost
make	يصنع	made	made
meet	يقابل	met	met
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
say	يقول	said	said
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sent
shoot	يصوب	shot	shot
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
spend	ينفق/يقضي	spent	spent
stand	يقف	stood	stood
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
tell	يخبر	told	told
think	يعتقد/يفكر	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
win	يفوز	won	won

Group 3:

All three forms are different

Present form		Simple past	Past participle
am-is-are	يكون	was, were	been
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
blow	يهب	blew	blown
break	يكسر	broke	broken

choose	يختار	chose	chosen
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يقود	drove	driven
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
fall	يقع/يسقط	fell	fallen
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
give	يعطي	gave	given
hide	يختفي	hid	hidden
know	يعرف	knew	known
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
see	يرى	saw	seen
show	يوضح/يعرض	showed	shown
sing	يغنى	sang	sung
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
swim	يعوم	swam	swum
take	يأخذ	took	taken
throw	يرمى/يلقى	threw	thrown
wake	يوقظ	woke	woken
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
write	يكتب	wrote	written

رقم الإيداع: 2025/33380

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب
مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر

يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر.

2nd

PREP

SECOND TERM



ALAWWAN

Gem

2026

HS ST GL S M E

Ongoing Assessment
& Final Revision



CONTENTS



Part 1

Ongoing Assessment

التقويم المستمر

3

Part 2

Final Revision

- A) Units General Revision (Vocabulary - Language - Speaking - Writing)
- B) Story Corner (The Jungle Book)

المراجعة النهائية

68

Part 3

Final Exams

- A) (10) General Exams
- B) (6) Al-Azhar Exams
- C) Listening Texts

الاختبارات النهائية

99

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



1

Follow-up Worksheets

A) Dictation Time

B) Quiz Time

نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة العام)

- جزء خاص بالإملاء

- اختبار مصغر لطلبة العام على كل درسين

2

Al-Azhar Follow-up Worksheets

نماذج المتابعة (لطلبة الأزهري)

اختبار مصغر لطلبة الأزهري على كل درسين

3

Units Mini-Tests (General & Al-Azhar)

اختبارات قصيرة على كل وحدة لطلبة (العام - الأزهري)

4

Monthly Models (General & Al-Azhar)

النماذج الشهرية (عام + أزهري)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

forbidden	حذاء رياضي
atmosphere	يشارك
distractions	ضوابط ارتداء الملابس
equally	محترم (لغيره)
well-planned	أخلاق
hallway	جدول مواعيد

Language Expressions & Prepositions

on time	يعتني بـ
show pride	يدون ملاحظات
by rules/law	يخلق جواً إيجابياً

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
choose		
wear		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
allow		
tidy		
comfortable		

Definitions

..... : the way someone acts

..... : something not allowed to happen by rules or law

B**Quiz Time****1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- During the ceremony, the students pride in their achievements.
a) forgot b) hid c) ignored d) showed
- She always keeps her clothes tidy in the wardrobe خزائن الملابس. The word "tidy" can be replaced with ".....".
a) messy b) neat c) untidy d) dirty
- A respectful student waits politely before asking a question. The suffix "-ful" in "respectful" makes it a/an
a) adverb b) adjective c) verb d) preposition
- The invitation said the for the party was formal, so everyone dressed up.
a) dress code b) headline c) weather d) ticket

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- It's bad to skip your meals. (shouldn't)
.....
- I think it would be a good idea to take a bus to school. (should)
.....
- It's not polite to shout at your parents. (Never)
.....
- You should be kind to others. (Always)
.....

3 Complete the following dialog:

Omar thinks they must keep the classroom clean.

Sara :What's one of our school rules, Omar?

Omar : One rule is that we must keep the (1)..... clean.

Sara :How do we (2)..... that?

Omar : We throw trash in the bin.

Sara :What if someone drops paper?

Omar : We should (3)..... it up.

Sara :Do the (4)..... help us?

Omar : Yes, the teachers help too.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nadia is asking Karim about his school day.

Nadia: What time do you wake up, Karim?

Karim: (1).....

Nadia: (2).....?

Karim: My first class is English. It's my favorite.

Nadia: Why is it your favorite?

Karim: (3).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- You should notes in class to help you study.
a) take b) give c) allow d) let
- The school does not cell phones during class hours.
a) require b) act c) avoid d) allow
- You ignore your parents when they give you good advice.
a) should b) must c) shouldn't d) can
- late for your classes.
a) Don't be b) Be always c) Should be d) Always be

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- Don't being late for your piano lesson again. (.....)
- They should recycles plastic bottles to help the environment. (.....)
- Always washes your hands before you eat your lunch. (.....)
- Being careful when you walk on the wet floor—it's slippery. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Your school rules"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

smoothly	ضبط النفس
direct	غير منظم
careless	أدغال/ غابة كثيفة
successfully	فترة/ حصّة دراسية
responsibility	عدواني/ هجومي
effectively	دفتر/ سجل المعمل

Language Expressions & Prepositions

respect for	يستعد/ يجهز لـ
get enough time	يتبع الجدول الزمني
in order	يسير بسلاسة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
bring		
stand		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
manage		
regular		
destroy		

Definitions

..... : in a way that works well and produces good results

..... : to control or direct something successfully

B Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

produce – smoothly – carelessly – organized – event

A good timetable is not just a list. It's a tool. If you follow the timetable, your day will run (1)..... You will know when you have art, science, or sports day. You can even plan for a special (2)..... like a fair. Being (3)..... means you are never careless with your responsibility. You'll get enough time to finish your lab book and still rest. When you manage your time well, you (4)..... good results and feel proud.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's bad to waste electricity by leaving devices on. (shouldn't)
.....
2. You should be polite when you talk to adults. (Always)
.....
3. You should copy your friend's homework. (shouldn't)
.....
4. It's not wise to eat too much sugar. (You)
.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Shere Khan, the tiger, welcomed the boy warmly. (.....)
2. Mother Wolf refused to give up the boy to Shere Khan. (.....)
3. Baloo the bear promised to train the child. (.....)
4. Mowgli was fully human and did not follow the laws of the jungle. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why was Shere Khan a threat to Mowgli?
.....
6. How might Mowgli's upbringing تربية among wolves affect his behavior compared to human children?
.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Sally bought a new for her art class.
a) period b) art c) brush d) schedule
2. The room looked after the children finished playing.
a) disorganized b) smoothly c) fixed d) successful
3. If your friend is sad, you listen carefully and say something kind.
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) have
4. "Good morning" to your grandmother every day; it makes her very happy.
a) Say always b) Always say c) Should say d) Says

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Leila. I love sports day and the fair. But I didn't like school before because I was always disorganized. I didn't know when I had art or when I had a break. My teacher said, "Leila, you must follow the timetable." So, I made a schedule with colors. Red is for art, blue is for science, and green is for a break. I bring my lab book every day. I keep my brush in a special box. I prepare for the event by packing my bag the night before. I don't want to be careless anymore. I use my break to drink water and think. I manage my time effectively. Now, I am ready for everything. My day runs smoothly. I even help my friend find her lab book. I am proud because I am organized!

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does Leila do the night before an event?
.....

2. Why is it important that Leila becomes organized?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Leila made a schedule with
a) numbers b) colors c) music d) toys
4. Leila says she uses her break to drink water and
a) sleep b) shout c) think d) draw

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. You shouldn't finish your homework before playing basketball. (.....)
2. Wakes up early so you aren't late for school. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

scientific	يُحضّر
floor	صبور
morning line	صالّة رياضية
playground	مفيد/معاون/مساعد
active	إعدادي
library	مدير/ناظر
suggest	يذكر/ينبه

Language Expressions & Prepositions

present ideas to	على هاتفك
make a chart	يقوم بتجارب
share with	يعطى معنى
write down	مرتبك بشأن/بخصوص

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
friendly		
patient		
active		

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The nurse was very patient with the children in the hospital. The word "....." has the same meaning as "patient".
a) tolerant b) impatient c) rude d) careless
2. He wasn't patient enough to solve the puzzle. To get the antonym of "patient", add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) il- c) im- d) re-
3. She is always to her classmates.
a) boring b) helpful c) friend d) attended
4. I was confused the science experiment, but the teacher explained it again.
a) at b) on c) about d) in

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

suggest – down – up – makes – confused

To succeed in school, I stay organized and follow my daily timetable. I bring my notebook, pencil, and my brush for art class. During classes, I write (1)..... key points and stay focused. If I am (2)..... about a topic, I ask a friend or present my question to the teacher. I (3)..... studying in the library after school. That (4)..... sense. This helps me understand difficult subjects better.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's important for you to finish your homework before playing. (should)
.....
2. Please don't make noise in the library. (shouldn't)
.....
3. It's not good to spend all day on your phone. (You)
.....
4. It isn't wise to be rude to others. (Never)
.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ahmed and Mahmoud are reviewing the new school rules.

Ahmed : Mahmoud, (1)..... ?

Mahmoud: The main change is the morning line.

Ahmed : Do students need to arrive earlier?

Mahmoud: (2).....

Ahmed : What about mobile phones during class?

Mahmoud: (3).....

Ahmed : Yes, that's right.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In science class, we to understand how things work.
a) do experiments b) play games
c) draw pictures d) take naps
- The teacher's explanation helped the lesson sense.
a) write b) do c) share d) make
- To warm up your voice, sing a simple song before the performance.
a) you should b) should you c) you have d) have you
- You look both ways before crossing any street.
a) should b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- We should to save electricity by turning off unused lights. (.....)
- Never talks while the teacher is giving instructions to the class. (.....)
- Mohammed should to apologize if he breaks his friend's toy by accident. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Your school day"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- He finds it hard to manage his time between work and family. To get the antonym of "manage", we add the prefix ".....".
a) un- b) im- c) mis- d) il-
- The room was too hot, and everyone looked uncomfortable. The prefix "un-" in "uncomfortable" means
a) again b) more c) not d) much
- The event will if everyone follows the instructions carefully.
a) run smoothly b) fail completely
c) stop suddenly d) damage
- Before the exam, students should their notes to remember key points.
a) review b) catch c) throw d) hide

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- It's a good idea to save some money every month. (You)
- It's not wise to skip breakfast. (Don't)
- It's not important to stay up too late. (shouldn't)

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

- Mowgli was named "little frog" by the animals. (.....)
- Mowgli grew up learning only human ways, not jungle ways. (.....)
- Shere Khan never planned to harm Mowgli. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

- How did Baloo and Bagheera help Mowgli become part of the wolf pack?
- Why do you think Mother Wolf insisted on keeping Mowgli despite Shere Khan's demand?

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hadi has English on Sunday and Wednesday.

Nora: When do we have English this week?

Hadi: (1)

Nora: (2)

Hadi: We have two English lessons.

Nora: (3)

Hadi: It starts at ten o'clock on Wednesday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It is your to finish your homework on time.
a) hobby b) responsibility c) game d) secret
- The spoke to the students during the morning line.
a) principal b) waiter c) driver d) actor
- You clean your shoes before entering the house.
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) couldn't
- throw trash on the ground. Always find a bin nearby to use.
a) Don't b) Do c) Shouldn't d) Always

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- Always puts your dirty clothes in the laundry basket, not on the floor. (.....)
- Should they wears helmets when they ride their bicycles? (.....)
- Don't eating food that has fallen on the ground. It's dirty. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

concentration	محضر / مشجع
develop	دور
quick thinking	يوازن
interactive	واثق
encourage	خجول
administrator	تعليمي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

get distracted	يشارك في
solve a problem	يقلق بشأن / على
group work	متعلق بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
find		
speak		
cost		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
distracted		
improve		
popular		

Definitions

.....: people who know a lot about something

.....: focusing your mind on one thing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Studying requires a lot of
 a) concentration b) role c) style d) method
2. Reham seems to be quiet, but she's than anyone else. She solves puzzles faster than anyone.
 a) closer b) nearer c) farther d) smarter
3. "Don't get distracted in the class." The word "....." is a synonym for the word "distracted".
 a) attention b) focused c) popular d) confused
4. "Students need time to develop their skills." To get the noun of "develop", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -ion b) -ment c) -al d) -or

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The museum was crowded. We still enjoyed our visit. (However)

2. The weather was sunny. We didn't go to the beach. (but)

3. I was doing my homework. My brother was playing video games. (while)

4. The movie was interesting. It was very long. (However)

3 Complete the following dialog:

Amina and Mayar are talking about brain training games.

Mayar: Hi Amina, what are you doing?

Amina: I am playing a (1) training game.

Mayar: That's amazing. (2) do these games focus on?

Amina: These games focus on (3) skills, math, and language learning.

Mayar: Is that helpful?

Amina: (4) It makes your brain work harder to find solutions.

Mayar: But you should be careful and not play too much.

Amina: Of course!



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Khaled and Reem are talking about how to make learning fun.

Khaled : Does your teacher make learning fun?

Reem : (1)..... She uses quizzes.

Khaled : (2).....?

Reem : No, they are fun and easy.

Khaled : Do you answer the questions?

Reem : (3)..... I try my best.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The scientist said that children learn to solutions by playing puzzle games.

- a) focus b) develop c) improve d) find

2. lessons help students stay focused.

- a) Distracted b) Interactive c) Traditional d) Basic

3. The weather wasn't nice., we decided to go on a picnic.

- a) However b) When c) While d) So

4. I enjoy cooking with my mom, my sister plays the piano a lot.

- a) but b) however c) because d) so

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Fatma fell down, so she didn't hurt herself. (.....)

2. I like tea because my brother prefers coffee. (.....)

3. However I am doing my homework, my brother is watching TV. (.....)

4. Mazen likes basketball, however he is not very good at it. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Games and learning"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

imagine	.....	.....	قَلِّفْ / متوتِّر
meaningful	.....	.....	مبْدَع / مبتكر
empathize	.....	.....	يحفظ / يستذكر
interactive	.....	.....	مشاعر / عواطف
powerful	.....	.....	بشكل طبيعي / تلقائيًا
smart learning	.....	.....	قيمة
pronunciation	.....	.....	غرض / هدف

Language Expressions & Prepositions

build confidence	.....	.....	يستكشف الأفكار
connect knowledge to	.....	.....	يتعلم باستخدام
around the world	.....	.....	يحول (شيئًا ما) إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
make		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
exciting		
modern		
anxious		

Definitions

..... : to form ideas in the mind about something

..... : involving active participation and communication

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

meaningful – value – storytelling – skills – ideas

Stories are a powerful tool in smart learning. Through stories, students learn about (1)....., emotions, and culture. They also practice listening, reading and speaking (2)..... Good stories make lessons more (3)..... and help students imagine and empathize with others. Together, singing and (4)..... turn classrooms into creative spaces full of learning and joy.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The weather is warm. I still wear my jacket. (However)
.....
2. My sister loves the color pink. I prefer dark blue. (but)
.....
3. My cousin speaks three languages. I'm still learning "Hello". (while)
.....
4. Nadine plays volleyball. Eman plays tennis. (but)
.....

The Story**3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. Kaa began training Mowgli about the Law of the Jungle. (.....)
2. Mowgli loved his teachers and followed their advice. (.....)
3. Bandar-log were chaotic without order. (.....)
4. Mowgli learned that not all who call themselves friends should be trusted. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did Baloo and Bagheera save Mowgli?
.....
6. Why is it important for true friendships to come from loyalty and respect?
.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Ali tried to the poem before the school performance.
a) explore b) form c) memorize d) value
2. A good leader should with his team and understand them.
a) organize b) memorize c) communication d) empathize
3. Education is a/an tool that changes people's lives.
a) powerful b) temporary c) anxious d) worried
4. The new app is, it allows you to learn actively.
a) silent b) expensive c) interactive d) weak

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our class had a special day. We pretended we were on the moon. No one could hear us. No one could laugh. We could sing anything, even silly words. I sang, "I am a banana with wings." My friend sang, "The clouds are singing songs." We didn't care about grammar or pronunciation. We just sang. Our teacher said, "When you are on the moon, you can **turn into** whoever you want." I turned into a brave singer. I wasn't worried anymore. We made a song with our favorite words: "happy," "kind," "friend", and "joy." We didn't memorize it. We felt it. Later, we wrote our song on paper and called it "The Moon Song." We didn't perform for the school. We performed for each other. And that was enough. This is smart learning where joy is the only rule.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the main idea of this passage?
2. What words did the children include in their song, and why?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The children pretended they were on the moon so they could
a) go to space b) sing without fear
c) win a prize d) learn grammar
4. The underlined verb "**turn into**" in the passage means to
a) change your clothes
b) become a different person in your mind
c) fly to another planet
d) copy someone else

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I studied hard so I didn't pass the exam. (.....)
2. Because I was doing my homework, my mother was cooking dinner. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

photosynthesis	عملى/تطيقى
struggle	ملاحظات/تغذية راجعة
preference	إستراتيجية/أسلوب
flashcard	جدال/نقاش
edutainment	إدارة/تنظيم الوقت
visual memory	عملية/إجراء
rhythm	يناسب/يلائم
diagram	كلمات/نص الأغنية
educational comics	رسوم متحركة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

in silence	يسهر
stay up late	بعد بطاقات تعليمية
Practice makes perfect!	يتصل/يرتبط بـ
process information	تمطر بغزارة
get a high score	فى صمت/بهدهوء
method for	يؤلف قصة

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
familiar		
suit		
motivated		

B

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- combines education and entertainment, which makes studying less boring.
a) Feedback b) Rhythm
c) Edutainment d) Strategy
- The of the poem made it easier to memorize.
a) definition b) process
c) diagram d) rhythm
- "Your clothes suit the event." The word "....." is an antonym of "suit".
a) fit b) match c) mismatch d) unfamiliar.
- Adding the suffix "-able" to the verb "achieve" makes it a/an
a) adjective b) adverb c) preposition d) verb

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

making – getting – motivated – strategy – feedback

Last week, I got a low score on my test. I felt sad, but my teacher didn't say, "You failed." She gave me (1).....: "You understand the diagram, but you forget the definition." I considered her advice. I started (2)..... flashcards again. This time, I wrote the definition on one side and drew on the other. I read them aloud every morning. Now, I felt more (3)..... . Feedback helped me change my (4)..... .

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The test was difficult. I managed to pass. (However)
.....
2. I wanted to go for a walk. It started raining. (but)
.....
3. Sara was reading a book. Her sister was watching TV. (while)
.....
4. The restaurant was expensive. The food wasn't very good. (However)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Lubna and Mariam are talking about the upcoming science exam.

Mariam : How are you preparing for the science test?

Lubna : (1).....

Mariam : (2).....?

Lubna : Flashcards help me learn and memorize vocabulary.

Mariam : I tried diagrams. Colors make me remember better.

Lubna : (3)..... I'll try to do that next time.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My learning style is visual. I remember things best with pictures and
a) diagrams b) processes c) preferences d) arguments
- They to complete the exam because the questions were difficult.
a) suited b) struggled c) entertained d) compared
- My brother is afraid of dogs I think they're the nicest animals.
a) as b) while c) however d) so
- I like watching the sunset, I never take photos of it.
a) because b) so c) while d) but

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- My brother loves video games, so I prefer outdoor activities. (.....)
- Karima speaks English well. So, she struggles with grammar. (.....)
- But I like quiet music, my brother likes loud rock music. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Tips for studying"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Educational apps that combine learning and fun are a great form of for children.
a) edutainment b) interaction c) concentration d) effective
- The school is responsible for managing staff and organizing school activities.
a) educational b) administrator c) developer d) guard
- The of new technology has changed how we live.
a) development b) explanation c) edutainment d) motivation
- Eman was anxious before her exam. The word "....." is an antonym for "anxious".
a) motivating b) bored c) calm d) silent
- The novel was so good that Hagar decided to read it again. We add the prefix "....." to mean "again".
a) im- b) ir- c) dis- d) re-

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- The team played well. They didn't win the match. (However) (but)
- I studied hard. I didn't understand everything. (but)
- The children were playing outside. Their parents were cooking lunch. (while)
- The movie had great actors. The story wasn't interesting. (However)

3 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Smart learning"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Omar tells Lina that his teacher tells stories to make lessons fun.

Lina : How does your teacher make lessons fun?

Omar : (1)

Lina : (2) ?

Omar : She tells historical stories.

Lina : Do you understand the lessons better?

Omar : (3) The stories help me remember.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Teachers help students learning and having fun.
a) basic b) balance c) give d) develop
- Our manager us to work harder.
a) motivated b) explained c) fixed d) interacted
- I like eating eggs for breakfast, my brother likes potatoes.
a) so b) because c) while d) but
- The teacher gave us a long homework., I finished it in one hour.
a) However b) Although c) While d) Because

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- I like pizza. But, I eat it only once a month. (.....)
- However my uncle works in an office, my aunt works in a hospital. (.....)
- We went to the zoo, so the lions were sleeping. (.....)

Monthly Model (1) on Units 7 & 8

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The expert said that children who in group activities grow faster.
a) focus b) participate c) explore d) retreat
- A/An smile can make your whole day feel brighter.
a) useless b) anxious c) achievable d) friendly
- The coach will the players during practice.
a) hide b) forget c) blame d) direct
- The teacher used activities to help students participate and learn by doing.
a) interactive b) silent c) boring d) difficult
- Yoga helps improve flexibility and body movement. The suffix "-ment" in "movement" forms
a) an adjective b) an adverb
c) the noun of the action d) the person who moves
- Being on time for class is part of a student's
a) discussion b) responsibility c) participation d) combination

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Sneakers – uniform – code – for – forbidden

Rules at school are not meant to limit us. They help us prepare (1)..... life. For example, being on time teaches responsibility. Wearing a (2)..... shows that we are part of a team working toward learning. (3)..... and jeans are not allowed at school. Talking loudly in the library is (4)....., as it disturbs others who are reading.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Eman likes fish. I don't like chicken. (but)
.....
- It's a good idea to keep your room clean. (Always)
.....
- It's polite to respect your parents. (should)
.....
- I like listening to music. My brother prefers reading books. (while)
.....
- It's not healthy to eat fast food. (shouldn't)
.....

Monthly Model (2) on Units 7 & 8

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Tamer and Dina are talking about their school timetable.

Dina :What subject do we have after the break?

Tamer : (1).....

Dina : (2).....?

Tamer : We have three English classes.

Dina : (3).....?

Tamer : Our English test is on Thursday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Teachers teach students how to with others.

- a) empathize b) take c) explain d) let

2. Taking helps you remember the steps of each experiment.

- a) science b) books c) coats d) notes

3. Learning becomes more when students participate.

- a) bored b) upset c) nervous d) interactive

4. Good apps children by making learning feel like an adventure.

- a) practice b) prepare c) engage d) replace

5. I love eating fresh bread, I don't like it when it's too hard.

- a) although b) so c) but d) because

6. nervous before your presentation.

- a) Don't be b) Be always c) Should be d) Always be

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Should we waits our turn without pushing in line? (.....)

2. Always covers your mouth when you cough or sneeze. (.....)

3. My brother plays football after school, so he never plays in the rain. (.....)

4. I enjoy reading books. While, I don't have time for it on school days. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

certificate	موظف/عامل
useful	يستعبر/يقترح
customer	حياة مهنية
qualification	متعب/مزعج/مجهد
responsibility	ترقية/ترويج
passion	ماف وظيفي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

care for	يتقدم لـ/يقدم طلباً لـ
plan your future	يغير الوظائف
for the day	يقيم/يمكث في البيت

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
give		
sell		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
proud		
dangerous		
tiring		
mindful		

Definitions

.....	: the work a person does through life
.....	: duties or tasks someone must do
.....	: the way people share ideas, thoughts, or feelings

B

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Your are studies or training needed for a job.
a) applications b) profiles
c) qualifications d) responsibilities
2. This book is useful for learning English. The synonym of "useful" is ".....".
a) risky b) useless c) satisfied d) helpful
3. I have a for drawing, so I spend my free time sketching.
a) promotion b) passion
c) customer d) job
4. The company will employ many people. We add the suffix "....." to "employ" to get the noun.
a) -er b) -ful c) -ous d) -ed

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hussein was thirsty, so he drank a glass of water. (because)
2. Since I have money, I will buy a toy. (therefore)
3. Ghada loves plants, so she planted some mint today. (since)
4. Ibrahim ran to the bus because he was late. (so)

3 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Lubna are talking about job profiles.

Nour : Hi Lubna, (1)..... are you doing?

Lubna: I'm reading a job profile.

Nour : What is a job profile?

Lubna: A job profile is a short (2)..... of a person's work and skills.

Nour : Is it (3)..... for employers only?

Lubna: No, it's for both employers and employees.

Nour : That's helpful!



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ahmed and Karim are talking about cars.

Karim : Did you get your car fixed, Ahmed?

Ahmed : (1).....

Karim : What kind of problem does it have?

Ahmed : (2).....

Karim : (3).....?

Ahmed : He said that it needs 3 days.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher that every student understands the lesson.

- a) supports b) fixes c) acts d) ensures

2. Did you the job you saw online?

- a) act like b) apply for c) give out d) care for

3. The food was too spicy;, I drank a whole glass of water.

- a) because b) since c) therefore d) however

4. the lights went out, we used our phones to see in the dark.

- a) As a result b) So c) Therefore d) Since

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I forgot my homework; because, I didn't get a good grade. (.....)

2. Ragab was late as a result he missed the bus. (.....)

3. So it was sunny, we went to the beach. (.....)

4. Lara studied hard, because she passed the exam. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

motivation	رضا/قناعة
affect	خيبة أمل/إحباط
opportunity	علوم الحاسوب
nursing	شخصية
pressure	صحافة
confidence	علاقة/صلة

Language Expressions & Prepositions

available to	من أجل المال
make a decision	يفكر في
explore options	يبدأ بـ

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
lead to		
spend		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
accustomed		
succeed		
confidence		
stress		
happiness		

Definitions

.....	: a feeling of sadness, unhappiness, and dissatisfaction
.....	: feeling happy and proud of what you did
.....	: things you like or enjoy

B

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Learning a language gives you a great to find jobs easily.
a) idea b) satisfaction
c) opportunity d) disappointment
 - He worked hard and felt satisfaction when he saw his results. To get the opposite of "satisfaction", we add the prefix ".....".
a) il- b) mis- c) dis- d) un-
 - The teacher's words gave the students to study harder.
a) motivation b) disappointment
c) stress d) pressure
 - Hadeer grew accustomed to living in Canada. The synonym of the word "accustomed" is
- a) joy b) trust c) tension d) familiar

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. They didn't bring an umbrella, so they got wet. (because)
2. I forgot my homework, so the teacher was angry. (as a result)
3. The lights went out; therefore, we used flashlights. (because)
4. Hadya didn't eat breakfast, so she felt weak. (Since)

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. As Mowgli grew, Shere Khan loved him. (.....)
2. Shere Khan warned the wolves that Mowgli would bring fire. (.....)
3. Mowgli didn't learn the secret of fire. (.....)
4. Mowgli felt happy that he defeated Shere Khan. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What did Mowgli have to learn to defeat Shere Khan?
6. If you were Mowgli, would you fix problems with the wolves or leave the pack?

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

park guard	قادر على التكيف/مرن
patience	يحفز
rewarding	خدمة عامة
confident	مسئول
ambitious	تنمية المجتمع
challenging	إدارة المشروعات
skilled	تخطيط الفعاليات
matter	عالم بيئي

Language Expressions & Prepositions

believe in	مهتم بـ
save lives	يتبع حلمًا

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
think		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
achieve		
confident		
responsible		
skilled		
patience		
confident		

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I can adapt to new situations at school. Add the suffix "....." to "adapt" to get the adjective.
a) -ive b) -ful c) -ment d) -able
- Islam knows how to manage his time. We add the suffix "....." to "manage" to form a noun.
a) -al b) -tion c) -ment d) -able
- The homework was challenging, but I finished it. The antonym of "challenging" is ".....".
a) doubtful b) sure c) easy d) difficult
- A/An girl like Jana wants to be a great doctor.
a) irresponsible b) easy c) ambitious d) rewarding

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ambitious – responsible – park guard – patience – engineer

My brother wants to build big things when he grows up. He is a very (1) student who studies hard at school every day. He wants to become a great (2) and build tall bridges for cars. He knows that he must have (3) to learn everything well now. He must also be (4) to follow his dream of making the city better. I am proud of him because he works very hard.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- He stayed home. He was feeling sick. (because)
.....
- The roads were blocked. They took a different route. (therefore)
.....
- They canceled the match. It started to rain heavily. (since)
.....
- She forgot her umbrella. She got wet on her way to school. (as a result)
.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Menna and Reham are talking about their dream jobs.

Menna : What is your dream job, Reham?

Reham : (1).....

Menna : Why do you want to become a doctor?

Reham : (2).....

Menna : (3).....?

Reham : I want to become a graphic designer to create amazing designs.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- If you have a dream, you should it.
a) push b) follow c) read d) motivate
- Laila is very when plans change at the last minute.
a) skilled b) adaptable
c) rewarding d) international
- We couldn't go to the beach the weather was too cold.
a) so b) therefore c) as a result d) because
- Nader didn't listen to the instructions;, he made a big mistake in the lab.
a) because b) since c) however d) as a result

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- So the phone stopped, I couldn't call my mom. (.....)
- I was tired, because I slept early. (.....)
- We didn't bring an umbrella; since, we got wet. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Your future job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We should be of our words, so we don't hurt others.
a) mindful b) exciting c) sick d) busy
- Hend's car down and stopped working on the bridge.
a) gave b) broke c) crowded d) passed
- You should be proud of your achievements. The antonym of "proud" is ".....".
a) safe b) thrilled c) careless d) ashamed
- Nour felt great satisfaction after finishing her project. To get the opposite of "satisfaction", we add the prefix ".....".
a) im- b) un- c) il- d) dis-
- The reminded visitors to keep the area clean and safe.
a) assistant b) park guard c) doctor d) engineer

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- The phone rang loudly, so Hagar answered it quickly. (because)
- Jamal likes sweet fruit; as a result, he bought some grapes. (since)
- Hala is wearing boots because it is snowing outside. (so)
- Since he was tired, Karam went to bed early. (therefore)
- Ammar practiced every day, so he won the competition. (because)

3 A) Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

- Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolf pack. (.....)
- Baloo warned Mowgli that he must face Shere Khan. (.....)
- Mowgli secretly stole a pot of burning coals. (.....)
- The wolves continued to see Mowgli as one of them. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

- What lies did Shere Khan spread about Mowgli?
- What would have happened if Mowgli didn't use fire to defeat Shere Khan?

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

- Amir and Mohamed are talking about chefs.
- Amir : What do you want to be, Mohamed?
- Mohamed : (1)
- Amir : Chef! That's interesting. What do you do on busy days?
- Mohamed : (2)
- Amir : (3)
- Mohamed : Cooking is my passion, so I enjoy spending long hours at the kitchen.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Walking five kilometers in the heat was, so we sat down and drank water.
a) closed b) exciting c) busy d) tiring
- She studied because she wanted to become a news reporter.
a) medicine b) engineering c) journalism d) painting
- I missed my bus I was helping my little sister find her shoes.
a) so b) therefore c) because d) a result
- Nagla was in a meeting;, she didn't answer my text.
a) but b) because c) as a result d) since

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- The cake was delicious, because we ate three pieces. (.....)
- Abdou didn't sleep well, because he was tired all day. (.....)
- Therefore the room was dark, I turned on the light. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

request	امتنان/شكر
precious	شجاعة/جراة
confused	يتجاهل/يجهل
folktale	فضول
agreement	يبهت/يتلاشى
moral	ثمين/قيم

Language Expressions & Prepositions

say sorry	يبقى على الوعد
set free	يصطاد الطيور
break his promise	محاصر في شبكة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
set		
sit		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
courage		
expensive		
common		

Definitions

-: lost color and brightness
-: a strong desire to know or learn something

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- means being thankful for someone's help or kindness.
a) Promise b) Gratitude c) Secret d) Courage
- I don't agree with you. To form the noun from "agree," we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ness c) -ment d) -ion
- This gold ring is not just beautiful. It's also very
a) strange b) normal c) common d) precious
- He made a to always tell the truth, and he never broke it.
a) version b) trust c) promise d) decade

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- First, Judy washed her hands, and then she ate her lunch. (After)
.....
- I didn't say sorry. Then, my friend left. (when)
.....
- They bought some snacks. Then, the movie started. (By the time)
.....
- First, the boys played football, and then they went back home. (until)
.....

3 Complete the following dialog:

Fahd found his grandfather's compass.

Fahd : This metal circle points north.

Leila : (1)..... is it called?

Fahd : It's called a compass.

Leila : (2)..... used it?

Fahd : My grandfather used it when he sailed in the sea.

Leila : Was he a captain?

Fahd : No, he (3)..... . But he loved adventures.

Leila : Maybe we can (4)..... on one too.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Yara found her father's photo with his dog. Its name is Sunny.

Yara : I saw a tiny photo in this box.

Tariq : (1).....?

Yara : There's a little boy with a dog in it.

Tariq : (2).....?

Yara : He is my dad when he was five.

Tariq : What was the dog's name?

Yara : (3)..... . He loved it so much.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You should always to your friend if you do something wrong.

- a) thank b) say sorry c) escape from d) ignore

2. Children often retell a they heard from their grandparents.

- a) discovery b) folktale c) period d) necklace

3. By the time we got to the beach, the sun already set behind the mountains.

- a) is b) has c) had d) was

4. After he his room, Ahmed went to the kitchen to ask for a snack.

- a) is cleaning b) cleaned c) has cleaned d) had cleaned

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. After playing the long game, Ahmed had gone to his house. (.....)

2. She realized that she had forget her bag at home. (.....)

3. The nice teacher has asked the students to sit down after he had entered. (.....)

4. Before the sun rose, the bird fly away very far. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Something precious you found"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

slippers	.....	.....	عربة/مركبة
fit	.....	.....	محبوب/عزيز
fairy	.....	.....	ينكافئ/مكافأة
stepmother	.....	.....	خادم/خادمة
narrow pass	.....	.....	يعانى/يتألم
giant	.....	.....	مبهر/لامع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

dream of	.....	.....	فى ذات يوم
leave behind	.....	.....	فى سعادة دائمة
lose patience	.....	.....	فى منتصف الليل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
lose		
read		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
cruel		
beloved		
magical		

Definitions

.....	: being clever in a way that is often tricky using smart methods
.....	: great success

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

servant – suffer – cruel – magic – stepsister

Once there was a very kind girl who lived with a poor family. Her new stepmother was very (1)..... to her every day. She also had a lazy (2)..... who made her work very hard. The poor girl worked as a (3)..... in her own big house cleaning the floors. She did not cry or (4)..... alone because she had many small mice friends to help her smile.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. First, Youssef fixed the broken toy, and then he played happily. (before)
.....
2. The strong wind blew hard, and then the old tree fell. (after)
.....
3. First, my mother baked bread, and then the house smelled good. (until)
.....
4. First, Gamal packed his bag, and then he went to school. (Before)
.....

The Story**3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. Shere Khan tried to kill Mowgli by sending a herd of cattle toward him. (.....)
2. Mowgli was unable to stop Shere Khan's plan, and he escaped. (.....)
3. After defeating Shere Khan, Mowgli returned to the pack and was welcomed as a hero. (.....)
4. Mowgli's victory showed that he was no longer a helpless child. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why was the narrow pass important in Mowgli's plan to defeat Shere Khan?
.....
6. In your own words, what does "searching for where he truly belonged" tell us about Mowgli's feelings at the end of the chapter?
.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. People usually wear inside the house to keep their feet warm.
a) ties b) slippers c) helmets d) shoes
2. A works in someone's house doing housework like cleaning and cooking.
a) servant b) stepmother c) bride d) fairy
3. When the movie began, we had already our snacks.
a) buy b) buys c) buying d) bought
4. My grandma cookies before we arrived.
a) bakes b) baked c) had baked d) was baking

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

I love writing stories for my friends at school. Every good story needs three important parts to be great. First, we start with the beginning of the story. This part tells us who the characters are today. Next, we have the middle part of the story. Something exciting or a big problem happens right here. Finally, the end comes to fix the big problem. The characters usually feel happy after the problem is gone. Writing stories is like building a tasty sandwich. You need bread on the top and the bottom. You also need yummy cheese and meat in the middle. I hope you write a really fun story soon.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What happens in the middle part of a story?
.....
2. How do the characters usually feel at the end of a story?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is ".....".
a) How to make lunch b) Playing with friends
c) Writing a good story d) Reading a book
4. The underlined word "This" refers to the
a) beginning b) middle c) end d) sandwich

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. She finished her homework before she went to bed. (.....)
2. They had left the house after the rain started. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

shocked	.....	.....	يخيف/يرعب
disappointed	.....	.....	بشكل غير متوقع
overjoyed	.....	.....	ينير/ينضه/ييهج
dramatic	.....	.....	مفعم بالأمل/متفائل
summarize	.....	.....	غموض/لغز
sailor	.....	.....	مرتاح/مطمئن
judge	.....	.....	رحلة بحرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

take off	.....	.....	عند غروب الشمس
make a suggestion	.....	.....	لدهشتهم
in conclusion	.....	.....	في النهاية/أخيراً
face dangers	.....	.....	يبتسم لـ

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
overjoyed		
relieved		
surprising		

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- He felt after hearing the unexpected news.
a) disappointing b) shocked c) brightened d) hopeful
- We should act politely. To change the verb "act" into a noun, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -er b) -ion c) -ful d) -al
- In the story, the hero must dangers to protect his friends.
a) make b) stay c) keep d) face
- Layla tried to the long story in just two sentences for her friend.
a) wonder b) summarize c) brighten d) frighten

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

winner – mystery – competition – hopeful – overjoyed

Yesterday was a very special and happy day for my brother Ahmed. He went to the sports club to join a big sports (1) with his best friends. Everyone wanted to run fast and be the (2) of the big race. Ahmed ran very quickly and finished first. He felt (3) when he got the gold medal. I am (4) he will win again next year because he loves running so much.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- She brushed her teeth. Then, she went to bed. (after)
.....
- The teacher gave the test and the students answered it. (before)
.....
- My dad fixed the car. Then, we went on a trip. (until)
.....
- They ate lunch. Then, the bell rang for class. (When)
.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ali is asking Mai about her favorite fairy tale.

Ali : Do you like fairy tales?

Mai : (1).....

Ali : (2).....?

Mai : Cinderella is my favorite one.

Ali : (3).....?

Mai : My mom told it to me every night.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children were not afraid after the storm; they felt when the sun came out.
a) shocked b) disappointed c) relieved d) beast
- The plane will at 3 p.m., so be at the airport early.
a) make sure b) take off c) smile at d) win
- After Kady the dishes, she sat down to read her favorite book.
a) wash b) washed
c) had washed d) was washing
- Before we left the house, my dad that all the lights were turned off.
a) check b) checked
c) had checked d) was checking

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- After the movie ended, we ate some tasty pizza. (.....)
- The teacher had explained the lesson before the quiz had begun. (.....)
- The show had already start when we turned on TV. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Your fairy tale"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I hope to win the next game. To turn the verb "hope" into an adjective, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -ion c) -ful d) -al
- A/An "....." means a traditional story that is told from one generation to another.
a) agreement b) secret c) folk tale d) discovery
- This is the first time in living that the river has completely dried up.
a) memory b) movie c) time d) schedule
- The opposite of "cruel" is ".....", which means kind and caring.
a) gentle b) dramatic c) surprising d) alive
- After the long trip, the students sat in the soft chairs at the airport hall.
a) warmly b) comfortably c) unexpectedly d) aloud

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I studied English. Then, I moved to Canada. (had)
- The dog ran away. Then, I closed the door. (before)
- We made a phone call. Then, we left. (by the time)
- I went to bed. I had already turned off the TV. (after)
- Tamer forgot his keys. He couldn't open the door. (because)

3 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A folk tale you like"

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Sara likes reading funny stories very much.

Adam : Do you like to read stories at home?

Sara : (1)

Adam : (2)?

Sara : My mom reads stories to me.

Adam : (3)?

Sara : The last story was about a big red dog.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My increased when I heard the door slightly open.
a) curiosity b) lesson c) mistake d) comfort
- The children felt very when they saw the magical fireworks light up the sky.
a) shocked b) relieved c) overjoyed d) disappointed
- When I opened the fridge, I saw that my brother all the ice cream.
a) eats b) ate c) had eaten d) was eating
- Before the trip, we snacks, water, and a map.
a) packed b) pack c) are packing d) had packed

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- Before I had gone to school, I had eaten my breakfast. (.....)
- After he had brushed his teeth, he go to sleep. (.....)
- When the phone rang, I have already left my house. (.....)

Monthly Model (1) on Units 9 & 10

General

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

medicine – career – help – boring – sick

Many young people want to be doctors when they grow up. This is a very important (1)..... because doctors work hard to save many lives. They work in big hospitals and take care of (2)..... people every single day. Doctors give them the right (3)..... to make them feel much better. They really like to (4)..... others and make the world a healthy and happy place.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nour read a story about a/an princess who saved her kingdom.
a) royal b) doctor c) courage d) interested
- The treasure chest was filled golden coins and precious gems.
a) at b) for c) with d) on
- The team was hopeful after winning the first match. "Hopeful" is opposite to ".....".
a) satisfied b) relieved c) hopeless d) proud
- is the feeling of sadness when things don't go as hoped.
a) Architecture b) Enforcement
c) Satisfaction d) Disappointment
- That chair is comfortable. We form an adverb from "comfortable" by removing "e" and adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ly c) -y d) -ion
- The firefighter ran into the burning building to people's lives.
a) catch b) ignore c) save d) miss

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- They went to the park. They had already eaten their lunch. (Before)
.....
- The phone rang. I had already left the house. (When)
.....
- The rain started. We had already walked home. (by the time)
.....
- I watched TV. I had finished my homework. (After)
.....
- My brother ate the cookies. I had baked them. (before)
.....

Monthly Model (2) on Units 9 & 10

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Wael wants to be a policeman.

Tala : Do you want to be a policeman?

Wael : (1)

Tala : (2)

Wael : Yes, I can run very fast in the park.

Tala : (3)

Wael : A policeman needs to be strong and brave.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. After a long illness, she was to finally return to school.

- a) relieved b) joy c) cruel d) disappointed

2. Basmala felt when she saw her grades—much better than she expected!

- a) disappointed b) overjoyed c) shocked d) surprising

3. In many cultures, people folktales to teach children important values.

- a) retell b) trap c) request d) fly

4. The old photo began to after being left in the sunlight for years.

- a) admit b) fade c) wish d) fold

5. By the time the bus, we had waited for twenty minutes.

- a) arrived b) arrive c) had arrived d) has arrived

6. After we the kitchen, mom allowed us to watch TV.

- a) clean b) cleaned c) had cleaned d) were cleaning

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I had forgot my lunch at home yesterday. (.....)

2. When the teacher asked for the project, we had already finish it. (.....)

3. Before Sohila had gone to school, she had put on her shoes. (.....)

4. We had not had any fun before the rain had started. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

grazing land	عاصفة رملية
survival	يتنافس
resources	الري
desert guide	ماوى/ملجأ
nomadic	منطقة/إقليم
researcher	يجمع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

signal for help	مشهور بـ
face challenges	خلال النهار
set up camp	يأخذ رشفة

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
deal		
rise		
hit		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
conserve		
damage		
peaceful		

Definitions

- : to change to fit new environment
- : groups of people living together with shared culture

B**Quiz Time****1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. To stay safe in the desert, you should for help if you get lost.
a) hike b) breathe c) gather d) signal
2. The synonym of "conserve" is ".....", which means to protect resources.
a) save b) waste c) provide d) remove
3. In the desert, sandstorms can your eyes, so you should wear sunglasses.
a) cover b) damage c) reflect d) breathe
4. The suffix "....." can be added to "protect" to change into a noun.
a) -ion b) -ed c) -ly d) -al

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The phone rang last night. (at 9 p.m. last night)
.....
2. I listened to music last evening. (all day yesterday)
.....
3. We saw a tiger. We were hiking. (when)
.....
4. I got sunburned. I was sitting in the sunlight. (While)
.....

3 Complete the following dialog:

Sara is talking about Bedouins, farmers, and desert tribes living in the desert.

Ali : Who lives in the desert?

Sara : Bedouins, farmers, and desert (1)..... live in the desert.

Ali : (2)..... do they travel?

Sara : They travel on camels or donkeys.

Ali : (3)..... do they teach their children?

Sara : They teach their children how to find water.

Ali : Are they friendly?

Sara : Yes, they (4)..... . They welcome guests with tea!



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Yara is asking Adam about living in the desert.

Yara : Could we live in the desert?

Adam : (1)..... That's interesting!

Yara : (2).....?

Adam : We would watch sunrises and explore dunes every day.

Yara : Would we need special clothes?

Adam : (3).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Bedouins live a lifestyle, moving from place to place with their animals.

- a) similar b) peaceful c) nomadic d) local

2. Farmers use systems to bring water to their crops in dry areas.

- a) rainfall b) irrigation c) solar energy d) beans

3. Last week, my family a picnic near Siwa Oasis.

- a) has had b) had c) was having d) have

4. While I breakfast, my brother took a photo of me.

- a) eat b) ate c) was eating d) have eaten

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Yesterday, the happy children play in the big green garden. (.....)

2. While Aida was reading, her brother opens the door loudly. (.....)

3. When the teacher walked in, the students was talking loudly. (.....)

4. Last Friday, the family have a nice picnic in the park. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Desert communities"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

hump	.....	.....	يوازن/توازن
waxy	.....	.....	شديد/قاس
ecosystem	.....	.....	سميك/كثيف
adaptation	.....	.....	ساق/جذع
unique	.....	.....	حياة برية
dryness	.....	.....	يطلق/يحرر

Language Expressions & Prepositions

store water	.....	.....	يمنع من/يوقف عن
provide ... for	.....	.....	يجف/ينشف
keep cool	.....	.....	يمنح/يوفر الظل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
hide		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
unique		
empty		
thick		
harsh		

Definitions

.....: difficult and tough
.....: changes that help living things survive
.....: an equal or fair situation

B**Quiz Time**

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hump – fat – adaptation – harsh – root

Some animals are made to live in difficult places. The camel is perfect for the (1)..... desert life. It has a large (2)..... on its back. This part stores (3)..... for energy when there is no food. This is a type of (4)..... that helps the camel survive. The camel can walk on the hot sand for many days. It is a very strong and useful animal for people.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. While Sahar was walking, she lost her new blue pen. (When)
.....
2. Dalia wasn't very well after the long trip last week. (feel)
.....
3. Rana had no time to finish her homework last night. (didn't)
.....
4. The teacher was speaking to the class when the bell rang. (While)
.....

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli felt happy and free living among the villagers from the very beginning. (.....)
2. Some villagers believed that Mowgli was cursed because he acted like a wild animal. (.....)
3. Mowgli helped the village by taking care of their cattle and keeping them safe. (.....)
4. He quickly forgot the jungle and never missed Baloo or Bagheera again. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Mowgli feel trapped in the human village even though they gave him food and clothes?
.....
6. How did Mowgli show that he still respected the jungle while living with humans?
.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- Camels can live for days without water because they store in their humps.
a) heat b) fat c) root d) stem
- Aloe vera is a/an plant that can help heal skin after too much sun.
a) unique b) equal c) harmful d) empty
- What you doing at 7 p.m. yesterday evening?
a) did b) do c) were d) was
- He his leg while he was playing football last Sunday.
a) breaks b) broke c) was breaking d) has broken

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many animals live in the hot, dry desert. It is a hard place to live because there is very little water. The camel is the most famous animal there. It has a big hump on its back to store fat. This helps the camel go without any food for a long time. Another special animal is the small fennec fox. It has very large ears to help keep its body cool. Snakes and lizards hide under rocks to stay away from the very hot sun. They come out at night when it is cooler. Scorpions also live in the sand. They have sharp, scary tails. Life in the desert is difficult, but these amazing animals know how to survive in the heat every single day.

A) Answer the following questions:

- When do the desert animals come out to play or hunt?
.....
- Why is the desert a hard place for animals to live?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is animals in the
a) snow b) sea c) desert d) forest
- The underlined word "It" refers to the
a) camel b) snake c) scorpion d) fennec fox

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- I didn't went to the school yesterday because I was sick. (.....)
- Mona was eating lunch when Mariam phone her. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary		
campfire		مذهل/لا يصدق
practical		تلوث
entertainment		يتقاعد
resident		ضوءاء المرور
desert ruins		يجادل
desert camping trip		میزة
consider		مغبر/ممتلئ بالغبار
footsteps		مؤن/لوازم
carpet		عاصف
Language Expressions & Prepositions		
for a vacation		بحلول الظهر
for the first time		محاط بـ/يحيط به
Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms		
Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
nearby		
incredible		
intense		

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Recycling helps reduce in our environment.
a) pollution b) dusty c) storm d) supplies
- The synonym of "incredible" is ".....", which means something is very surprising.
a) ordinary b) intense c) soft d) amazing
- She sat surrounded tall sand dunes and listened to the silence of the desert.
a) with b) for c) by d) at
- To form the adjective from the verb "practice", we remove "e" and add the suffix ".....".
a) -al b) -y c) -ion d) -ment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

residents – carpet – incredible – ruins – sand

Last month, our class went on a trip to see old places. We traveled on a big yellow bus to see the desert (1)..... The old stone walls were huge and looked amazing. The guide told us stories about the (2)..... who lived there a long time ago. It was an (3)..... day for all the students. We took many pictures of the old stones and the (4).....

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- The car stopped. We were crossing the desert. (while)
.....
- The stars shone brightly. We were lying on the sand. (When)
.....
- They rested under a tree. (yesterday afternoon)
.....
- My father came home late. I was sleeping. (when)
.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Seif and Nour don't want the desert.

Seif : Would you build a house in the desert?

Nour : (1)..... I want a house in the city center.

Seif : (2).....?

Nour : I don't like the silence in the desert.

Seif : (3).....?

Nour : Yes, I think the desert is scary.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many near the desert research station prefer quiet nights.
a) hospital b) supplies c) residents d) footsteps
- One big of desert camping is the chance to enjoy the silence of nature.
a) option b) campfire c) advantage d) pollution
- The storm became so that schools were closed for the day.
a) calm b) soft c) intense d) quiet
- My father home late last night after work.
a) comes b) came c) was coming d) has come

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- My friend didn't went to the school trip yesterday. (.....)
- The cat sleeping on the sofa when I arrived home. (.....)
- While we was walking, we saw a very beautiful bird. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"A city or a desert"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- There is intense cold tonight. The antonym of "intense" is ".....".
a) harsh b) practical c) light d) soft
- The explorers learned how each survived in the harsh desert environment.
a) bean b) resource c) rainfall d) tribe
- The wind is blowing strongly across the dunes. We form the adjective of "wind" by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ent b) -ion c) -ly d) -y
- Many people prefer to visit the desert a vacation because it offers peace.
a) off b) from c) in d) for

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Amina wrote a letter to her best friend. (yesterday afternoon)
- While Arwa was painting, she dropped the red paint bottle. (When)
- Was Amany happy yesterday? (feel)
- While cleaning, Fatma broke a beautiful glass vase. (While Fatma)

The Story

3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

- People were fine when they saw Mowgli for the first time. (.....)
- The villagers taught Mowgli to live as they did. (.....)
- Mowgli discovered some value in human life. (.....)
- Mowgli didn't feel isolated with the villagers. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

- Why did the villagers think that Mowgli was cursed?
.....
- If you were Mowgli, would you feel relieved that Shere Khan is no longer your greatest challenge?
.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Youssef and Mariam are talking about life in the city and the desert.

Youssef: Mariam, is life better in the city?

Mariam: (1) Life is faster and easier in the city.

Youssef: I think the desert is a special place.

Mariam: (2)?

Youssef: Because it is quiet and has golden sand.

Mariam: (3) It's very hot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Temperatures can be burning at noon and at night.
a) dry b) wet c) freezing d) rare
- Solar energy uses sunlight to homes far from cities.
a) survive b) breathe c) reflect d) power
- While for the bus, it started to snow heavily.
a) waited b) I waited c) were waiting d) waiting
- In 2020, we to Alexandria for the first time.
a) go b) went c) were going d) have gone

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- Did you saw the new movie on TV last night? (.....)
- While Alaa were sleeping, it started to rain very hard. (.....)
- While Amira was run, she fell on the wet grass. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

astronaut	منظر طبيعي
radiation	جسيمات/ذرات/جزيئات
rainforest	لا يمكن تخيله/لا يصدق
breathtaking	يزيل
iceberg	فيلم وثائقي
identical	عجائب/روائع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

hold the record as	يسحب ... إلى الأسفل
along the way	يعتني بـ/يرعى
capture wonders	نوع من

Words and Opposites

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
brave		
mysterious		
remain		
identical		

Definitions

.....: a very high and steep land that rises above the land around it

.....: energy that travels in waves or tiny particles

.....: extremely surprising, or amazing

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "mysterious" means strange and difficult to understand; its opposite is ".....".
a) unusual b) identical c) clear d) steep
- The natural force that pulls everything toward the Earth is called
a) oxygen b) volcano c) ocean d) gravity
- If we add the prefix "....." to the word "imaginable," we get the word which means impossible to imagine.
a) un- b) dis- c) im- d) en-
- A person who explores space and travels in a spacecraft is called a/an
a) iceberg b) astronaut c) photographer d) traveler

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- We visited our grandmother. (already)
.....
- Sara has lived in Tanta since 2015. (for)
.....
- The fast runner won the race a moment ago. (just)
.....
- My family bought this big white house in 2020. (have lived)
.....

3 Complete the following dialog:

Hana is asking Youssef about a waterfall.

Hana : What is a waterfall?

Youssef : It is (1)..... falling from a high place.

Hana : Is the water very loud when it falls?

Youssef : Yes, it (2)..... . It makes a very big sound.

Hana : (3)..... we swim near a big waterfall?

Youssef : No, we can't. It might be dangerous to swim there.

Hana : (4)..... can we find waterfalls?

Youssef : We can find waterfalls in green forests.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Malak is asking Karim about the desert.

Malak : Is the desert a natural wonder too?

Karim : (1)..... The White Desert is very famous.

Malak : (2).....?

Karim : The weather is very hot in the desert.

Malak : (3).....?

Karim : Camels and foxes live in the desert.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Over time, wind and rain can the huge rocks in the desert.

- a) remain b) offer c) buy d) shape

2. The lake was completely in winter.

- a) steep b) frozen c) brave d) mysterious

3. Since yesterday, Adam has sick and he is in his bed.

- a) be b) been c) being d) is

4. The train has arrived at the station in the city.

- a) yet b) ever c) just d) since

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Adham has break his favorite toy car this morning. (.....)

2. The big yellow bus has arrived at the school just. (.....)

3. Salma has draw a beautiful picture for her dad. (.....)

4. My friends have be at the park for two hours. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"A natural wonder you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

plastic waste	أنواع/فصائل
establish	شديد/قصوى
solar panels	يُنْتَج/يُصنَع
recycling	فيضان/طوفان
endangered	جاذ/خطير
nuclear	جفاف

Language Expressions & Prepositions

make changes	يعتمد على
grow in number	يفقد المنازل/يخسر المساكن
at risk	يتخذ إجراء/يتصرف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
cut		
lose		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
endangered		
serious		
destroy		

Definitions

.....: using old materials again to make new things

.....: very strong, serious, or unusual

.....: a group of animals or plants that are the same

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

energy – recycling – solar – plastic – storm

We can do many good things to help our Earth every day. One easy way is (1)..... old paper and bottles to use again. We should also try to stop using so much (2)..... in our houses. Using clean (3)..... to make electricity is also a very smart idea. We can put (4)..... panels on our roofs to get power from the hot sun

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Tamer did not clean his room. (yet)
.....
2. Fares read the story and he knows the end. (already)
.....
3. The hungry cat ate the fish a moment ago. (just)
.....
4. Last winter, it started to snow on the top of the mountain. (since)
.....

The Story**3 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:**

1. Mowgli ignored the villagers and never tried to help them. (.....)
2. Mowgli defended the jungle because hunters killed animals needlessly. (.....)
3. Mowgli accepted the knowledge of humans and the Law of the Jungle. (.....)
4. In the end, Mowgli chose the jungle and rejected the village forever. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Mowgli feel connected to both the jungle and the village?
.....
6. How did Mowgli show balance between humans and nature?
.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Clean energy from gives us electricity without causing air pollution.
a) oil b) gas c) solar panels d) drought
2. helps reduce plastic waste by turning old bottles into new useful things again.
a) Drought b) Recycling c) Storm d) Flood
3. Ahmed has his leg and cannot play football today.
a) break b) broke c) broken d) breaking
4. We have finished our project about the solar system.
a) already b) yet c) ever d) since

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

My class decided to write special reports about our environment today. Our teacher, Mr. Ali, told us that the Earth needs our help now. We learned that plastic bottles are very bad for the blue ocean. Many fish get sick because of the dirty plastic trash. My friend Ahmed wrote a long report about saving water at home. He said we must turn off the tap when we brush our teeth. I wrote about planting green trees in the park. Trees give us clean air to breathe every day. We also made colorful posters for the school wall. Everyone promised to keep the school clean and recycle paper. The teacher was very happy with our hard work. We can all help the planet stay healthy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did Ahmed write his report about?

.....

2. Why are plastic bottles bad for the ocean?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is
a) playing a game b) eating a big lunch
c) helping the environment d) watching a movie
4. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to
a) Mr. Ali b) Ahmed c) the writer d) a fish

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. They lived in London for seven years. (.....)
2. Emily has moved to Cairo for 2015. (.....)

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

responsibility	يُحافظ على/يصون
environmental expert	نفايات/مخلفات
ordinary	قضايا/مشاكل
future generations	موضوع/عنوان
reporter	يؤثر على
cycle	بسيط/سهل

Language Expressions & Prepositions

reduce pollution	يحدث فرقاً
throw away	يقوم بإجراءات/ينفذ أفعال
on the ground	يطفئ الأنوار

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present	Past simple	Past participle
tell		
make		

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words	Synonym (meaning)	Antonym (opposite)
likely		
conserve		
positive		
reduce		

B

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- means to keep natural resources safe for the future.
a) Reduce b) Conserve
c) Throw d) Cycle
- The word "reduce" means to cut down; its opposite is ".....".
a) waste b) increase c) lower d) differ
- If we add the suffix "....." to the verb "report," we get the noun.
a) -er b) -ity c) -tion d) -ly
- To help the planet, we should always lights when we leave the room.
a) turn off b) do c) make d) create

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

affect – throw – responsibility – solution – generations

The Earth is our home and we must take care of it. It is our big (1).....
to keep the land and water very clean. We do this for the future (2).....
who will live here after us. The best (3)..... is to stop making so much
trash. Never (4)..... plastic bottles on the ground or in the river. We must
act now to fix these issues

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Samira last met her friend a very long time ago. (for)
2. The strong man lifted the heavy box a moment ago. (has lifted)
3. Mona cooked the dinner and it is ready now. (already)
4. They moved to this house in 2018. They still live there. (have lived)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Adam is telling Sara they cut down trees to build new houses there.

Sara : Why are they cutting down those trees?

Adam : (1).....

Sara : (2).....?

Adam : Yes, birds will lose their homes.

Sara : (3).....?

Adam : Trees give us clean air.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Plastic waste can the environment and harm sea animals over time.
a) conserve b) reuse c) affect d) suffer
- Many young people believe they can a difference by using cloth bags.
a) save b) turn c) make d) throw
- Since 2015, my father worked in this large company.
a) have b) has c) having d) had
- The bus has late for the school trip today.
a) be b) been c) being d) is

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- I has cleaned my messy room this week. (.....)
- The cute dog has eat all the food in the bowl. (.....)
- Farah has written the letter to her best friend yet. (.....)

4 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences on:

"Help the environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It is our to protect the Earth's future for generations to come.
a) meal b) tribe c) responsibility d) tools
- If we don't reduce pollution, future generations will from health problems.
a) create b) conserve c) suffer d) reduce
- To save energy, you can electricity by switching off lights when not in use.
a) waste b) ignore c) conserve d) damage
- The word "electric" can become a noun by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ion c) -ity d) -y

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Judy finished her homework a moment ago. (just)
- Ahmed started working in the company in 2022. (since)
- Mariam didn't meet her friends. (yet)
- My father worked in Paris last year. He returned here. (been)

3 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Environmental issues"

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Jana and Adam are talking about forests.

Jana : Have you ever walked in a forest?

Adam : (1) But I saw one on TV.

Jana : (2)?

Adam : I saw many tall and green trees.

Jana : Did you see any birds on trees?

Adam : (3) Many colorful birds were singing there.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Tigers are, so people protect them in special parks.
a) identical b) endangered
c) extreme d) unimaginable
- The factory began to the forest by cutting down trees there.
a) increase b) establish c) disappear d) destroy
- Alaa has his room this afternoon.
a) clean b) cleaned c) cleaning d) cleans
- For two hours, Amina has for her math exam.
a) study b) studied c) studying d) studies

3 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

- The happy birds have fly away to a warm place. (.....)
- They have play football this week. (.....)
- Jana have bought a new dress for the party today. (.....)

Part 2

Final Revision



A)

Units General Revision (Vocabulary - Language - Speaking - Writing)

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات أهم الكلمات والقواعد والمحادثات وال فقرات على كل وحدة

B)

Story Corner (The Jungle Book)

مراجعة على القصة (كتاب الغابة)

Unit 7: My School Life

A Vocabulary

actively	بنشاط	fair	معرض	principal	مدير/ناظر
atmosphere	الجو العام	forbidden	ممنوع/محظور/محرم	responsibility	مسئولية
behavior	سلوك/تصرف	gym	صالة رياضية	rule	قاعدة/لائحة
corridors	ممرات	hallway	ممر/ردهة	self-control	ضبط النفس
classmate	زميل دراسة	manage	يدير/يتحكم	smoothly	بسهولة/بسهولة
distractions	مشتتات	manners	أخلاق	sneakers	حذاء رياضي/كوتشي
dress code	قواعد نظام الزي	organized	منظم	timetable	جدول مواعيد
effectively	بفاعلية	period	فترة/حصة دراسية	typical	نموذجي/معتاد

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Jeans are not allowed because of the school
a) dress code b) number code c) holiday d) map
- Mariam is very, she keeps everything in place.
a) managed b) organized c) effective d) responsibility
- She is a regular customer at the shop. The antonym of the word "regular" is
a) usual b) build c) irregular d) disorganized
- Our planned a celebration for students who got high marks.
a) principal b) patient c) fair d) rule

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

disorganized – organized – reviews – produces – smoothly

Kareem learned that self-control helps him stay organized. Even when he feels busy, he takes a breath and looks at his timetable. He (1)..... it every morning to prepare for the day. He puts his books in order. He knows that a/an (2)..... bag leads to a careless mistake. But when he follows the timetable, his classes go (3)..... . He can even use his break to rest. This way, he successfully (4)..... good work and feels calm.

1 Imperatives

- We use the imperative to give orders, instructions, or advice to tell someone what to do or not to do.

A) Affirmative: الإثبات

(Inf.) الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Write your name here. (commands)

B) Negative: النفي

Don't/Never + الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Don't touch this vase.

Never say unkind words.

2 Giving Advice

- We use "should" and "shouldn't" to give advice or suggestions.

Subject + should/shouldn't + inf. المصدر

e.g. You should be more patient.

You shouldn't stay up too late.

Language Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. You shouldn't forget to bring your project.

(Don't)

2. You should speak quietly in the library.

(Always)

3. Read the safety instructions carefully.

(You)

4. Always remember to bring your towel when you go swimming.

(should)

5. Don't forget to call your mother tonight.

(shouldn't)

6. It's a good idea to organize a group study session this week.

(We should)



Skills

1. Speaking

Talking about your typical day and the school rules

التحدث عن يومك النموذجي وقواعد المدرسة

1. How do school rules help students learn and work together?
 - By making the class calm and fair.
2. Why does the school have a dress code?
 - To make everyone look neat أنيق and equal.
3. What is forbidden in the classroom?
 - It is forbidden to shout, fight, or use cell phones in the classroom.
4. Why do you think rules at schools are important?
 - Because rules help us stay safe and learn better.
5. Do you take part in any after-school activities?
 - Yes, I take part in football practice after school.
6. What time do you usually get home?
 - I usually get home at three o'clock in the afternoon.

2. Writing

My daily routine

Every day, I wake up at 6:00 a.m. I brush my teeth, wash my face, and eat breakfast. I go to school at 7:30 a.m. and study math, English, and other subjects. At noon, I eat lunch at school. I come home at 2:00 p.m., rest a little, and then do my homework. In the evening, I play with my friends or watch TV. After that, I eat dinner with my family. Before I sleep, I take a shower. I go to bed at 9:30 p.m. My daily routine is simple, but I like it because it helps me stay healthy and do well in school.

Unit 8: Learn Smart, Learn Easy

A Vocabulary

administrator	مدير/مسؤول	engage	يشترك/يرتبط	smart learning	التعلم الذكي
basic	أساسي/رئيسي	feedback	ملاحظات/تغذية راجعة	strategy	إستراتيجية/خطة/أسلوب
balance	يوازن	interactive	تفاعلي/متفاعل	struggle	يكافح/يناضل
combine	يجمع/يخلط	meaningful	ذو معنى/هادف	time management	إدارة/تنظيم الوقت
concentration	تركيز	mental	عقلي/ذهني	upcoming	قادم/مقبل
empathize	يتعاطف	photosynthesis	البناء الضوئي	visual memory	الذاكرة البصرية

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Becoming a/an takes time, patience, and hard work.
a) research b) action c) expert d) export
- Adel learned how to between his studies and doing sports.
a) balance b) limit c) build d) return
- We add the suffix "-ence" to the word "prefer" to make it a/an
a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) preposition
- The company is trying to improve its products. The word "....." is an antonym of "improve".
a) boost b) help c) worsen d) confuse

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

value – connect – remind – upset – memorize

My teacher says, "Emotion is the best teacher." When I felt (1), she didn't give me a worksheet. She gave me a song. When I felt bored, she told a story. When I felt nervous, she asked me to (2) one word. That's smart learning. We don't make lists. We (3) knowledge to how we feel. The (4) of a word is not in its spelling. It's in the feeling behind it.

Connectors

Usage & Examples

but

ولكن

It is used between two clauses in one sentence. It shows direct contrast.

تُستخدم بين جملتين في جملة واحدة. وتُظهر تناقضاً مباشراً.

e.g. Games are fun, **but** they should also be educational.

However

ومع ذلك

It's used at the beginning of a new sentence. It's more formal than "but". It's always followed by a comma.

تُستخدم في بداية جملة جديدة. وهي أكثر رسمية من كلمة «**but**». ويأتي دائماً بعدها فاصلة.

e.g. Hana didn't study hard. **However**, she passed the exam.

While

بينما

It shows contrast between two simultaneous ideas. It can start a sentence or come in the middle.

تُظهر تناقضاً بين فكرتين تحدثان في الوقت نفسه. ويمكن أن تأتي في بداية الجملة أو في منتصفها.

e.g. **While** traditional methods work well, modern techniques engage students more.

Language Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

- The restaurant was full. We still found a table. (However)
.....
- I wanted to buy the dress. It was too expensive. (but)
.....
- Tom was cooking dinner. His sister was setting the table. (while)
.....
- The concert was amazing. A few tickets were sold. (However)
.....
- She studied hard for the exam. She didn't get a high score. (but)
.....
- I was listening to music. My friend was reading a book. (While)
.....



Skills

1. Speaking

1. Participating in a mini debate about playing games at school:

المشاركة في مناظرة صغيرة حول لعب الألعاب في المدرسة:

For:

- Games help us learn better!
- I agree because ...
- I think games are good because ...

مع:

Against:

- Games are just for fun, not for school!
- I don't agree because ...
- But sometimes they are not good because ...

ضد:

2. How teachers make learning fun:

كيف يجعل المعلمون التعلم ممتعاً؟

If you were the teacher, how would you make learning fun?

- I would teach (subject/topic).
- I would use (game/song/etc.).
- It would be fun because ...

2. Writing

Video games and smart learning

Video games are not just for fun; scientists say they can actually make players smarter. Studies show that some games improve concentration and help people solve problems more quickly. Brain-training and puzzle games strengthen memory and thinking skills by giving the brain good mental exercise. However, not all games are educational, so players must choose carefully. The best games mix learning with enjoyment. Many teachers now use games in class because they make difficult subjects more interesting and help shy students participate. Overall بشكل عام, games can boost learning if used wisely and not played too much.

Unit 9: Jobs and Skills

A Vocabulary

ability	قدرة	job profile	ملف وظيفي	passion	شغف
adaptability	قدرة على التكيف	long-term	طويل الأمد	public service	خدمة عامة
ambitious	طموح	mindful	مذكر/واعٍ	qualification	مؤهل
borrow (ed)	يستعير/يقترض	motivation	دافع/حافز/تحفيز	scenario	سيناريو/موقف محتمل
certificate	شهادة	opportunity	فرصة	stress	توتر/ضغط
disappointment	خيبة أمل/إحباط	park guard	حارس حديقة	traffic	المرور

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A is the work a person does through life.
a) relationship b) certificate c) profile d) career
- Learning a new skill can be a fun challenge. We add the suffix "....." to "challenge" to form its adjective.
a) -ment b) -able c) -ing d) -al
- My brother is skilled at fixing computers. The synonym of "skilled" is ".....".
a) difficult b) experienced c) doubtful d) rewarding
- To a machine, you need technical training.
a) design b) succeed c) shape d) guide

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

interests – motivation – disappointment – explore – choose

Choosing a good career is important. It can give you (1)..... and happiness. You need to begin with your (2)..... . You need to also consider your skills and qualifications. Choosing a wrong job can lead to (3)..... and stress. That's why, you should (4)..... many options before making a final decision.

B Language

Cause and Effect

1 Cause

السبب

(بما أن/لأن - since - لأن)

effect (النتيجة) + **because/since** + cause (السبب)

Because/Since + cause (السبب), effect (النتيجة)

e.g. Nabil stayed home **because** it was raining.

Since I was tired, I went to bed early.

2 Effect

النتيجة

(so - لذلك - therefore وبالتالي - as a result ونتيجة لذلك)

cause (السبب) + **so** + effect (النتيجة)

cause (السبب) + **therefore/as a result**, + effect (النتيجة)

e.g. It was raining, **so** we stayed home.

Omar studied well; **therefore**, he got full marks.

The room was dark; **as a result**, I turned on the light.

Language Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. Aida felt very tired because she played outside all day.

(so)

2. Adam went to the market, so he could buy milk.

(because)

3. Tamer did not study hard, so he failed the test.

(as a result)

4. The car stopped working because it had no gas left.

(since)

5. Yesterday was very cold, so we stayed inside the house.

(therefore)

6. Rana is happy, so she is smiling at her friends.

(Since)

1. Speaking

Talking about your dream job

الحديث عن وظيفة أحلامك

1. What's your dream job?

- My dream job is to be a teacher.

2. Why do you want to do that job?

- I want to do that job because it makes me happy.

3. What skills or talents does it need?

- It needs patience, kindness, and good communication.

4. Who inspired you to choose this job?

- My school teacher inspired me.

2. Writing

My dream job

My dream job is to be a teacher because I love helping children learn new things. I want to teach English and make learning fun for my students. To be a good teacher, I need to be patient, kind, and able to explain ideas clearly. My English teacher inspired me because she always encourages me and makes the lessons enjoyable. I hope I can be like her one day. I will work hard and study well to reach my dream. Becoming a teacher makes me very happy.

Unit 10: Storytelling

A Vocabulary

admit (ted)	يعترف بـ	fairy	جنية / ساحرة	precious	ثمين / غالٍ
beast	وحش / حيوان مفترس	folktale	حكاية شعبية / قصة تراثية	promise	يعد / وعد
courage	شجاعة / جرأة	generation	جيل	relieved	مرتاح / مطمئن
cruel	قاسٍ / ظالم	gratitude	امتنان / شكر	royal	ملكي
curiosity	فضول	midnight	منتصف الليل	servant	خادم / خادمة
decade	عقد (عشر سنوات)	moral	عبرة / أخلاق	slippers	شباشب / نعال خفيفة
disappointed	خائب الأمل / محبط	mystery	غموض / لغز	stepsister	أخت غير شقيقة
fade	يبهت / يتلاشى	party	حفلة	trust	يثق / ثقة

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My grandmother's stories from the past are still clear in my memory.
a) dead b) living c) folded d) bad
- After searching for hours, he finally found the hidden under the old tree.
a) fridge b) version c) treasure d) pressure
- A traditional story passed from one generation to another is a/an
a) secret b) folktale c) agreement d) message
- The table is made of strong wood. To form the adjective of "wood," we add the suffix ".....".
a) -en b) -ed c) -ful d) -ly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

surprised – disappointed – winner – overjoyed – competition

Yesterday, our school held a big event for all the students to enjoy together. It was a sports (1) where everyone tried their best to run very fast. My friend Adam ran harder than anyone else and became the (2) of the race. He was (3) when the teacher gave him a gold medal. We were all very (4) because he had never won before, but he practiced very hard this time.

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Subject الفاعل + had(n't) + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل ...

e.g. Sama **had left** the house before the rain started.

Had + subject الفاعل + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل؟

e.g. A: **Had** Nada **come** before you?B: Yes, she **had** / B: No, she **hadn't**

Q. Word أداة استفهام + had + subject الفاعل + past participle (P.P.) التصريف الثالث للفعل؟

e.g. A: How **had** they **solved** the problem before class?B: I **had asked** for my teachers' help.

لاحظ هذه الروابط:

- After I **had finished** my homework, I **went** to bed.
- My brother **walked** to school because he **had missed** the bus.
- By the time Ali **arrived**, his friends **had already left**.

Language Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

- By the time my dad arrived, we had finished our dinner. (As soon as)
.....
- First, the thief broke the window, and then he stole the money. (After)
.....
- Before the guests arrived, my mom had cooked a delicious meal. (by the time)
.....
- After the movie had ended, we walked home in the dark. (When)
.....
- Before I went to sleep, I had brushed my teeth well. (After)
.....
- By the time the bus came, we had waited for an hour. (before)
.....



Skills

1. Speaking

Sharing stories

مشاركة القصص

Showing Interest and Giving Encouragement	Expressing Opinions and Beliefs
To show you're listening and support your partner. ◦ That's a good choice! ◦ Nice! ◦ This makes sense if you followed this modification before. ◦ How sweet!	To share your opinion politely and connect it to the topic. ◦ I believe stories should always have a moral. ◦ True. ◦ That's true.
Offering Suggestions	
To suggest helpful ideas and be open to your partners suggestions. ◦ Maybe we should practice telling our stories to each other first. ◦ Let's read some new fairy tales together. ◦ Great idea!	

2. Writing

The Story of a Little Fox

First, I read a story about a little fox who lived in a big forest. The fox was very curious and loved to explore. Then, one day, the fox saw a lost bird and wanted to help it. The bird was hungry and scared. After that, the fox gave the bird food and water and stayed with it until it felt safe. The bird was very happy and thanked the fox. Finally, the fox and the bird became good friends and played together every day. I liked the story because it was kind and happy, and it teaches us to help others.

Unit 11: Life in the Desert

A Vocabulary

adapt	يتكيف/يتأقلم مع	ecosystem	نظام بيئي	resident	مقيم/ساكن
balance	يوازن/توازن	freezing	شديد البرودة/قارس	shelter	مأوى/ملجأ
campfire	نار المخيم	gather	يجمع	signal	إشارة/علامة
conserve	يحافظ على	nomadic	بدوي/رحال	tribe	قبيلة/عشيرة
desert ruins	آثار صحراوية	pollution	تلوث	unique	مميز/فريد
dusty	مغبر/ممتلئ بالغبار	rare	نادر	windy	عاصف

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Amir didn't with his friend; instead, they calmly discussed it.
a) prefer b) drop c) argue d) consider
- The word "....." means having no friends or company.
a) noisy b) lonely c) nearby d) soft
- The word "damage" has the same meaning as ".....".
a) harm b) windy c) modern d) practical
- To change the noun "dust" into an adjective, we add the suffix "....." to make.
a) -ment b) -ion c) -al d) -y

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

signal – appear – reflect – mirror – smoke

Adham likes to explore new places near the sandy beach. He knows how to stay safe if he gets lost outside. First, he uses a small (1) to catch the bright sunlight. This helps to (2) the light to show people where he is. He can also make a fire to send up (3) into the sky. This is a good (4) for help when he is far away from his home.

B

Language

1

The Past Simple Tense

(أَمَلُ الْمَاضِي الْبَسِطِ)

Form

التصريف الثاني للفعل + الفاعل

- e.g. • They **visited** their grandparents **last** weekend.
• We **saw** a nice movie **yesterday**.

2

The Past Continuous Tense

(أَمَلُ الْمَاضِي الْمُسْتَمِرِّ)

Form

Subject + **was/were** + **inf.** + **ing**

- e.g. • Laila **was running** when she fell.
• You **were watching** TV all day yesterday.

While & When

While + ماضٍ بسيط + ماضٍ مستمر

- e.g. **While** I **was watching** TV, my dad **arrived**.

When + ماضٍ مستمر + ماضٍ بسيط

- e.g. **When** my dad **arrived**, I **was doing** my homework.

Language Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

- While Abdullah was sleeping, his little brother ate the cake. (When)
.....
- Alaa was reading a funny story when the phone rang. (While)
.....
- Amina was cooking a delicious dinner when her dad arrived. (while)
.....
- While Adham was running fast, he dropped his red pen. (when)
.....
- Arwa was painting a beautiful picture when she saw me. (While)
.....
- Akram drew a painting yesterday. (at 7 p.m. yesterday)
.....



Skills

1. Speaking

Imagining moving to the desert:

تخيل الانتقال إلى الصحراء:

1. If you had to live in the desert, would you choose the Bedouin, Hopi, or modern lifestyle?
 - I'd choose the Hopi lifestyle.
2. Why did you choose this lifestyle?
 - Because I love growing food and storing water underground.
3. What will you do every day?
 - I will watch the sunrise and explore the desert.
4. How will you survive the heat, cold, or sandstorms?
 - I will wear the right clothes and stay inside during storms.
5. What will you enjoy most?
 - I'll enjoy the quiet, the stars, and simple, happy days.

2. Writing

Desert life

Desert life is difficult because the land is dry and the sun is very hot. In order to survive, animals and plants must save water. Unlike other environments, the desert gets very little rain. Many animals have adapted by changing their bodies. Some have long legs, and others have thick skin to protect them from the heat. One way to deal with the heat is to move at night when the air is cooler. A good example is the camel, which can live for many days without water. These special adaptations help desert life continue.

Unit 12: Our Incredible Earth

A Vocabulary

bioluminescent مضيء بيولوجيًا	iceberg جبل جليدي	reuse يعيد الاستخدام
drought جفاف	landscape منظر طبيعي	species أنواع/فصائل
endangered معرض للخطر	organization منظمة/مؤسسة	steep حاد/منحدر
extraordinary استثنائي/غير عادي	radiation إشعاع	unimaginable لا يمكن تخيله/ لا يصدق
future generations الأجيال القادمة/المستقبلية	rainforest غابة مطيرة	waste نفايات/مخلفات
gravity جاذبية	reporter صحفي/مراسل	waterfall شلال

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Add the suffix "....." to "protect" to make the noun which means "keeping safe".
a) -ly b) -ion c) -ness d) -tion
2. The in nature means all living things depend on each other fairly.
a) harm b) balance c) heat d) fat
3. A safe place to stay in the desert is called a ".....".
a) garden b) source c) shelter d) condition
4. Their way of life is identical to other desert groups. The opposite of "identical" is ".....".
a) similar b) peaceful c) different d) modern

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

waves – wonders – mysterious – forest – ocean

Water covers most of our big beautiful planet. We call this huge body of water the (1)..... where many fish swim. Sometimes the wind makes big (2)..... that crash on the sandy beach. The deep water is very (3)..... because it is dark and quiet down there. You can see many natural (4)..... if you swim under the water with a mask and look around.

The Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Subject (الفاعل) + **has/ have (not)** + **P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. • Salma **has eaten** Chinese food. • They **haven't slept** in a tent.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

(A) ever/never

1- **never** (أبداً) تُستخدم في وسط جملة المضارع التام، أي بعد (**has/ have**) لتدل على النفي.

Subject (الفاعل) + **has/ have** + **never** + **P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. He **has never been** to Paris.

2- **ever** (من قبل) تُستخدم في وسط السؤال في المضارع التام أي بعد (**has/ have**) والفاعل وقبل **P.P.**

Has/ Have + subject (الفاعل) + **ever** + **P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل

- e.g. **Has** your father **ever visited** Paris?

(B) since/for

3- عند ذكر وقت مع المضارع التام نستخدم قبل الوقت كلمتي (**for** لمدة) أو (**since** منذ).

Subject + **has/ have** + **P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل + **since** بداية الحدث

- e.g. My father and mother **have lived** in Tokyo **since** 2015.

Subject + **has/ have** + **P.P.** التصريف الثالث للفعل + **for** مدة وقوع الحدث كاملة

- e.g. My brother **has lived** in Rome **for** 9 years.

(C) just/already

- تأتي **just/already** بين **has/have** والتصريف الثالث للفعل.

- e.g. • He **has just** finished his homework.

- I **have already** met Nadia.

من الممكن أن نستخدم **already** في نهاية الجملة المثبتة للتأكيد.

- e.g. I have booked the tickets **already**.

(D) yet

- نستخدم في نهاية الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية.

- e.g. • **Has** Ali bought a mobile **yet**?

- Ali **hasn't** finished his homework **yet**.

Language Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. A short time ago, the bus arrived at the school. (just)
.....
2. They didn't book the theater tickets on Friday. (yet)
.....
3. Laila wrote a letter to her friend last week. (this week)
.....
4. The small bird built a nest in the tall tree. (already)
.....
5. Yesterday, the teacher gave us a lot of homework. (since yesterday)
.....
6. It is the first time Reda drives a car. (never)
.....
7. Youssef drank his juice a very short time ago. (just)
.....
8. They began working on the project six hours ago. They didn't finish. (for)
.....
9. Last year, they went to a new school in Cairo. (this year)
.....
10. We watched the match, and we know the score. (already)
.....

1. Speaking

Asking and answering about natural wonders

السؤال والإجابة عن العجائب الطبيعية

1. What's the most amazing natural wonder you have visited?

• The Great Barrier Reef. It's like a magical underwater city.

2. What do you think makes a place amazing?

• A place is amazing when it is very big, beautiful, or full of interesting animals.

3. Which natural wonder do you find the most amazing? Why?

• I find the Grand Canyon the most amazing because it is very big and colorful.

4. Why do you like visiting it?

• I like visiting it because I can see many animals and beautiful views.

5. What have you learned about it?

• I learned that it is very old and that nature works slowly to make it beautiful.

2. Writing

Saving our planet

Our Earth is very important because it is our home. It gives us clean air, water, and food. But our planet has many problems. There is a lot of pollution and trash. To help, we can do many simple things. We can reduce the use of plastic. We can reuse bags and bottles. We can also recycle paper and plastic. Planting trees is another good idea because trees clean the air. We must not throw rubbish on the ground. If we all work together, our small actions can make a big difference. Let's protect our beautiful planet for the future.

(B) Story Corner (The Jungle Book)

Chapter (1) in points:

1. In the heart of the Indian Jungle, a baby boy wandered away from his village. Father and Mother Wolf found him.

فى قلب الغابة الهندية، تاه/تجول طفل رضيع بعيداً عن قريته. وجده الذئب الأب والذئبة الأم.

2. Shere Khan, the tiger, demanded the child for himself, claiming that humans don't belong in the wild. Mother Wolf protected the boy and refused to give him up.

طلب شيرخان، النمر، بالطفل لنفسه، مدعياً أن البشر لا ينتمون إلى البرية. حمت الذئبة الأم الطفل ورفضت التخلي عنه.

3. Baloo promised to teach him the Law of the Jungle, and Bagheera offered an ox to convince the wolves to accept the child.

وعد بالو بتعليمه قانون الغابة، وقدم باجيراً ثوراً لإقناع الذئاب بقبول الطفل.

4. The boy was named Mowgli and he became part of the Seeonee wolf pack and learned the law of the jungle, but Shere Khan continued to threaten his life.

سُمي الطفل ماوكلى، وانتمى إلى قطيع ذئاب سيونى وتعلم قانون الغابة، لكن شيرخان واصل تهديد حياته.

Answer the following questions:

1. What did Shere Khan want to do with the child?

Shere Khan wanted to take the child for himself and destroy him because he believed humans did not belong in the jungle.

2. Did Shere Khan like Mowgli? Why or why not?

No, Shere Khan did not like Mowgli. He saw Mowgli as a threat, so he planned to kill him.

3. What did Baloo, the bear, promise to do?

Baloo promised to teach Mowgli the Law of the Jungle.

4. How can you describe Mother Wolf?

Mother Wolf is brave and protective, standing firmly against Shere Khan to defend Mowgli.

5. Why do you think the animals were astonished when they first discovered the human child in the cave?

The animals were astonished because it was unusual for a human child to be inside a wolves' cave deep in the jungle.

Chapter (2) in points:

1. Baloo taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle - respect, loyalty, and warning calls of different animals - while Bagheera trained him to climb, jump, and self-defense.

علم بالو ماوكلى قانون الغابة - الاحترام والولاء وتحذيرات الحيوانات المختلفة - بينما دربه باجيرا على الاختباء والتسلق والدفاع عن النفس.

2. One day, the monkeys kidnapped Mowgli, pretending they wanted to make him their leader, but they were chaotic and untrustworthy.

فى أحد الأيام، خطفت القرود ماوكلى، مُدعين رغبتهم فى جعله قائدهم، لكنهم كانوا فوضويين وغير موثوق بهم.

3. Baloo and Bagheera asked for help from Kaa, the giant python. Together, they fought the monkeys and rescued Mowgli.

طلب بالو وباجيرا المساعدة من كا، الثعبان العملاق. وقاتلا معاً القرود وأنقذا ماوكلى.

4. Mowgli learned that not everyone who claims to be a friend is loyal; true friendship is built on respect, honesty, and loyalty.

تعلم ماوكلى أن ليس كل من يدعى الصداقة وفياً؛ فالصداقة الحقيقية تبنى على الاحترام والصدق والوفاء.

Answer the following questions:

1. How did Mowgli feel after he was saved?

Mowgli felt grateful for the loyalty and courage of his friends who rescued him.

2. Who kidnapped Mowgli? Why?

The Bandar-log (the monkeys) kidnapped Mowgli because they wanted to make him their leader, even though they had no real order or plan.

3. How is the behavior of Bandar-log described in the story?

The Bandar-log are described as chaotic and without honor or respect. They don't follow the Law of the Jungle.

4. Why do you think Baloo taught Mowgli the cries of different animals?

Baloo taught him the warning cries so that Mowgli could stay safe, understand danger, and communicate properly in the jungle.

5. What does the story teach us about the difference between true friends and false friends?

The story teaches that true friends show loyalty, respect, and support, especially in difficult times, while false friends make empty promises and cannot be trusted.

Chapter (3) in points:

1. As Mowgli grew, Shere Khan's hatred increased. He spread lies to the wolf pack and warned them, making some wolves doubt whether Mowgli belonged in the jungle.
مع نمو ماوكل، ازدادت كراهية شيرخان. نشر الأكاذيب على قطيع الذئاب وحذرهم، مما جعل بعض الذئاب تشك في انتماء ماوكل إلى الغابة.
2. Bagheera warned Mowgli that he would have to face Shere Khan one day, and told him to learn the humans' power - fire. Mowgli secretly visited the village and stole burning coals.
حذر باجيرا ماوكل من أنه سيواجه شيرخان يوماً ما، وطلب منه أن يتعلم قوة البشر - النار. زار ماوكل القرية سرّاً وسرق الفحم المشتعل.
3. During the wolf council, Shere Khan wanted Mowgli to leave the jungle. The pack was divided, but Mowgli revealed the fire and drove the tiger back. Shere Khan still wanted revenge.
خلال مجلس الذئاب، أراد شيرخان من ماوكل مغادرة الغابة. انقسم القطيع، لكن ماوكل كشف عن النار وطرد النمر. شيرخان لا يزال يريد الانتقام.
4. Even after winning, Mowgli felt sad. He realized many wolves no longer see him as one of them, and he began to think his future might be outside the wolf pack.
حتى بعد الفوز، شعر ماوكل بالحزن. أدرك أن العديد من الذئاب لم تعد تراه واحداً منهم، وبدأ في التفكير في أن مستقبله قد يكون خارج قطيع الذئاب.

Answer the following questions:

1. Who hated Mowgli? Why?
Shere Khan hated Mowgli because he could not accept a human living among the animals and saw him as a threat.
2. What warning did Shere Khan give the wolves about Mowgli?
Shere Khan warned the wolves that Mowgli would bring fire and ruin the jungle, trying to make them doubt the boy.
3. What did Bagheera tell Mowgli about the power the jungle fears?
Bagheera told Mowgli that humans have one power the jungle fears which is fire, and that he would one day need it to face Shere Khan.
4. Why do you think Mowgli felt sad after he won against Shere Khan?
Mowgli felt sad because even after winning, he realized that many wolves no longer saw him as part of the pack.
5. Why did Mowgli think that his fate might be away from the pack?
Mowgli thought his fate might be away from the pack because many of the wolves no longer saw him as one of them.

Chapter (4) in points:

1. Shere Khan tried to kill Mowgli by driving cattle toward him, but Mowgli cleverly used fire and strategy to trap the tiger, leading to Shere Khan's defeat.
حاول شيرخان قتل ماوكلى بدفع الماشية نحوه، لكن ماوكلى استخدم النار والاستراتيجية بذكاء ليوقع النمر في الفخ، مما أدى إلى هزيمة شيرخان.

2. Despite the victory, Mowgli felt sad standing over the fallen tiger because the fight came with a cost.
على الرغم من النصر، شعر ماوكلى بالحزن وهو يقف فوق النمر الساقط لأن القتال كان له ثمن.

3. When Mowgli returned, many wolves rejected him, believing that a human did not belong in the jungle.
عندما عاد ماوكلى، رفضته ذئاب كثيرة، معتقدة أن الإنسان لا ينتمى إلى الغابة.

4. Feeling unwelcome, Mowgli left the pack. This moment marked the end of his childhood and the beginning of his journey to find where he truly belonged.
شعر ماوكلى بعدم الترحيب، فترك القطيع. مثلت هذه اللحظة نهاية طفولته وبداية رحلته للعثور على موطنه الحقيقي.

Answer the following questions:

1. How did Mowgli turn the tiger's plan against him?
Mowgli turned the tiger's plan against him by using fire and his quick thinking to make the cattle run in the opposite direction, trapping Shere Khan in a narrow pass where the herd trampled him.
2. What decision did Mowgli make after returning to the pack?
After returning to the pack, Mowgli decided to leave because many wolves no longer accepted him as one of their own.
3. How did Mowgli feel after defeating the tiger?
Mowgli felt both victorious and sad after defeating the tiger. He had protected himself and his wolf family, but the victory came with a cost.
4. Why do you think this moment marks the end of Mowgli's childhood?
This moment marks the end of Mowgli's childhood because he faces danger on his own, makes difficult decisions, and accepts the reality of who he is and what he must do, showing he has grown into a young man.
5. If you were Mowgli, would you stay in the jungle or go to the village? Why?
I would go to the village because it offers a chance to learn more about my human side and find a place where I might belong, although I would still keep the jungle in my heart.

Chapter (5) in points:

1. Mowgli entered a nearby village. The villagers gave Mowgli food, clothing, and shelter, and they taught him their speech and customs.
دخل ماوكلى قرية قريبة. قدّم له القرويون الطعام والملابس والمأوى، وعلموه لغتهم وعاداتهم.
2. Many villagers doubted him, some feared him, and others tried to control him. After the freedom of the jungle, Mowgli felt trapped.
شكّ فيه كثير من القرويين، وخشى منه بعضهم، وحاول آخرون السيطرة عليه. بعد تحرره من الغابة، شعر ماوكلى بأنه محاصر.
3. Mowgli protected the village cattle and learned more about tools and fire, seeing how humans use them to shape their environment.
حمى ماوكلى ماشية القرية وتعلّم المزيد عن الأدوات والنار، إذ رأى كيف يستخدمها البشر لتشكيل بيئتهم.
4. Rejected by some wolves and doubted by humans, Mowgli felt isolated and struggled to find where he truly belongs.
بعد رفض بعض الذئاب له وشك البشر فيه، شعر ماوكلى بالعزلة وكافح ليجد مكانه الحقيقى.

Answer the following questions:

1. What new things did Mowgli learn from the humans?
Mowgli learned how humans used fire and tools, and he also learned their speech, customs, and how to take care of cattle.
2. Why did some villagers think Mowgli was cursed?
Some villagers thought Mowgli was cursed because he seemed strange, half wild, and very different from them, which made them fear or mistrust him.
3. Why did Mowgli feel trapped?
Mowgli felt trapped because the villagers tried to control him and tell him what to do and where to go which was very different from the open life he had in the jungle.
4. How can people live peacefully even when they are different from others?
People can live peacefully even when they are different by showing respect, accepting each other's differences, and trying to understand instead of fearing or judging.
5. Why do you think Mowgli felt isolated?
Mowgli felt isolated because he was caught between two worlds. The wolves no longer fully accepted him, and many humans doubted or feared him. He didn't feel he truly belonged in either place.

Chapter (6) in points:

1. Mowgli regularly returned to the jungle to visit Baloo, Bagheera, and the wolves, while also keeping connections with the human village.
عاد ماوكلى بانتظام إلى الغابة لزيارة بالو وباجيرا والذئاب، مع الحفاظ على صلاته بالقرية البشرية.
2. Mowgli protected the jungle from hunters and helped villagers defend their cattle and crops, balancing the needs of both.
حمى ماوكلى الغابة من الصيادين وساعد القرويين في الدفاع عن ماشيتهم ومحاصيلهم، متوازنًا بين احتياجات كليهما.
3. He used the Law of the Jungle and human knowledge together, discovering that strength is greater than either alone.
استخدم قانون الغابة والمعرفة البشرية معًا، مُكتشفًا أن القوة أعظم من أي منهما على حدة.
4. Mowgli didn't choose one world over the other but embraced both, showing courage, loyalty, and harmony between humans and nature.
لم يختَر ماوكلى عالمًا على الآخر، بل احتضن كليهما، مُظهرًا الشجاعة والولاء والانسجام بين البشر والطبيعة.

Answer the following questions:

1. What two groups did Mowgli protect?
Mowgli protected the jungle animals from hunters and the human villagers from wild animals.
2. What is the lesson we learn from Mowgli's story?
The story teaches us about courage, loyalty, and finding balance between different worlds or responsibilities.
3. How can people today create harmony between life and the environment?
People can respect nature, protect wildlife, and use resources responsibly while meeting human needs, just as Mowgli balanced the jungle and the village.
4. What does Mowgli's story teach us about balancing different parts of our lives (family, culture, nature, and responsibility)?
It shows that we can honor all parts of our life, learn from each part, and use that knowledge to make wise decisions and live in harmony.
5. What makes Mowgli a true hero: his strength, his courage, or his wisdom?
Explain.
Mowgli is a true hero because of all three: Strength helps him face physical challenges. Courage lets him confront danger and stand up for others. Wisdom allows him to balance the jungle and human worlds and make thoughtful choices.

Story Exercises

1 Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli was found by Father Wolf and Mother Wolf in the Indian jungle. (.....)
2. Shere Khan wanted Mowgli to be part of the wolf pack. (.....)
3. Mother Wolf refused to give Mowgli to Shere Khan. (.....)
4. Baloo taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle. (.....)
5. Bagheera offered the wolf pack an ox to accept Mowgli. (.....)
6. Mowgli was immediately accepted by all jungle animals without any danger. (.....)
7. Mowgli learned to climb, hide, and defend himself from Bagheera. (.....)
8. The Bandar-log were loyal followers of the Law of the Jungle. (.....)
9. Mowgli was kidnapped by monkeys called Bandar-log. (.....)
10. Kaa, the giant python, helped Baloo and Bagheera rescue Mowgli. (.....)
11. Mowgli realized that true friends are loyal and respectful. (.....)
12. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolf pack about Mowgli. (.....)
13. Bagheera taught Mowgli how to use fire. (.....)
14. Mowgli used fire to drive Shere Khan away from the wolf pack. (.....)
15. After defeating Shere Khan, all the wolves fully accepted Mowgli. (.....)
16. Mowgli felt happy after winning against Shere Khan. (.....)
17. Mowgli decided to leave the wolf pack because he felt unwelcome. (.....)
18. Mowgli never returned to the jungle after joining the humans. (.....)
19. The villagers immediately trusted Mowgli and never doubted him. (.....)
20. Mowgli found life among humans easy and enjoyable. (.....)
21. Mowgli cared for the village's cattle while living among humans. (.....)
22. Mowgli became a bridge between humans and nature. (.....)
23. Mowgli defended hunters who killed animals in the jungle. (.....)
24. Mowgli used both human knowledge and jungle wisdom to solve problems. (.....)
25. Shere Khan was finally defeated in a trap with a herd of cattle. (.....)

26. Mowgli was raised as a human child by his parents in the village. (.....)
27. Mowgli's main lesson from the Bandar-log was that not all who call themselves friends can be trusted. (.....)
28. The wolf pack never argued about Mowgli's place in the jungle. (.....)
29. Shere Khan wanted revenge even after being driven back by fire. (.....)
30. The villagers taught Mowgli the Law of the Jungle. (.....)
31. Baloo always made Mowgli's training easy and gentle. (.....)
32. Mowgli learned the warning cries of different animals from Baloo. (.....)
33. Mowgli felt isolated both among humans and the wolves at different times. (.....)
34. Kaa was Mowgli's enemy when the Bandar-log kidnapped him. (.....)
35. Mowgli never returned to help the village after leaving the jungle. (.....)
36. Courage and loyalty were considered stronger than blood in the jungle. (.....)
37. Mowgli learned to balance human knowledge with jungle skills. (.....)
38. Mowgli's victory over Shere Khan marked the end of his childhood. (.....)
39. Mowgli's story shows that humans and nature can coexist in harmony. (.....)
40. The Jungle Book teaches lessons about courage, friendship, and balance. (.....)

2 Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Why did Mother Wolf decide to raise Mowgli despite Shere Khan's demands?
.....
.....
2. What lessons did Baloo teach Mowgli about the jungle?
.....
.....
3. How did Bagheera help Mowgli join the wolf pack?
.....
.....

4. What mistakes did the Bandar-log make when they kidnapped Mowgli?

5. How did Kaa help rescue Mowgli from the monkeys?

6. What challenges did Mowgli face living among humans?

7. How did the villagers treat Mowgli at first?

8. How did Mowgli protect both humans and the jungle?

9. How did Mowgli show loyalty to his wolf family?

10. What qualities made Mowgli a bridge between humans and nature?

11. How did Mowgli combine human knowledge and jungle wisdom?

12. What does Mowgli's story teach about true friendship?

13. How did Mowgli maintain ties with both the jungle and humans?

14. How did Shere Khan try to manipulate the wolves against Mowgli?

15. How did Mowgli's experiences help him grow from a boy to a young man?

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Mowgli was able to survive in both the jungle and the village when others might not?

2. How would the story have changed if Mowgli had only stayed with humans?

3. Could Mowgli have defeated Shere Khan without learning about fire? Why or why not?

4. How do the Bandar-log represent chaos in the story?

5. Why is loyalty more important than strength in Mowgli's life?

6. Do you think Shere Khan's hatred of humans was justified? Why or why not?

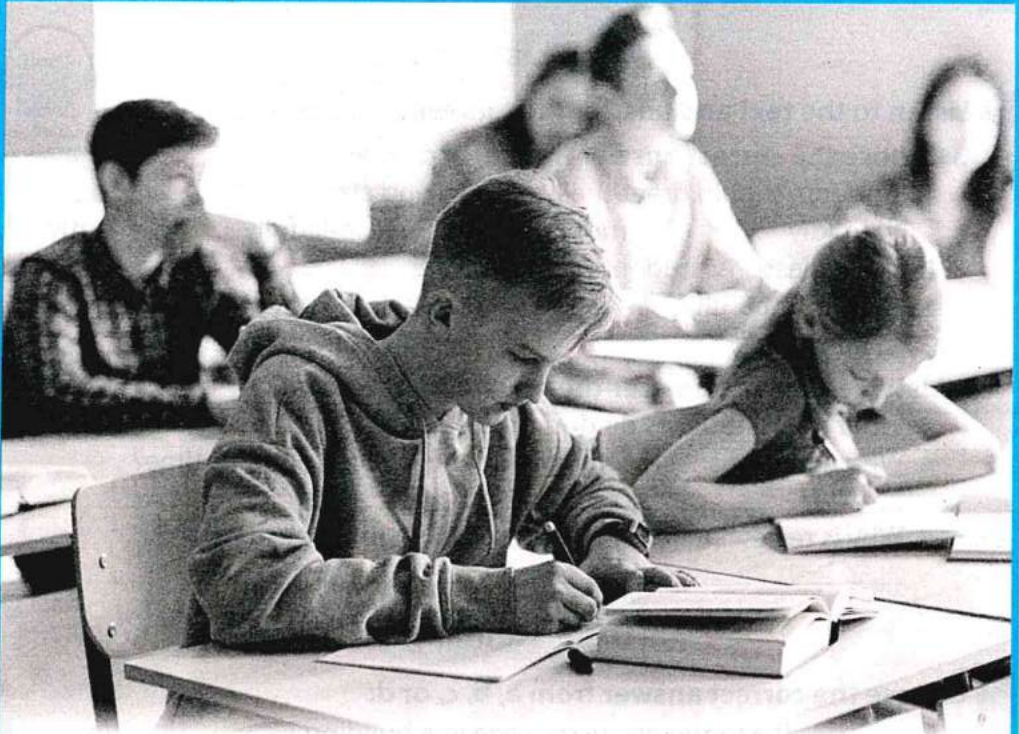
7. What does Mowgli's relationship with Baloo and Bagheera teach us about mentorship?

8. How would the jungle have changed if Mowgli had sided with شير خان Shere Khan?

9. Why is it important that Mowgli protects both humans and animals?
-
-
10. How does fear influence على يؤثر the wolf pack's treatment معاملة of Mowgli?
-
-
11. Could Mowgli have found peace if he had only belonged to one world? Explain.
-
-
12. In what ways do the villagers misunderstand Mowgli, and what does this say about human fear of the unknown?
-
-
13. How does Mowgli's story challenge the idea of belonging only to one group?
-
-
14. Could the jungle survive without humans like Mowgli? Why or why not?
-
-
15. How does Mowgli's journey show the importance of self-reliance and adaptability?
-
-

Part 3

Final Exams



A)

(10) General Exams

اختبارات نهائية لطلبة العام وعددها (١٠).

B)

(6) Al-Azhar Exams

اختبارات الأزهر وعددها (٦).

C)

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع

(A) Final Exams (General)

Exam (1)

A Listening



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Students should greet their teachers and classmates
a) loudly b) rudely c) respectfully d) silently
- During lessons, students shouldn't
a) listen carefully b) interrupt others
c) take notes d) participate actively

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What must students do during lessons?
- What kinds of snacks should students choose at break time?
.....
- Why is reviewing lessons after school helpful for students?
.....

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A is a long narrow passage in a building.
a) library b) kitchen c) balcony d) hallway
- The dress is what students must wear at school.
a) book b) code c) shelf d) corner
- To change the adjective "effective" into an adverb, we add the suffix ".....".
a) -y b) -ation c) -ly d) -ous
- is a feeling of sadness, unhappiness, and dissatisfaction.
a) Motivation b) Satisfaction c) Stress d) Disappointment

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

real – quick – maps – solutions – skills

Brain training games are popular with students. These games focus on memory (1)....., math, and language learning. When you play puzzle games, your brain works harder to find (2)..... . This mental exercise helps you think more clearly in (3)..... life. However, not all games are educational. Action games can develop (4)..... thinking, but players need to choose games carefully.



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. It's polite to greet your teachers in the morning. (should)

.....

2. My brother was taking a nap. The doorbell rang. (when)

.....

3. The rain stopped, and then mom went shopping. (As soon as)

.....

4. It has been two years since I last saw Omar. (for)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara is telling Ali about her dream job.

Ali : What's your dream job?

Sara : My dream job is to be a (1).....

Ali : (2)..... do you want to be a doctor?

Sara : I want to help sick people get better.

Ali : (3)..... inspired you?

Sara : My uncle, who is a doctor, inspired me.

Ali : What skills do doctors need?

Sara : They (4)..... kindness, patience, and hard work.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Healthy habits"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Listening



1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The farmer found in the forest.
 - a treasure chest
 - a small bird trapped in a net
 - a basket of food
 - a lost child among the trees
- The young man left the farmer because
 - he finished his work
 - he wanted to travel
 - the farmer broke his promise
 - he was unhappy with the farmers

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What happened to the bird after the farmer freed it?
.....

- What request did the young man make to the farmer?
.....

- What lesson did the farmer learn at the end?
.....

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Safa's dress looks It cost her a lot of money.
 - cheap
 - tall
 - precious
 - inexpensive
- Some Bedouins look for lands for their animals' food.
 - desert
 - dry
 - wet
 - grazing
- The Amazon is often called the "lungs of the Earth".
 - rainforest
 - dam
 - green wall
 - river
- I found a tiny shell on the beach. The antonym of "tiny" is
 - small
 - huge
 - thin
 - fast

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

responsibilities – rewarding – make – difficult – easy

I want to be a doctor in the future. It's a very (1)..... job because you help sick people every day. I know it will be (2)....., but I am ambitious and ready to work hard. Doctors have many important (3)....., such as caring for patients and saving lives. Doctors also need to stay calm in emergencies طوارئ and (4)..... quick, important decisions.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Many people think video games are only for fun, but scientists suggest they can also make you smarter and more creative. Studies show that certain games improve focus and help players solve problems more quickly. Brain training games are popular among students because they strengthen memory, math, and language skills. Puzzle games push the brain to work harder, making thinking clearer in daily life. Experts warn, however, that not all games are educational. Action games may build quick reactions, but players should choose wisely. The best learning games mix fun with education, making skill practice enjoyable. Teachers now use games in classrooms, helping students learn better and making difficult subjects more engaging.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What do scientists believe about video games?
a) They are only for fun. b) They can make you smarter.
c) They are harmful to students. d) They are not useful at all.
2. Which type of games are especially popular with students?
a) Action games. b) Puzzle games.
c) Brain training games. d) Racing games.

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What skills do brain training games focus on?
.....
4. Why should players choose games carefully?
.....
5. Do you think the best way to be good at a school subject is to use an educational game? Why?
.....



The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Shere Khan whispered lies to the wolves. (.....)
2. Mowgli fought only for humans and never for the jungle. (.....)
3. Kaa helped Baloo and Bagheera rescue Mowgli from the monkeys. (.....)
4. Every villager trusted and respected Mowgli from the start. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What two groups did Mowgli protect?
.....
6. In your opinion, what lesson can we learn from Mowgli about nature?
.....



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. First Nora got her exam results, then, she called her mom. (After)

2. I got up late, so I missed the meeting. (since)

3. Nadine studied hard. She didn't get good grades. (However)

4. Don't touch the stove. It's dangerous. (Never)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Nada are talking about reading short stories.

Sara : How do you spend your time?

Nada : I spend my time (1)..... books.

Sara : (2)..... kind of books do you read?

Nada : I read (3)..... stories.

Sara : How (4)..... do you read?

Nada : Twice a week.

Sara : Do you have short stories?

Nada : Yes, I do. I can lend you some.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Saving energy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (3)

A Listening



1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The narrator had for breakfast.
a) bread and cheese b) dates and camel milk
c) rice and chicken d) fruit salad
- At noon, they rested because
a) they felt tired of walking b) the camels needed food
c) the heat became intense d) a sandstorm started

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

- What is the main benefit of Brain Training Games for students?
.....
- What did they do around a campfire in the evening?
.....
- How did the narrator feel at the end of the day?
.....

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- My old pants have over time.
a) grown b) faded c) brightened d) appeared
- "....." means very surprising or wonderful.
a) Awful b) Excited c) Bad d) Amazing
- In Cinderella's story, the turned into horses.
a) shoes b) pumpkin c) dogs d) mice
- I couldn't buy that expensive watch. The antonym of "expensive" is ".....".
a) rare b) simple c) cheap d) valuable

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

inspired – loyalty – arrived – British – Nobel

Rudyard Kipling was a (1)..... writer, poet, and journalist. Born in India, he grew up surrounded by its culture and landscapes, which (2)..... many of his stories. Kipling's most famous work, "The Jungle Book", is a collection of tales that mix adventure with moral lessons. It explores themes of (3)....., courage, and the relationship between humans and nature. In 1907, Kipling won the (4)..... Prize in literature.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Samir asks Maher how he is preparing for the science test. Samir says he struggles with vocabulary. Maher explains that he uses flashcards and suggests Samir make his own. He also advises Maher to add colors and pictures. According to Maher, drawing diagrams helps a lot because visual memory helps us understand and remember information. Samir likes the idea, but wonders about long processes like photosynthesis. Maher suggests making up a story and connecting steps to familiar things, since understanding is better than memorizing. Samir admits that he usually rereads notes and that this habit of his may need to change. However, Samir does think that his method of using song lyrics does help him a lot when he studies. They decide to study together and mix methods.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What study tool does Maher use for vocabulary?
a) Notes. b) Flashcards. c) Songs. d) Movies.
2. For long processes like photosynthesis, Maher suggests that Samir
a) memorize notes b) make a story and connect steps
c) skip them d) write them in his notebook

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What does Maher add to flashcards to make them more interesting?
.....
4. What do Samir and Maher decide to do at the end?
.....
5. Do you think understanding is always better than memorizing when studying science? Why/Why not?
.....

C

The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. All the animals believed that humans didn't belong to the wild. (.....)
2. Mowgli never returned to the jungle after living with humans. (.....)
3. Mowgli means "little frog". (.....)
4. Mowgli was completely happy living among the humans. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did Mowgli turn the tiger's plan against him?
.....
6. What does the story teach us about true friends and false friends?
.....



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ashraf doesn't have a car, so he doesn't drive to work. (since)

2. After Ahmed had played football, he took a shower. (until)

3. I was doing research when my dad came. (While)

4. Listening to instructions carefully is important. (should)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Jana and Tamer are talking about their role model.

Jana : Hello, Tamer. Do you (1)..... a role model?

Tamer : Yes, I do.

Jana : (2)..... is he?

Tamer : He is my father.

Jana : What does he do?

Tamer : He is a doctor.

Jana : Where does he work?

Tamer : He works in a (3).....

Jana : Why is he your role model?

Tamer : (4)..... he is kind and helps people.

8 Write an email of HUNDRED (100) words to your friend Sajda to tell her some study tips. Your name is Jomana.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening



1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Smart learning uses to make lessons fun.
 - textbooks
 - homework
 - lectures
 - digital tools
- Singing helps students by memory and pronunciation.
 - improving
 - making
 - reducing
 - ignoring

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Who uses smart learning?

4. How do stories benefit students?

5. What do students do instead of just memorizing?



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The students did a/an in the science lab to test their ideas.
 - experience
 - experiment
 - response
 - homework
- Playing chess can improve your skills and help you think clearly.
 - musical
 - cooking
 - physical
 - mental
- She wants to have a conversation, not just small talk.
 - quick
 - meaningless
 - meaningful
 - boring
- I need to all the new vocabulary words before the test.
 - forget
 - memorize
 - ignore
 - write

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

anxious – interactive – creativity – weakens – strengthens

Technology makes learning fun. A new English app is (1)....., allowing students to talk and play learning games together. Technology can also help you relax before tests, many students feel (2)..... and struggle to sleep. Helping others brings meaning and purpose to life, while showing empathy to friends when they are sad (3)..... ties. Finally, closing your eyes to imagine walking in space inspires (4)..... and wonder.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Choosing the right career is one of life's most important decisions. People spend many years working, so jobs affect happiness, health, and relationships. A good career brings motivation and satisfaction. When planning, start with your interests. If you love helping people, nursing or teaching may fit. If you enjoy solving problems with technology, programming could suit you. Creative individuals might prefer architecture, writing, music, or cooking. Skills, qualifications, and personality also matter. Some careers need university study, while others rely on training or experience. Students should consider future opportunities and national needs. The wrong choice causes stress, but the right one brings success, growth, and long-term confidence.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Choosing the right career mainly affects
a) happiness, health, and relationships b) only exam results
c) sports performance d) travel opportunities
2. Creative people may find satisfaction in, writing, music, or cooking.
a) military service b) farming c) accounting d) architecture

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What should students consider besides **بالإضافة إلى** interests when choosing a career?
.....
4. Why can the wrong career choice cause stress and disappointment?
.....
5. In your opinion, which careers might suit someone who enjoys solving problems with technology?
.....

C The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli's story shows that strength alone is not enough to be a hero. (.....)
2. All wolves supported Mowgli during the council meeting. (.....)
3. Mowgli cared for the village's cattle. (.....)
4. The Bandar-log monkeys were honest and loyal. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What new things did Mowgli learn from the humans?
.....
6. Why do you think Mowgli felt sad after he won against Shere Khan?
.....

D Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Nora trained hard. She got the gold medal. (therefore)

2. As soon as Sara had cleaned her messy room, she went out. (By the time)

3. The bus arrived. We were waiting at the stop. (when)

4. Amr left home a few moments ago. (just)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Maha and her friend Nada are talking about school life.

Maha : I have so much homework and exams these days!

Nada : Me too! School life is really busy.

Maha : We have many (1)..... to complete.

Nada : That's true! Do you make a plan for your tasks?

Maha : (2)....., I need to focus more.

Nada : Taking short breaks helps me finish my work.

Maha : (3)..... it easier to learn when classes are fun?

Nada : Yes! Absolutely!

Maha : (4)..... do you enjoy your hobbies?

Nada : I do my homework first, then I read or draw. It helps me relax.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Our incredible Earth"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** The desert is described as place.
a) wet and cold b) hot and dry
c) warm and rainy d) cool and humid
- 2.** Many desert animals are active at night when
a) they like to play b) it is cooler
c) they avoid eating d) they need water

3. What makes life in the desert unique?

4. What must people and animals do in order to survive in the desert?
5. What do people in the desert wear?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Aya was afraid when she saw a mysterious figure walking in the dark.
“Mysterious” is an antonym of

a) unknown	b) strange	c) secret	d) clear
------------	------------	-----------	----------
- I wear at home to stay comfortable.

a) slippers	b) boots	c) hats	d) gloves
-------------	----------	---------	-----------
- Space has that can harm astronauts.

a) galaxies	b) stars	c) radiation	d) insects
-------------	----------	--------------	------------
- Too much homework can stress.

a) do	b) harm	c) cause	d) reason
-------	---------	----------	-----------

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teamwork – make – get – solving – interests

Every job requires different skills. Some need practical skills, like cooking, building, or fixing things, while others need thinking skills, such as (1)..... problems or planning. Communication and (2)..... are important in almost every job. Technology skills are also becoming necessary because many jobs use computers and machines. Learning new skills helps you (3)..... better jobs and enjoy your work. Choose a job that fits your (4)..... and abilities.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In the last 50 years, humans have cut down millions of trees and destroyed many forests. As a result, animals have lost their homes, and some species have become endangered. Scientists warn that air pollution, plastic waste, and climate change are increasing quickly. Temperatures have risen, and extreme weather, like floods, storms, and droughts, has become more common. However, people are taking action. Many countries have introduced recycling programs, and more families use solar panels for clean energy. Organizations have protected endangered animals, such as pandas, sea turtles, and elephants. If we use modern technology wisely and continue these efforts, we can protect the environment and make Earth a better place for the future.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
 - a) how humans are harming and protecting the environment
 - b) how to grow trees quickly to protect the environment
 - c) famous endangered animals
 - d) extreme weather events
2. According to the passage, families contributed to protecting the environment by
 - a) cleaning streets
 - b) planting more trees
 - c) cutting forests
 - d) using solar panels

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Name two actions people are taking to help the environment.
.....
4. Which animals are mentioned as being protected?
.....
5. How can modern technology help solve environmental problems?
.....

C The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Baloo taught the Law of the Jungle to young animals. (.....)
2. Bagheera reminded Mowgli that he belonged only to the jungle. (.....)
3. The Bandar-log made Mowgli their leader. (.....)
4. Mowgli continued visiting Baloo and Bagheera. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Who hated Mowgli? Why?
6. Why do you think Baloo taught Mowgli the cries of different animals?
.....



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We were watching TV. The lights went out. (As)

.....

2. We have known each other since 2010. (for)

.....

3. We stayed at home because it was raining. (as a result)

.....

4. Sara loves playing tennis, but Nada enjoys swimming. (while)

.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Lina and Sara are talking about learning English.

Lina : How does your teacher make English fun?

Sara : She uses (1)..... in class.

Lina : (2)..... kind of stories does she use?

Sara : She uses fairy tales and adventure stories.

Lina : Do you enjoy them?

Sara : Yes, I (3)..... They are very interesting.

Lina : (4)..... your classmates enjoy them too?

Sara : Yes, my classmates enjoy them as well.

8 Write an email of ONE HUNDRED (100) words to your friend Yara to tell her about a day you spent with a Bedouin family.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

1. In the morning, students should
 a) sleep late
 b) prepare their bag
 c) skip school
 d) do their homework

2. helps students learn confidently.
 a) Playing
 b) Planning
 c) Cooking
 d) Listening

3. How should students greet teachers and classmates?

4. What should students eat and drink at break time?
.....
5. How can a school day be enjoyable?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Cell phones are banned in class. "Banned" is a synonym of
a) allowed b) forbidden c) helpful d) easy
- "....." is being clever in a way that is often tricky using smart methods.
a) Careless b) Honest c) Simple d) Cunning
- Pandas and tigers are examples of endangered
a) foods b) continents c) species d) tools
- It's hard for a working woman to family and work.
a) balance b) fight c) hide d) ignore

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

achievable – difficult – breaks – distractions – methods

Learning can be fun and effective if you follow some simple tips. If you want to learn better, start by finding a quiet place to study without (1)..... like TV or loud music so you can focus and remember more. Take regular (2)....., study for 30–40 minutes, then rest 10 minutes to let your brain process information. Use different learning (3)....., like writing notes, drawing diagrams, or explaining topics to friends. Finally, set small, (4)..... goals and remember: practice makes perfect!

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

When Salma opened an old wooden box, she was surprised. The box looked plain from the outside, but it felt special in her hands. Carefully, she took out a folded, yellowed letter. The paper was old, and the ink had faded, but the words were still clear. Many years ago, her grandfather had written the letter to her mother, wishing her courage, kindness, and hope. As Salma read it, she felt she was holding more than paper - she was holding her family's memory. She imagined her grandfather writing each word with care. Smiling, Salma realized the letter had been kept for generations, and now she was part of the story, ready to carry her family's love and wisdom forward.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is
a) Salma found a box full of treasures
b) Salma wrote a letter
c) Salma cleaned a box
d) Salma discovered a family letter
2. Who wrote the letter?
a) Salma
b) Salma's mother
c) grandfather
d) Salma's friend

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What did Salma take out of the box?
.....
4. How did Salma feel while reading the letter?
.....
5. If you were Salma, which would you focus on most in your own life: courage, kindness or hope? Why?
.....

C The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Baloo taught Mowgli only how to hunt animals only. (.....)
2. The villagers welcomed Mowgli at first. (.....)
3. The wolves all welcomed Mowgli back after the fight. (.....)
4. Shere Khan planned to kill Mowgli by using a herd of cattle. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What warning did Shere Khan give the wolves about Mowgli?
.....
6. Why do you think the animals named the boy Mowgli, or "Little Frog"?
.....

D**Writing****6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:**

1. I was tired, so I went to bed early. (since)

2. First, the children watered the plants, and then they sat in the garden. (By the time)

3. Rana listened to music. Mom cooked dinner. (while)

4. Don't play near the road. It's dangerous. (shouldn't)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Rana is telling Reem about her trip to the beach.

Reem : How was your trip to the beach?

Rana : It was (1).....!

Reem : Really? (2)..... did you enjoy the most?

Rana : I loved building sandcastles. It was so much fun.

Reem : (3)..... it very sunny while you were there?

Rana : Yes, it was hot during the day, but it felt cooler in the evening.

Reem : Did you sleep there too?

Rana : Yes, I slept in a big (4)..... near the waves.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (7)

A

Listening



1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What is the writer's job?
a) A teacher. b) A guide. c) A driver. d) A farmer.
2. How far from town did the jeep break down?
a) 10 miles b) 15 miles c) 20 miles d) 50 miles

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How did the group stay safe?
.....

4. What did they share equally?
.....

5. How did they signal for help?
.....

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is the natural force that pulls objects downwards.
a) Radiation b) Pollution c) Gravity d) Atmosphere
2. He is mindful of his diet to stay healthy and fit. The word "mindful" is a synonym of
a) careless b) aware c) forgetful d) lazy
3. Turning off the faucet tap while brushing our teeth helps us water.
a) conserve b) waste c) increase d) recycle
4. Many desert move from place to place to find water.
a) nations b) villages c) farmers d) tribes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unkindness – kindness – dragon – candle – village

Lina loved adventure stories. Her favorite was about a young girl who lived in a quiet (1)..... One day, a huge storm hit the town. A magic (2)..... quickly came to help her family. A small (3)..... became a bright torch, and a broken cart turned into a strong boat. She wore a warm coat and soft boots as she helped people to safety. Everyone admired her (4)..... and helpfulness. But when the storm ended, the dragon disappeared.



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Reem packed her bag, and then she left the house. (until)

2. Amr was drawing a picture. Dad called him. (when)

3. Soha studied hard, so she passed the exam. (because)

4. I enjoy spicy food. My sister prefers mild dishes. (while)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Karim are talking about problems facing the Earth and how to help solve them.

Ahmed : What problems is our Earth facing today?

Karim : I think (1)..... and cutting down trees are the most important.

Ahmed : Yes, that's true. (2)..... is pollution dangerous?

Karim : Because it makes the air and water dirty, and it can harm animals.

Ahmed : Still, we can help. We (3)..... recycle materials to help our environment stay clean.

Karim : That's right! (4)..... else can we do?

Ahmed : We should walk to school instead of using cars.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A short story of a fairy tale you enjoyed reading"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

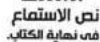
.....

.....

.....

.....

A Listening



1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The school dress code requires students to wear
 a) sneakers b) casual clothes
 c) jeans d) a uniform
2. is forbidden in the hallways.
 a) Walking b) Running c) Talking d) Reading

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. How should students behave towards teachers and classmates?
.....
4. Why should students follow school rules?
.....
5. Are sneakers allowed in the school?

B Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Different that live in the desert have unique traditions.
a) buildings b) plants c) rivers d) tribes
2. Students must respect their teachers. The word "respect" is a synonym of
a) ignore b) obey c) copy d) avoid
3. Cows spend hours on grass.
a) grazing b) laughing c) cleaning d) hiding
4. A means moving from place to place.
a) dress code b) fixed address
c) nomadic lifestyle d) daily routine

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

have – practice – sharing – improves – changes

I used to feel nervous when I had to speak in front of my friends. I was afraid of making mistakes. But my teacher said, "Don't worry, just (1)..... every day." Speaking slowly (2)..... my confidence. I think (3)..... ideas with classmates also helps us learn from each other. Slowly, fear turned into excitement. Now, I (4)..... more courage every time I speak.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nature has created breathtaking sights, such as glowing beaches in the Maldives, active volcanoes in Iceland, and giant icebergs in Antarctica, that have shaped the way people understand the world. Many photographers have captured these wonders to share their beauty with others. Mountains, deserts, and deep forests also show Earth's amazing diversity. These natural wonders remind us that Earth is full of secrets, and humans have only seen a small part of its magic. They encourage us to protect our environment, because nature has given us extraordinary places that deserve to be cared for. By keeping nature clean and safe, we can enjoy its beauty for many generations.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about
a) famous photographers b) natural wonders
c) glowing beaches d) volcanoes in Iceland
2. The underlined word "breathtaking" means
a) amazing b) ordinary
c) dangerous d) small

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Name two natural wonders mentioned in the text.
.....
4. How can we take care of nature according to the text?
.....
5. Who captured the beauty of these natural wonders?
.....
6. Why do you think it is important to protect natural wonders?
.....

C The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Shere Khan wanted to protect Mowgli from danger. (.....)
2. Mowgli learned that loyalty and respect are parts of true friendship. (.....)
3. Mowgli never missed his life in the jungle. (.....)
4. Mowgli found peace by accepting both sides of himself. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What did Shere Khan want to do with the child?
.....
6. Why do you think Mowgli thought his fate might be away from the pack?
.....

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I was reading a book. The phone rang. (when)

2. Malak was tired. She continued working. (However)

3. I last ate pizza two weeks ago. (for)

4. Samy didn't come to school because he was ill. (so)

7 Complete the following dialog:

Rana and Reem are talking about school rules.

Rana : Hi Reem! Do you know our school dress code?

Reem : Yes! We must wear our (1)..... every day.
Jeans and sneakers are not allowed.

Rana : What about behavior rules in the (2).....?

Reem : We should never run. It is forbidden.

Rana : (3)..... we eat or drink in the classroom?

Reem : No, that is forbidden too.

Rana : How should we behave in the library?

Reem : We must be (4).....

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"School rules"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (9)

A

Listening



1 Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rana is a
a) teacher b) journalist c) doctor d) driver
2. Rana's job is when reporting fires or accidents.
a) safe b) active c) boring d) dangerous

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Who does she interview?
.....

4. How does Rana stay safe?
.....

5. What does she learn from her job?
.....

B

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My new studying style is It helps me get high grades.
a) noisy b) boring c) excited d) effective
2. You should put your on your CV to show your studies and experiences.
a) qualifications b) friendships c) relatives d) hobbies
3. The lion is a symbol of
a) noise b) inspiration c) courage d) boredom
4. My grandparents have lived in this house for several
a) minutes b) decades c) moments d) centuries

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

solving – succeed – skills – books – necessary

Jobs need different skills: practical ones like building or cooking, and thinking skills like problem- (1) or designing. Communication, teamwork, and technology are (2) in most careers. Learning new (3) improves opportunities and enjoyment at work. Choosing a job that matches your interests and abilities helps you (4) and feel satisfied in your career.



Writing

6 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I didn't watch the movie at the movie theater as I didn't book a ticket. (Therefore)
.....
2. I studied English yesterday for two hours. (From 5 to 7 yesterday)
.....
3. After Malak had watched the animation, she went out. (before)
.....
4. This boy eats a lot of food, but he is thin. (However)
.....

7 Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Hoda are talking about study tips.

Salma: Hello, Hoda. How are you?

Hoda : Hi Salma. I am fine, thank you.

Salma: (1)..... do you study your lessons?

Hoda : I make mind maps.

Salma: Are they useful?

Hoda : (2)....., they are.

Salma: (3)..... you have any other tips?

Hoda : Yes. I (4)..... the lesson three times.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED (100) words on:

"A short story you read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A



1

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Bedouins are known for their lifestyle.
a) farming b) hard
c) soft d) urban
2. Modern desert towns often use energy.
a) wind b) hydro c) nuclear d) solar

B) Listen again and answer the following questions:

3. Who travel across sand dunes with camels?
-
4. Where did Hopi tribes store water?
-
5. Why do many people choose to live in deserts today?

B

2

1. Talking while the teacher speaks is rude. "Rude" is the opposite of ".....".
a) polite b) noisy c) tired d) late
2. I have difficulty with some grammar rules. I with them.
a) trick b) hate c) communicate d) struggle
3. She always feels before exams.
a) meaningless b) exciting c) anxious d) tiring
4. You should your time and effort.
a) waste b) organize c) hurt d) miss

3

distractions – experts – library – join – supports

Reading is very useful. Reading books (1)..... mental growth and helps students finish homework without (2)..... . Talking about books we've read can be great fun. Some students are shy and struggle to speak with strangers, yet everyone is encouraged to (3)..... in class presentations. Teachers also invite authors and book (4)..... to inspire classes, making reading active, balanced, and enjoyable.

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Earth is full of wonders, shaped over 5 billion years. The Sahara Desert is so wide that astronauts can see it from space, while the Amazon rainforest is called the "lungs of the Earth" for producing much of our oxygen. Mount Everest, the tallest mountain, challenges climbers with its frozen peak. Earth's gravity holds the atmosphere, protecting us from harmful radiation and keeping conditions suitable for life. Without gravity, we would lose the air we breathe. Despite progress, humans have explored only about 5% of the oceans, leaving most of this mysterious world undiscovered and reminding us how much remains to be learned. People should do their best to preserve the planet.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Amazon rainforest is called the lungs of the
a) Moon b) Earth c) Ocean d) Desert
2. Mount Everest is the highest on Earth.
a) hill b) mountain c) desert d) forest

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Who can see the Sahara Desert from space?
.....
4. What protects Earth from harmful radiation?
.....
5. Why do you think 95% of the oceans still remain undiscovered?
.....



The Story

5 A) Write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Mowgli never returned to the jungle after living with humans. (.....)
2. Everyone in the village trusted and respected Mowgli. (.....)
3. Mowgli helped the villagers protect their cattle and crops. (.....)
4. Bagheera's lessons included hiding and climbing. (.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did the animals welcome Mowgli when he visited the jungle?
.....
6. If you were one of the wolves, would you believe Bagheera?
.....



(B) Final Exams (Al-Azhar)

Exam (1)

A Language Functions



1 Listen and answer the following questions:

1. Who does Cinderella live with?

2. What happens at the end of the story?

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Mona : Look! I found an old photo in this drawer.

Omar : What (1)..... it show?

Mona : It shows a young man standing beside a boat.

Omar : (2).....?

Mona : He is my uncle when he was younger.

Omar : When did he take this photo?

Mona : I think when he (3)..... twenty.

B Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The sun releases strong

a) radiation

b) silence

c) dust

d) paint

2. Many animal live in the rainforest.

a) machines

b) toys

c) species

d) stories

3. The road was closed;, we had to take another route.

a) while

b) as a result

c) but

d) however

4. They to the museum last Friday.

a) go

b) had gone

c) were going

d) went

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Sara has lived in Cairo since two years. (.....)
2. While we were play the match, Ali fell and broke his leg. (.....)
3. By the time I went to bed, I finish all my homework. (.....)
4. You should eat junk food every day. (.....)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our planet Earth is full of amazing wonders. It is about 5 billion years old. The Sahara Desert is so large that astronauts can see it from space. The Amazon rainforest is called the "lungs of the Earth" because it produces much of our oxygen. Mount Everest is the highest mountain, and many climbers face great challenges to reach its top. Humans have explored only about 5% of the oceans, leaving most of the underwater world a mystery.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How old is planet Earth?

.....

2. Why is the Amazon rainforest called the "lungs of the Earth"?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The Sahara Desert can be seen from

a) the sea

b) underground

c) the rainforest

d) space

4. Humans have explored only of the oceans.

a) 5%

b) 15%

c) 50%

d) 80%

D Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences on:

"Desert wildlife"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Exam (2)

A Language Functions



1 Listen and answer the following questions:

1. What does smart learning use?

2. What do stories teach?

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Omar : What time do you wake up, Sara?

Sara : (1).....

Omar : What's your first (2).....?

Sara : My first lesson is English.

Omar : Do you like English?

Sara : (3).....

B Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You can combine two colors to make a new one. The verb "combine" is closest in meaning to ".....".

a) break

b) separate

c) mix

d) divide

2. To write a good paragraph, you must start a clear topic.

a) with

b) at

c) to

d) for

3. You have a test tomorrow. You stay up late.

a) should

b) shouldn't

c) must

d) can't

4. Mom tried to call Omar many times;, he didn't answer.

a) while

b) so

c) as a result

d) however

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. The teacher was talked when I entered. (.....)
2. It was raining, however I took an umbrella. (.....)
3. She had wash the dishes before she slept. (.....)
4. They haven't finished their project just. (.....)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Smart learning is becoming popular in schools today. It uses songs, stories, and digital tools to make lessons fun and interesting. Singing helps students remember words, improve pronunciation, and build confidence. Stories teach values, culture, and emotions, and they help students practice listening and speaking. These tools make learning creative and enjoyable. With smart learning, students understand ideas better and enjoy their time in the classroom.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why is smart learning enjoyable?

.....

2. Where do students enjoy smart learning?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Stories help students learn about

a) plants b) animals c) cars d) values

4. Smart learning uses songs, stories, and

a) colorful toys b) digital tools c) old coins d) games

D Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences on:

"The story of Cinderella"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

A



1

2. What did Salma feel the letter was?

2

Omar : Yes, of course. Some jobs need (1)..... skills like building or cooking.

Omar : Those need problem-solving, planning, or designing skills.

Omar : (3)....., they are very important.

B

3

- The car moved on the new road.
a) roughly b) smoothly
c) loudly d) lazily
- I like to participate sports competitions.
a) with b) for
c) about d) in
- Nabil trained hard every day, he won the race.
a) while b) however
c) so d) but
- By the time the train reached the station, the rain
a) had stopped b) stops
c) stopping d) has stopped

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. Mustafa tried many times, so he didn't succeed. (.....)
2. Ali has learn English for 3 years. (.....)
3. Don't touching the wet paint. (.....)
4. After they had finished the game, they go home. (.....)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My dream job is to become a doctor. I want to help sick people and make them feel better. Being a doctor is not easy, but it is a very important and meaningful career. Doctors must work hard, stay patient, and make good decisions. I hope to study medicine in the future because I enjoy science and learning how the body works. I know this dream needs effort and long hours of study, but I am ready to work for it.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why does the writer want to be a doctor?
.....
2. What does the writer hope to study in the future?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Doctors must be
a) lazy b) patient c) noisy d) weak
4. The writer enjoys learning
a) math b) sports c) science d) music

D Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences on:

"You daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Language Functions



1 Listen and answer the following questions:

1. What is Ali's job?

.....

2. When does Ali wake up?

.....

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Interviewer : (1)..... all students enjoy games?

Mrs. Manal : Not all of them, but some like quiet tasks.

Interviewer : (2)..... do you help shy students?

Mrs. Manal : I give them small roles and encourage them.

Interviewer : Do fun activities help learning?

Mrs. Manal : (3).....

B Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The desert is a place with little rain.

a) harsh

b) gentle

c) calm

d) soft

2. I wear slippers on my

a) hands

b) feet

c) head

d) neck

3. your hands before eating.

a) Wash

b) Washing

c) Should wash

d) To wash

4. I haven't finished my project

a) since

b) already

c) yet

d) for

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. I like tea, so I don't like coffee. (.....)
2. While the kids were playing in the garden, it starts to rain. (.....)
3. By eight o'clock, Nader finished his homework. (.....)
4. You should eats more fruit every day. (.....)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A school day can be fun and useful if you plan it well. In the morning, wake up early and go to school on time. Be polite to teachers and classmates. During lessons, listen, take notes, and join activities. Eat healthy snacks and drink water at break. Follow safety rules and do not run in the corridors. After school, do your homework, review lessons, and avoid distractions to succeed.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What should you do during lessons?

.....

2. Why should you review lessons after school?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. What should you eat at break?

a) Unhealthy snacks

b) Chips only

c) Healthy snacks

d) Candy

4. How should you treat teachers and classmates?

a) Politely

b) Badly

c) Rudely

d) Quietly

D Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences on:

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (5)

A Language Functions



1 Listen and answer the following questions:

1. Why do people rely on Samir?

.....

2. How does Samir feel about his job?

.....

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Ali : Have you read The Jungle Book?

Sara : Yes! I like Mowgli. He was (1)..... by wolves.

Ali : (2)..... . Shere Khan dangerous for him?

Sara : Yes, he was.

Ali : (3)..... Mowgli live with humans too?

Sara : Yes, he did

B Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The opposite of "cruel" is ".....".

a) gentle

b) harsh

c) rude

d) mean

2. You need good to become a doctor.

a) excuses

b) qualifications

c) games

d) stories

3. Hatem didn't understand the lesson, he asked the teacher to explain again.

a) because

b) so

c) since

d) however

4. They take a short rest to feel better.

a) should

b) shouldn't

c) did

d) can't

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. After Rodayna had typed the email, she send it to the manager. (.....)
2. I like fish when my wife prefers roasted beef. (.....)
3. Kamal didn't have free time, because he didn't go to the party. (.....)
4. You shouldn't forgetting your homework. (.....)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Today I lived with a Bedouin family in the Sahara Desert. I woke up early and saw the golden sand dunes. We had dates and camel milk for breakfast and walked across the desert. The sand was warm, and the wind was calm. In the evening, we watched a beautiful sunset and sat around a campfire eating bread and listening to songs. The stars were bright, and I felt happy and tired. Tomorrow, we will visit an oasis.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who did the writer live with?

.....

2. What did they do around the campfire?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. What did they eat for breakfast?

a) Bread

b) Dates

c) Rice

d) Pasta

4. What did they see in the evening?

a) Sunrise

b) River

c) Sunset

d) Snow

D Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences on:

"Bedouin lifestyle"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (6)

A Language Functions



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and answer the following questions:

1. What does our planet give us to live?

.....

2. How can we protect our planet?

.....

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour likes to use cloth bags.

Ali : Do you want a plastic bag?

Nour : (1).....

Ali : Why do you use a cloth bag?

Nour : (2).....

Ali : How do they hurt the sea?

Nour : (3).....

B Vocabulary and Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Water is in the desert, so every drop must be used well.

a) common

b) large

c) rare

d) similar

2. To in harsh places, you need water and smart choices.

a) die

b) survive

c) remove

d) waste

3. I saw Laila while she downtown last Friday.

a) walks

b) walked

c) was walking

d) is walking

4. My teacher at this school for ten long years.

a) work

b) has worked

c) working

d) works

4 Find the mistakes in the following sentences and correct them:

1. The rain has stop falling from the gray sky outside. (.....)
2. The little boy has fall off his bike on the grass. (.....)
3. Don't plays football in the streets. (.....)
4. The boys did not played football because it was raining. (.....)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Camels are amazing animals that can live in the hot desert. They have special adaptations that help them survive. A camel's hump stores fat, which gives it energy when there is no food. Its long eyelashes protect it from sand. Camels can drink a lot of water at one time and stay without water for many days. Their wide feet help them walk easily on soft sand. Thanks to these adaptations, camels can live comfortably in the desert.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do camels have long eyelashes?

.....

2. How do camels walk easily on soft sand?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Camels store fat in their

a) eyelashes b) feet c) hump d) mouth

4. Camels can live in the desert.

a) hot b) big c) cooling d) rainy

D Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on:

"A job you like to do"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(C) Listening Texts

Final Exams (General)

Exam (1)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Students should always arrive at school on time and greet their teachers respectfully. During lessons, they must listen carefully, take notes, and participate actively. They shouldn't interrupt others or talk without permission. At break time, students should choose healthy snacks instead of junk food. They must walk, not run, in the corridors. After school, reviewing lessons helps them remember information better and improve their learning.

Exam (2)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Many years ago, a poor farmer found a weak bird trapped in a net. He freed it, and the bird turned into a young man. Grateful, the man stayed to help on the farm but asked the farmer never to ask about his past. They lived happily until the farmer broke the promise. The young man left forever, teaching the farmer to keep promises.

Exam (3)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Today was my first day with a Bedouin family in the Sahara Desert. I woke up early to a cool sunrise over the sand dunes. After eating dates and drinking camel milk. At noon, we walked across the warm desert until the heat made us rest in the tent's shade. In the evening, we enjoyed a colorful sunset, traditional bread, and songs by the fire. I slept happily on a soft carpet, excited for tomorrow's trip to the oasis.

Exam (4)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Schools worldwide are using smart learning, which makes lessons fun with digital tools, songs, and stories. Instead of just memorizing, students explore ideas creatively and connect knowledge to real life. Singing helps with memory, pronunciation, and focus, while stories teach values and culture. Together, songs and storytelling make classrooms enjoyable, interactive, and full of learning opportunities.

Exam (5)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

The desert is a hot, dry place with very little water. People and animals must adapt to survive. Camels can go a long time without water, and many desert animals are active at night when it is cooler. People wear light clothes and use special methods to find and save water. Life in the desert is difficult but unique, with many interesting plants and animals.

Exam (6)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

A school day can be enjoyable if you follow simple steps. Wake up early, prepare your bag, and arrive on time. Greet teachers and classmates politely. Listen carefully, take notes, and ask questions without interrupting. Eat healthy snacks, drink water, and stay safe. After school, review lessons, finish homework, and avoid distractions. Planning helps you learn confidently.

Exam (7)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

As a guide, I teach tourists about desert safety. Last month, our jeep broke down 50 miles from town. We stayed calm and used mirrors to reflect sunlight to signal for help. We shared our water equally and wore light clothes to stay cool. Working together helped us stay safe and comfortable until help arrived.

Exam (8)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Welcome to my school! Students must follow the dress code and wear the school uniform every day. Sneakers and jeans are not allowed. Running in the hallways is forbidden, and students should respect teachers and classmates. In class, talking without permission is not allowed. Good behavior and following rules help keep the school clean and safe for everyone.

Exam (9)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Hi, I'm Rana. I am a journalist. I write news stories and interview people from many places. My job is exciting, but sometimes it is dangerous, especially when reporting fires or accidents. I am always careful and aware to stay safe. Being a journalist teaches me to observe things closely and share important news with everyone.

Exam (10)

Listen to the text and answer the following questions:

Desert communities adapt to the harsh conditions of heat and cold. Bedouins in the Arabian Desert travel with camels, using tents for shade and protection. They are known for their hard life. Hopi tribes in the American Southwest built irrigation to grow crops and stored water underground. Modern desert towns conserve water and use solar energy, while people enjoy the peace and beauty of desert life.

Final Exams (Al-Azhar)

Exam (1)

Listen and answer the following questions:

Cinderella is a kind girl who lives with her cruel stepmother and stepsisters. A fairy helps her go to the royal party by giving her a beautiful dress and glass slippers. She leaves a slipper behind, and the prince finds her and marries her.

Exam (2)

Listen and answer the following questions:

Smart learning uses songs, stories, and digital tools to make lessons fun. Singing helps students remember words and grammar, while stories teach values and help you practice listening and speaking. It makes learning creative and enjoyable.

Exam (3)

Listen and answer the following questions:

Salma opened an old wooden box and found a yellowed letter from her grandfather to her mother. The message was full of love and hope. Salma felt it was a family treasure that connected her to the past.

Exam (4)

Listen and answer the following questions:

My name is Ali, and I am a bus driver. I wake up very early and drive through busy streets every day. My job is important because many people depend on me to get to their schools and workplaces safely.

Exam (5)

Listen and answer the following questions:

My name is Samir. I am a mechanic. I repair cars and solve technical problems. People rely on me when their vehicles break down. This makes me feel useful and respected.

Exam (6)

Listen and answer the following questions:

The Earth is an incredible place full of forests, oceans, mountains, and amazing animals. It gives us clean air, fresh water, and everything we need to live. To protect it, we must reduce waste, recycle more, and save energy. Planting trees and keeping our environment clean also helps.

رقم الإيداع: 2025/33380

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب
مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر
يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أى جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابى صريح من الناشر.